

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA  
ARCHAEOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA

CENTRAL  
ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY

ACCESSION NO 24136

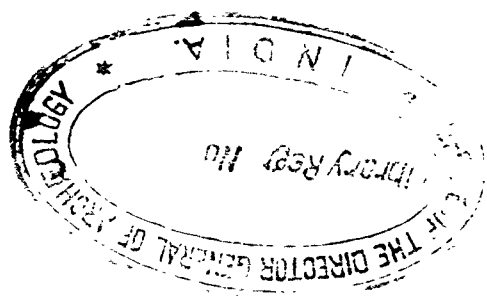
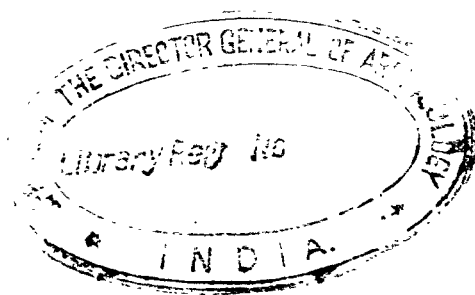
CALL No. Sa.2V5/Ait/Hall

D.G.A. 79

D 2810











# The Sacred Books of the Hindus

Translated by various Sanskrit Scholars

AND

Edited by Major B. D. Basu, I. M. S. (Retired)

Extra Volume

THE

*N. N.  
H. N.*

## Aitareya Brahmanam of the Rigveda, - Vol. 2

CONTAINING THE

EARLIEST SPECULATIONS OF THE BRAHMANS ON THE  
MEANING OF THE SACRIFICIAL PRAYERS,

AND ON

THE ORIGIN, PERFORMANCE AND SENSE OF THE

## rites of the Vedic Religion

EDITED, TRANSLATED AND EXPLAINED, WITH PREFACE,  
INTRODUCTORY ESSAY, AND A MAP OF THE  
SACRIFICIAL COMPOUND AT THE  
SOMA SACRIFICE

BY

*D2210 ✓  
Reg. No. 159/23*

*Sa2V5  
Ait. Haug*

MARTIN HAUG, Ph. D.,

Superintendent of Sanscrit Studies in the Poona College, &c., &c.

24-36

REPRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY

SUDHINDRA NATH VASU, M. B., AT THE PANINI OFFICE,  
BAHADURGANJ, ALLAHABAD.

1922.

CENTRAL LIBRARY  
LIBRARY

LIBRARY  
LIBRARY

Acc. No. 24136 .....

Date. 12-7-56. ....

Call No. Sa 225 / Hist. / Hau.

## FOREWARD BY THE EDITOR.

Dr. Martin Haug's translation of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa has been out of print for a long time, and so it has been reprinted as an extra volume in the series of the Sacred Books of the Hindus. To facilitate references to the original edition, paging of that edition has been given in Square brackets, thus [     ]. It has not been considered necessary to reprint the Sanskrit text, as better editions of that text are now available.

Extracts from Professor Max Müller's review of this work are reproduced below :—

The Aitareya-brāhmaṇa, containing the earliest speculations of the Brahmins on the meaning of their sacrificial prayers, and the purport of their ancient religious rites, is a work which could be properly edited nowhere but in India. It is only a small work of about two hundred pages, but it presupposes so thorough a familiarity with all the externals of the religion of the Brahmins, the various offices of their priests, the times and seasons of their sacred rites, the form of their innumerable sacrificial utensils, and the preparation of their offerings, that no amount of Sanskrit scholarship, such as can be gained in England, would have been sufficient to unravel the intricate speculations concerning the matters which form the bulk of the Aitareya-brāhmaṇa.....

The ancient Indian ceremonial, however, is one of the most artificial and complicated forms of worship that can well be imagined ; and though its details are, no doubt, most minutely described in the Brāhmaṇas and the Sūtras, yet, without having seen the actual site on which the sacrifices are offered, the altars constructed for the occasion, the instruments employed by different priests—the *tout-ensemble*, in fact, of the sacred rites—the reader seems to deal with words, but with words only, and is unable to reproduce in his imagination the acts and facts which were intended to be conveyed by them.....

Dr. Haug succeeded, however, at last in procuring the assistance of a real Doctor of Divinity, who had not only performed the minor Vedic sacrifices, such as the full and new moon offerings, but had officiated at some of the great Soma sacrifices, now very rarely to be seen in any part of India. He was induced, we are sorry to say, by very mercenary considerations, to perform the principal ceremonies in a secluded part of Dr. Haug's premises. This lasted five days, and the same assistance was afterwards rendered by the same worthy and some of his brethren whenever Dr. Haug was in any doubt as to the proper meaning of the ceremonial treatises which give the outlines of the Vedic sacrifices. Dr. Haug was actually allowed to taste that sacred beverage, the Soma, which gives health, wealth, wisdom, inspiration, nay immortality, to those who receive it from the hands of a twice-born priest.....

After having gone through all these ordeals. Dr. Haug may well say that his explanations of sacrificial terms, as given in the notes, can be relied upon as certain ; that they proceed from what he himself witnessed, and what he was able to learn from men who had inherited the knowledge from the most ancient times.....

In the preface to his edition of the Aitareya-brāhmaṇa, Dr. Haug has thrown out some new ideas on the chronology of Vedic literature which deserve careful consideration. Beginning with the hymns of the Rīg-veda, he admits, indeed, that there are in that collection ancient and modern hymns, but he doubts whether it will be possible to draw a sharp line between what has been called the Chhandas period, representing the free growth of sacred poetry, and the Mantra period, during which the ancient hymns were supposed to have been collected and new ones added, chiefly intended for sacrificial purposes. Dr. Haug maintains that some hymns of a decidedly sacrificial character should be ascribed to the earliest period of Vedic poetry. He takes, for instance, the hymns describing the horse-sacrifice, and he concludes from the fact that seven priests

only are mentioned in it by name, and that none of them belongs to the class of the Udgātars (singers) and Brahmans (superintendents), that this hymn was written before the establishment of these two classes of priests. As these priests are mentioned in other Vedic hymns, he concludes that the hymn describing the horse-sacrifice is of a very early date. Dr. Haug strengthens his case by a reference to the Zoroastrian ceremonial, in which, as he says, the chanters and superintendents are entirely unknown, whereas the other two classes, the Hotars (reciters) and Adhvaryus (assistants) are mentioned by the same names as Zotar and Rathwiskare. The establishment of the two new classes of priests would, therefore, seem to have taken place in India after the Zoroastrians had separated from the Brahmans ; and Dr. Haug would ascribe the Vedic hymns in which no more than two classes of priests are mentioned to a period preceding, others in which the other two classes of priests are mentioned to a period succeeding, that ancient schism.....

According to Dr. Haug, the period during which the Vedic hymns were composed extends from 1400 to 2000 B. C. The oldest hymns, however, and the sacrificial formulas he would place between 2000 and 2400 B. C. This period, corresponding to what has been called the Chhandas and Mantra periods, would be succeeded by the Brāhmaṇa period, and Dr. Haug would place the bulk of the Brāhmaṇas, all written in prose, between 1400 and 1200 B. C. He does not attribute much weight to the distinction made by the Brāhmaṇas themselves between revealed and profane literature, and would place the Sūtras almost contemporaneous with the Brāhmaṇas. The only fixed point from which he starts in his chronological arrangement is the date implied by the position of the solstitial points mentioned in a little treatise, the Jyotiṣa, a date which has been accurately fixed by the Rev. R. Main at 1186 B. C.\* Dr. Haug fully admits that such an observation was an absolute necessity for the Brahmans in regulating their calendar :.....

This argument of Dr. Haug's seems correct as far as the date of the establishment of the ceremonial is concerned, and it is curious that several scholars who have lately written on the origin of the Vedic calendar, and the possibility of its foreign origin, should not have perceived the intimate relation between that calendar and the whole ceremonial system of the Brahmans. Dr. Haug is, no doubt, perfectly right when he claims the invention of the Nakṣatras, or the Lunar Zodiac of the Brahmans, if we may so call it, for India ; he may be right also when he assigns the twelfth century as the earliest date for the origin of that simple astronomical system on which the calendar of the Vedic festivals is founded. He calls the theories of others, who have lately tried to claim the first discovery of the Nakṣatras for China, Babylon, or some other Asiatic country, absurd, and takes no notice of the sanguine expectations of certain scholars, who imagine they will soon have discovered the very means of the Indian Nakṣatras in Babylonian inscriptions. But does it follow that, because the ceremonial presupposes an observation of the solstitial points in about the twelfth century, therefore the theological works in which that ceremonial is explained, commented upon, and furnished with all kinds of mysterious meanings, were composed at that early date ? We see no stringency whatever in this argument of Dr. Haug's, and we think it will be necessary to look for other anchors by which to fix the drifting wrecks of Vedic literature.....

However interesting the Brāhmaṇas may be to students of Indian literature, they are of small interest to the general reader. The greater portion of them is simply twaddle, and what is worse, theological twaddle. No person who is not acquainted beforehand with the place which the Brāhmaṇas fill in the history of the Indian mind, could read more than ten pages without being disgusted. To the historian, however, and to the philosopher, they are of infinite importance—to the former as a real link between the ancient and modern literature of India ; to the latter as a most important phase in the growth of human mind, in its passage from health to disease.

---

\* See preface to the fourth volume of my edition of the *Rigveda*.

## P R E F A C E.

---

The present work is the first edition, and first translation of one of the most important works of the Brâhmana literature.....

The editing of the text and the translation of the numerous stories contained in the work was a comparatively easy task, and might have been carried out as well in Europe by any respectable Sanscrit scholar in possession of the necessary materials obtainable there. But the case stands different with the translation of the technical parts of the work and principally the numerous explanatory notes which are indispensable for an actual understanding of the book. Though Sâyana's excellent Commentary, which I have used throughout, is a great help for making out the proper meaning of many an obscure word, or phrase, it is not sufficient for obtaining a complete insight into the real meaning of many terms and passages occurring in the work. Besides, a good many passages in the Commentary itself, though they may convey a correct meaning, are hardly intelligible to European Sanscrit scholars who have no access to oral sources of information. The difficulties mainly lie in the large number of technical terms of the sacrificial art, which occur in all Brâhmanas, and are, to those uninitiated into the mysteries of this certainly ancient craft, for the most part unintelligible. It is, therefore, not surprising that no Sanscrit scholar as yet ever attempted the translation of the whole of a Brâhmana; for the attempt would, in many essential points, have proved a failure.

What might be expected in the explanation of sacrificial terms from scholars unaided by oral information, may be learnt from the three volumes hitherto published of the great Sanscrit Dictionary, compiled by Boehtlingk and Roth. The explanations of these terms there given (as well as those of many words of the Samhita) are nothing but guesses, having no other foundation than the individual opinion of a scholar who never made himself familiar with the sacrificial art, even as far as it would be possible in Europe, by a careful study of the commentaries on the Sûtras and Brâhmanas, and who appears to have thought his own conjectures to be superior to the opinions of the greatest divines of Hindustan, who were especially trained for the sacrificial profession from times immemorial. These defects of a work which is in other respects a

monument of gignatic toil and labour, and on account of its containing numerous references and quotations extremely useful to the small number of Sanscrit scholars who are able to make independent researches, have been already repeatedly pointed out by Professor Theodor Goldstücker, one of the most accurate Sanscrit scholars in Europe. Although his remarks excited the wrath principally of some savants at Berlin, who had tried to praise up the work as a masterpiece of perfection and ingenuity almost unparalleled in the history of lexicography, they are, nevertheless, though in some points too severe, not quite so undeserved and unjust, as the defenders of the Dictionary made them to appear. Goldstücker justly does not only find fault with its explanation of ritual terms, but with the meanings given to many words in the *saṁhitā*. Though I am far from defending even the greater majority of Sāyaṇa's explanations of the more difficult words and sentences of the *Samhitā*, it would have been at any rate advisable for the compilers of a Sanscrit Dictionary, which includes the Vedic words, to give Sāyaṇa's explanations along with their own. Even granted that all Sāyaṇa's explanations are only either guesses of his own, or of the great Bhaṭṭāchāryas\* before him, whose labours he principally used, they nevertheless deserve all attention as the opinions and observations of men who had a much deeper knowledge of the Sanscrit language in general, and the rites of the Vedic religion, than any European scholar has ever attained to. It is quite erroneous to presuppose, as the editors of the Dictionary appear to do, that Sāyaṇa himself made the majority of explanations in his Commentary. All Pandits who have any knowledge of the subject unanimously assert that he used a good many predecessors, and that comparatively few explanations are entirely his own. The so-called Kāuśika Bhāṣya is said to be more ancient than that of Sāyaṇa, and also the Ravana Bhāṣya. Both are said to be still extant, but I have not yet been able to obtain copies of them.

Seeing the great difficulties, nay impossibility, of attaining to anything like a real understanding of the sacrificial art from all the numerous books I had collected, I made the greatest efforts to obtain oral informa-

---

\* This is the name of those Hindu scholars who not only learn, as the Bhaṭṭas do, one of the Vedas completely by heart, but who study the meaning of each verse and word, so as to be able to give orally the explanation of any passage required. The number of this class of scholars who represent the Doctors of Hindu theology, is now very small. In this part of India, though there are many hundreds of parrotlike repeaters of the sacred texts, there is not a single one to be found. Some (three or four) are said to be at Benares. They are highly respected, and, as incarnations of Brihaspati—the Pandit of the Gods, at certain occasions regularly worshipped.

tion from some of those few Brāhmaṇs who are known by the name of Śrotriyaś, or Śrautis, and who alone are the preservers of the sacrificial mysteries as they descended from the remotest times. The task was no easy one, and no European scholar in this country before me even succeeded in it. This is not to be wondered at; for the proper knowledge of the ritual is everywhere in India now rapidly dying out, and in many parts, chiefly in those under British rule, it has already died out. Besides, the communication of these mysteries to foreigners is regarded by old devout Brāhmaṇs (and they alone have the knowledge) as such a monstrous profanation of their sacred creed, and fraught with the most serious consequences to their position, that they can only, after long efforts, and under payment of very handsome sums, be prevailed upon to give information. Notwithstanding, at length I succeeded in procuring the assistance of a Śrauti, who not only had performed the small sacrifices, such as the Darśapūrnāmāsa Iṣṭi, but who had even officiated as one of the Hotars, or Udgātars, at several Soma sacrifices, which are now very rarely brought. In order to obtain a thorough understanding of the whole course of an Iṣṭi, and a Soma sacrifice, I induced him (about 18 months ago) to show me in some secluded place in my premises, the principal ceremonies. After the place had been properly arranged, and the necessary implements brought to the spot, the performance began. I noted carefully everything I saw during about five days, and always asked for explanation if I did not properly comprehend it. I was always referred to the Sūtras and the Prayogas or pocket books of the sacrificial priest, so that no deception could take place. All information was conveyed to me by means of the Marathi language, of which I had by that time already acquired a sufficient knowledge for carrying on any conversation. In this way I obtained some sort of rough knowledge of the principal ceremonies (for they were generally only partially, in order to save time, and rapidly performed), which I completed afterwards by oral instruction, derived from the same and some other sacrificial priests, and Agnihotris, who had the sacrificial operations performed on themselves and in their behalf. Thus I was enabled to understand the various Sūtras, and consequently the technicalities of the Brāhmaṇas. Therefore the explanations of sacrificial terms, as given in the notes, can be relied upon as certain; for they are neither guesses of my own, nor of any other Hindu or European scholar, but proceed from what I have myself witnessed, and been taught by the only men who have inherited the knowledge from the most ancient times. My notes are therefore, for the most part, independent of Sāyaṇa, for I had almost as good sources as he himself



had. He, however, does not appear to have troubled himself much with a minute study of the actual operations of the sacrificial priests, but derived all his knowledge almost entirely from the Sûtras only.

It had been easy for me to swell by accumulation of notes the work to double the size which it is now ; but I confined myself to give only what was necessary.....

MARTIN HAUG.

*Poona, 22nd November 1863.*

# CONTENTS.

|                        |     |     |     |     |     |               |
|------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------------|
| Foreward by the Editor | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | PAGE,<br>i—ii |
| Preface                | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | iii—vi        |
| Contents               | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | vii—viii      |
| Introduction           | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ix—lv         |

## FIRST BOOK.

|   |     |     |     |     |     |        |
|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|
| CHAPTER 1. The Dikṣaṇiya Iṣṭi, with the Initiatory Rites  | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1— 11  |
| CHAPTER 2. Prāyaṇiya Iṣṭi   | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 11— 18 |
| CHAPTER 3. The buying and bringing of the Soma. The producing of Fire by friction. The Atithyā Iṣṭi                               | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 18— 28 |
| CHAPTER 4. The Pravargya Ceremony. Upasad and Tānunaṣṭram   | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 28— 40 |
| CHAPTER 5. The ceremonies of carrying the fire, Soma and the offerings from their Places in the Prāchīna-vamśa to the Uttarā Vēdi | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 40— 48 |

## SECOND BOOK.

|   |     |     |     |     |     |        |
|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|
| CHAPTER 1. The Animal Sacrifice   | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 49— 66 |
| CHAPTER 2. The remaining rites of the animal sacrifice. The Prātaranuvāka of the Soma day   | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 66— 76 |
| CHAPTER 3. The Apo Naptriya Ceremony. The Upāmsu and Antaryāma oblations. The Hotar has no share in the Bahiṣ-pavamāṇa meal. The libation for Mitra-Varuna to be mixed with milk. On the Purodāśas belonging to the libations. Haviṣ-Pamkti. Akṣara-pamkti. Narāsaṁsa Pamkti. Savana-Pamkti | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 76— 86 |
| CHAPTER 4. The Dvidevatya Graha libations, i.e., the libations poured from the Aindra-vāyava, Maitravaruna and Aśvina Grahas. Ritu-yājas. The Silent Praise   | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 86— 96 |
| CHAPTER 5. The different parts of the Ajya Śāstra : Ahāva, Nivid, Sūkta   | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 96—106 |

## THIRD BOOK.

|  |     |     |     |     |     |         |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|
| CHAPTER 1. The Pra-uga Śāstra. Vaṣaṭkāra. The Nivids   | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 107—119 |
| CHAPTER 2. The Marutvatīya and Niṣkevalya Śāstras  | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 119—136 |
| CHAPTER 3. The abstraction of Soma. Origin of the three libations. Evening libation. The Vaiśvadeva and Agni-māruta Śāstras  | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 136—155 |
| CHAPTER 4. On the origin, meaning, and universal nature of the Agniṣṭoma as the model of other sacrifices. On the Chatuṣṭoma and Jyotiṣṭoma  | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 155—164 |
| CHAPTER 5. On the gradual recovery of the sacrifice when it was lost. What men are unfit to officiate as sacrificial priests. The offerings to the Devis and Devikās. The Ukthya sacrifice | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 164—172 |

## FOURTH BOOK.

|  |     |     |     |     |     |         |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|
| CHAPTER 1. On the Śolaśi and Atirātra sacrifices   | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 173—181 |
| CHAPTER 2. The Aśvina Śāstra. The beginning day of the Gavām ayanam. The use of the Rathantara and Brihat Sāmans and their kindreds. The Mahāvratā day of the Sattrā | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 182—193 |
| CHAPTER 3. Śalaha and Viṣuvan day of the Sattras, with the performance of the days preceding and following the Viṣuvan   | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 193—203 |

|   |     |     |     |     |         |
|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|
| CHAPTER 4. The Dvādaśāha sacrifice. Its origin, and general rules for its performance. The initiatory rites | ... | ... | ... | ... | 203—210 |
| CHAPTER 5. The two first days of the Dvādaśāha sacrifice  | ... | ... | ... | ... | 210—215 |

## FIFTH BOOK.

|  |     |     |     |     |         |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|
| CHAPTER 1. The characteristics and Śāstras of the third and fourth days of the Dvādaśāha | ... | ... | ... | ... | 216—224 |
| CHAPTER 2. The characteristics and Śāstras of the fifth and sixth days of the Dvādaśāha  | ... | ... | ... | ... | 225—233 |
| CHAPTER 3. The characteristics and Śāstras of the seventh and eighth days                | ... | ... | ... | ... | 234—240 |
| CHAPTER 4. The ninth and tenth days of the Dvādaśāh. Conclusion of this sacrifice        | ... | ... | ... | ... | 240—247 |
| CHAPTER 5. The Agnihotram. On the duties of the Brahmā priest                            | ... | ... | ... | ... | 247—257 |

## SIXTH BOOK.

|  |     |     |     |     |         |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|
| CHAPTER 1. On the offices of the Grāvastut and Subrhamanyā   | ... | ... | ... | ... | 258—262 |
| CHAPTER 2. On the Śāstras of the minor Hotṛi-priests at the Sattras  | ... | ... | ... | ... | 263—267 |
| CHAPTER 3. The hymns for lifting the Chamasa (Soma cups). The Prasthita Yājyās of the seven Hotars concluding this ceremony. The two different kinds of Hotars. Explanation of some apparent anomalies in the performances of the minor Hotṛis. The Jagatī hymns for Indra. The concluding verses of the minor Hotṛi-priests. On a peculiarity in the Śāstras of the Achhāvāka | ... | ... | ... | ... | 267—276 |
| CHAPTER 4. The Sāmpāta hymns. The Vālahilyas. The Dūrohaṇam  | ... | ... | ... | ... | 276—288 |
| CHAPTER 5. The so-called Śilpas, viz., the Nābhānediṣṭha, Narāsaṃsa, Vālahilya, Sukīrti, Vṛiṣākapi, and Evayāmarut hymns. The Kuntāpa Śāstra   | ... | ... | ... | ... | 288—300 |

## SEVENTH BOOK.

|   |     |     |     |     |         |
|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|
| CHAPTER 1. The distribution of the different parts of the sacrificial animal among the priests  | ... | ... | ... | ... | 301—302 |
| CHAPTER 2. The penances for mishaps to the performer of the Agnihotram  | ... | ... | ... | ... | 302—314 |
| CHAPTER 3. The story of Sunahśepa   | ... | ... | ... | ... | 315—322 |
| CHAPTER 4. The preliminary rites of the Rājasūya sacrifice  | ... | ... | ... | ... | 323—330 |
| CHAPTER 5. On the sacrificial drink which the King has to taste, instead of Soma, according to the instruction given by Rāma Mārgaveya to the King Viśvantara | ... | ... | ... | ... | 330—339 |

## EIGHTH BOOK.

|  |     |     |     |     |         |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|
| CHAPTER 1. The Śāstras and Stotras required at the Soma day of the Rājasūya  | ... | ... | ... | ... | 340—344 |
| CHAPTER 2. Punarabhisheka, or repetition of the inauguration ceremony  | ... | ... | ... | ... | 345—353 |
| CHAPTER 3. The Mahābhiṣeka or grand inauguration ceremony of Indra   | ... | ... | ... | ... | 354—357 |
| CHAPTER 4. The Mahābhiṣeka ceremony performed on a King. What Rīgis performed it, and for what Kings they performed it | ... | ... | ... | ... | 357—363 |
| CHAPTER 5. On the office of the Purohita, or house-priest. The Brahmanah parimara, i.e., dying around the Brahma       | ... | ... | ... | ... | 363—369 |

## INTRODUCTION.

### I.

*On the Mantras, Brāhmaṇas, and Sūtras, and their mutual relationship.  
Probable origin and age of the Mantras, and Brāhmaṇas.*

The Veda, or Scripture of the Brāhmans, consists, according to the opinion of the most eminent divines of Hindustan, of two principal parts, viz., *Mantra* and *Brāhmaṇam*. All that is regarded as revelation must be brought under these two heads. What of the revealed word is no *Mantra*, that is a *Brāhmaṇam*; and what is no *Brāhmaṇam*, must be a *Mantra*. This is the line of argument followed by the Brāhmanic theologians. But this does neither make clear what a *Mantra* is, nor what we have to understand by a *Brāhmaṇam*. Both terms are technical, and their full bearing, and characteristic difference from one another, is to be comprehended only from a careful study of those works which bear either of these titles. The Brāhmanical divines have, of course, not failed to give definitions of both, and shown what topics fall under the head of either. But, as Sāyaṇa (in his preface to his Commentary on the Aitareya Brāhmaṇam) justly remarks, all definitions of either term which were attempted, are unsatisfactory.

[2]. We have here nothing to do with the theological definitions of these two terms; we are only concerned with their meaning, from a literary point of view. And this we can state without reference to Brāhmanic authorities.

Each of the four Vedas (Rik, Yajus, Sāman, and Atharvan) has a *Mantra*, as well as a *Brāhmaṇa* portion. The difference between both may be briefly stated as follows: That part which contains the sacred prayers, the invocations of the different deities, the sacred verses for chanting at the sacrifices, the sacrificial formulas, blessings and curses, pronounced by priests is called *mantra*,<sup>1</sup> i.e., the produce of thinking. This word is of a very early date; for we find it in the Zend-Avesta in the form of *manthra* also. Its meaning there is that of a sacred prayer, or formula, to which a magical effect was ascribed, just as to the Vedic mantras. Zoroaster is called a *manthron*, i.e., a speaker of mantras, and one of the earliest names of the Scriptures of the Parsis, is *manthra ipenta*, i.e., the holy prayer (now corrupted to *mansar spent*).

---

<sup>1</sup> See more about it in Goldstücker, "Pāṇini, his Place in Sanscrit Literature," page 22.

This fact clearly shows, that the term *mantra* in its proper meaning was already known at that early period of Aryan history when the ancestors of the Brâhmanas and those of the Parsis (the ancient Iranians) lived as brother tribes peacefully together. This time was anterior to the combats of [3] the Devas and Asuras, which are so frequently mentioned in the Brâhmanas, the former representing the Hindus, the latter the Iranians.\*

At this time the whole sacred knowledge was, no doubt, comprised by the term *mantra*. The Brâhmanam was unknown; and there is actually nowhere in the whole Zend-Avesta a word to be found which conveys the same or a similar meaning which has been attached to the word "Brâhmanam" in the Indian Literature.

The Brâhmanam always presupposes the Mantra; for without the latter it would have no meaning, nay, its very existence would be impossible. By "Brâhmanam" we have always to understand that part of the Veda (Brâhmanical revelation) which contains speculations on the meaning of the mantras, gives precepts for their application, relates stories of their origin in connection with that of sacrificial rites, and explains the secret meaning of the latter. It is, to say it in short, a kind of primitive theology and philosophy of the Brahmins. The objects for these theological, philosophical, grammatical, etymological, and metrical speculations were the Mantras, and the sacrifices, principally the great ones, for the performance of which the Brahmins were actually trained, a custom which has obtained almost up to the present day in some parts of India (such as Mahârâstra).

[4] Etymologically the word is derived from *brahmân*<sup>2</sup> which properly

<sup>2</sup> See my Essays on the Sacred Language, Writings, and Religion of the Parsis, pp. 225-29.

<sup>3</sup> *Brahmân* is derived from *Brahma*. This is an abstract noun, in the neuter gender, of a root *bṛh* (original from *barh*), to which the two meanings "to raise," and "to grow" are given by the Indian grammarians. The latter thought both meanings so irreconcilable that they substituted two roots *bṛh*. But there is certainly no necessity for that. What grows, becomes bigger, and higher and thus "rising in height," is a necessary consequence of growth. It is, however, very doubtful whether the root *bṛh* without a preposition (such as *ud*) can convey the meaning "to raise." The meaning "to grow" is at any rate the original one. Thus derived *brahma* means originally "growth." That this was the original sense of the word, can be proved from other reasons also. *Brahma* is the same word in every respect, as the *baresma* of the Zend-Avesta, the 'h' of Sanscrit, being changed according to the phonetical laws of the Zend grammar, into a sibilant. This means a bunch of twigs tied together by a reed which is used up to the present day by the Parsi priests when performing the Homa ceremony. The Brahmins use at all their sacrifices a bunch of kuśa grass which is also tied together. They call it *Veda* (see *Áśv*, *śr. S.* 1, 11 *vedam patnyāi praddya*

signifies the Brahma priest who must [5] know all Vedas, and understand the whole course and meannig of the sacrifice. He is supposed to be a perfect master of divinity, and has in this capacity to direct and superintend the sacrificial ceremonies. The most eminent of this class of priests laid down rules for the proper performance of sacrificial rites, explained them, and defended their own opinions, on such topics against those of their antagonists; moreover, they delighted in speculations on matters of a more universal character, on this life, and that life, on the best means of securing wealth, progeny, fame, heaven, &c., on mind, soul, salvation, the Supreme Being; the dictum of such a Brahma priest who passed as a great authority, was called a *Brāhmaṇam*.

*vāchayet*, i.e., after having handed over to the wife of the sacrificer that bunch of kuśa grass which is called Veda, he should make her repeat this mantra, &c). *Veda* is a synonymous word for *brahma*; for the latter term is often explained by *veda* (so does Kaiyata in his notes on Patañjali's explanation of Pāṇini's Sātra 6, 3, 86, in the *Mahābhāṣya*), and thus identified with the designation of the whole body of sacred knowledge of the Brahmans. In the *Nighaṇṭavas*, the ancient collection of Vedic words, *brahma* occurs twice, once as a name for "food" (2, 7), and another time as that for "wealth." Both these meanings, principally the former, can easily be connected with that of "growth." They appear to be founded on passages of the *Brāhmaṇas*, where it is said that the Brahma is food. In the *Saṃhitā*, however, these meanings are never to be met with; but from this circumstance it certainly does not follow that they never existed. The meaning attached to the word in the *Saṃhitā* appears to be that of "sacred hymn chant." Śāyana explains it often by *stotra*, i.e. the performance of the Sāma chanters (see his commentary on *Rigveda*, 7, 22, 9) or by *stotrāni havinsīcha* (7, 23, 1), i.e. chants and offerings. This meaning is, however, not the original one, and does even in the *Saṃhitā* hardly express its proper sense. It cannot be an equivalent either for *mantra* or *sāman* or *stotram*, or *havis*, and if it appear to be used in one of these senses, it means their common source; for the hymn, repeated by the Hotar, as well as the chant of the Sāma singers and the oblations given to the fire by the Adhvaryu, are all equally made sacred by means of their participation in the *brahma*. Such expressions as, "to make the brahma," "to stir up the brahma," (*brahma jīvati*) throw some light on its nature. They show (as one may clearly see from such passages as *Taittiriya Brāhmaṇam* 1, 1) that it was regarded as a latent power, like electricity, which was to be stirred up at the time of the performance of a ceremony. The apparatus were the sacred vessels, or the hymns, or chants. So, at a certain ceremony at the morning libation of the Soma feast, the Adhvaryu and Prati-pasthātār put the two Grahas (Soma cups), called *Sukra* and *Manthi* (see *Āit. Br.* 3, 1) together, and address them in the following way, "Put, ye two (Grahas)! together the Brahma; may ye stir it up for me," &c., (*Taittir. Br.* 1, 1). This evidently means, that these two Grahas are put together for the purpose of eliciting the Brahma-power, and all the other powers, dependent upon it, such as the *Kṣatram*, &c. The presence of the *brahma* at every sacrifice is necessary; for it is the invisible link connecting the ceremony performed with the fruits wished for, such as sovereignty, leadership, cattle, food, &c.

It is, as we have seen, symbolically represented by a bunch of kuśa grass, which is always wandering from one person to another, as long as the sacrifice lasts. It expresses

[6] Strictly speaking, only the rule regarding the performance of a particular rite,<sup>4</sup> or the authoritative opinion on a certain point of speculative theology went by this name, and we have accordingly in the works called *Brāhmaṇas*, nothing more or less than collections of the dicta of those Brahma priests on the topics mentioned. Afterwards the term *Brāhmaṇam*, which originally signified only a single dictum, was applied to the whole collection.

In a still more comprehensive sense we have to understand by "Brāhmaṇa," a whole kind of literature, including the so-called *Aranyakas* and *Upaniṣads*,

Each Veda has a *Brāhmaṇam*, or collection of the dicta of Brahma priests, of its own. But they also show in style, expression, line of argument, and object and tendency of their speculations, such a close affinity, and even identity, that the common origin of all *Brāhmaṇas* is indisputable. They owe mainly their origin to those Brahmans who constituted themselves into regular sacrificial congregations, in order to perform the so-called *Sattras* or sacrificial sessions, some of which could last for many years. The legendary history of India knows of such sessions which are said to have lasted for one hundred, and even one thousand years.<sup>5</sup> Though these reports [7] are extravagant, they undoubtedly show that there was a time in Hindustan when large bodies of Brahmans spent almost their whole lives in sacrificing. This time is to be sought for at a very early period of Indian history; for the *Brāhmaṇas* with their frequent allusions and references to the *Sattras* of the *Ṛṣis* on the banks of the *Sarasvatī*, and those held by the half-mythical *Aṅgiras*, and by the *Adityas* (a class of gods), or even by the cows, trees, snakes, &c., presuppose their existence from times immemorial. Likewise we find in the *Mahābhārata* frequent mention made of these sacrificial sessions which constitute one of the characteristic features of the earliest Brahmanic settlements in the northwest of Hindustan. It is chiefly at these *Sattras* that we have to look for the development and refinement of the sacrificial art, and the establishment of certain rules regarding the performance of sacrificial ceremonies.

---

the productive power in nature, which manifests itself in the growth of plants, and all other creatures. The sacrificer wishes by means of the mystical process of the sacrifice to get hold of it; for only then he is sure of obtaining anything he might wish for.

<sup>4</sup> So are, for instance, the rules given for the repetition of the *Dūrohaṇam* (4, 19) quoted as a "*Brāhmaṇam*" (in 6, 25). See also 8, 2.

<sup>5</sup> See *Mahābhārata* 3, 105, 13, where a *Sattra*, *Iṣṭākṛita* by name, is mentioned as lasting for one thousand years.

When the Brāhmaṇas were brought into that form, in which we possess them now, not only the whole *kalpa* (i.e. the way of performing the sacrificial ceremonies) was settled, save some minor points, but even the symbolical and mystical meaning of the majority of rites. It took, no doubt, many centuries before the almost endless number of rites and ceremonies, and their bewildering complications could form themselves into such a regular system of sacrificial rules, as we find already exhibited in the Brāhmaṇas. For the Sūtras which belong to each class of Brāhmaṇas generally contain nothing novel, [8] no innovation in the sacrificial art; they supply only the *external* form to a system which is already complete in the Brāhmaṇas, and serve as text-books to the sacrificial priests. And even in their arrangement they follow often their Brāhmaṇas to which they belong. So for instance the fourth, fifth, and sixth Adhyayas of the Aśvalāyana Sūtras, which treat of the Agniṣṭoma, Soma sacrifice, and its modifications, Ukthya, Śoḷaṣī, and Atirātra, closely correspond to the three first books, and the two first chapters of the fourth, of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇam; and the seventh and eighth Adhyāya of those Sūtras treat exactly of the same subjects, as the three last chapters of the fourth book, and the fifth and sixth books of our Brāhmaṇam, viz., on the various parts of the Sattras, or sacrificial sessions, and the numerous recitations required for their performance. In many passages, the Aitareya Brāhmaṇam and the Aśvalāyana Sūtras even literally agree. The latter could, from their very nature as a "string of rules" for the guidance of the sacrificial priests, dispense with almost all the numerous speculations of the meaning and effect of certain verses and rites, and all points of controversy in which some of the Brāhmaṇas abound; but as regards the actual performance of rites, what mantras were required at certain occasions, and in what way they were to be repeated, the Sūtras must give much more detail and be far more complete than the Brāhmaṇas. From this nature of both classes of works, and the relation in which they stand to one [9] another, it would not be difficult to show, that both might have originated at the same time. Pāṇini distinguishes between old and new Brāhmaṇas as well as between old and new Kalpa works (Sūtras). The strict distinction between a Brāhmaṇa and Sūtra period is, on a closer inquiry, hardly tenable. The Brāhmaṇas were only more complete collections of the same traditional stock which was in existence on the sacrificial art and its meaning than the Sūtras, which were compiled for practical purposes only.

We may safely conclude from the complicated nature and the multitude of the Brahminical sacrifices which were already developed



and almost complete at the time of the composition of the Vedic hymns, not only at that of the Brāhmaṇas, that the compilation of sacrificial manuals containing all the rules for the actual performance of the duties of a certain class of priests (such as the Hotṛis or repeaters of the Ṛik verses, the Udgâṭṛis, the chanters of the Ṛik verses, and the Adhvaryus, the manual labourers and sacred cooks), was quite necessary at a very early time, certainly not posterior to the collection of the Mantras and the dicta of the Brahma priests into separate works.

The Sûtras contain many special rules which will be in vain sought for in the Brāhmaṇas, but which are there simply presupposed. So we do not find, for instance, the description of the Darśapurnāma iṣṭhi (the New and Full Moon sacrifice), or that of the Châturmāsya-iṣṭi, in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇam, though their names are occasionally mentioned, but [10] we find them in the Aśvalāyana Sûtras. The recital of the Sâmidhent verses (required when kindling the fire at the commencement of any sacrificial rite) is briefly mentioned in the Brāhmaṇas, but minutely described in the Sûtras (1, 2). That they were left out in the Brāhmaṇam cannot be accounted for by assuming that their exposition was alien to the purpose of its author, or that they were unknown to him, but only by believing, that they were regarded as too trivial matters, too commonly known to deserve any special notice on his part. Certain modifications in repeating mantras (required at the great Soma sacrifices), such as the *Dûrohanam*, the *Nyâṅkha*, the peculiar construction and repetition of the *Ṣoṣaṣi* and *Vâlkhilya* Sastras, &c., are in the Brāhmaṇam almost as minutely and accurately described, as we find them in the Sûtras (compare, for instance, Ait. Br. 4, 19 with Aśv. Śr. S. 8, 2). This clearly shows that the authors of the Brāhmaṇas knew as well all the details of the sacrificial art as the compilers of the Sûtras. The circumstance that many such things, as the recital of the Sâmidhent verses, &c., were left out in the Brāhmaṇam, though they are neither very simple to comprehend, nor were they unknown, entitles us to assume that they were taught in separate treatises, which could be nothing else than works like the present Sûtras.

The Sûtras which we possess at present are, no doubt, posterior to the Brāhmaṇas to which they belong; but there is every reason to believe that there were Sûtras more ancient, and simple in their [11] style, which served the authors of the present ones as sources of information, and these works may have been co-eval with the majority of our Brāhmaṇas.

Although we cannot discover any material difference between the Brāhmaṇas and the Sûtras so as to regard the latter as developing and

systematizing the ideas contained in the former, as is the case with the Vedānta philosophy in reference to the Upaniṣads, yet there exists one between the Brāhmaṇas, and the Mantras and hymns. This difference is, however, not very great, and can be accounted for partially from other causes than that of age. Already the hymns presuppose a settled ritual, and contain many speculative ideas similar to those of the Brāhmaṇas.

Some scholars hold that the occurrence of sacrificial terms, or of philosophical and mystical ideas, are suggestive of the late date of the hymn in which they are found. But these circumstances do by no means afford any sure test as to the relative age of the Vedic hymns. One has even drawn a strict line of distinction between a Mantra and Chhandas period, assigning to the former all the sacrificial hymns, to the latter those expressive of religious and devotional feelings in general, without any reference to sacrificial rites. But I have grave doubts whether this distinction will prove tenable on further inquiries, chiefly if this question as to the age of a certain hymn is made entirely to depend upon what period (the Mantra or Chhandas period) it might belong to. There are sacrificial hymns which, to judge from their style and their general ideas, must [12] be as ancient as any which have been assigned to the Chhandas period.

I may instance here the hymn required at the horse-sacrifice (Rigveda, 1, 162) and the Nābhānediṣṭha Śukta (10, 61; on its origin see Ait. Br. 5, 14). The former is assigned by Max Müller<sup>6</sup> to the Mantra period (between 1000-800) on no other ground but because of its containing technical terms of the sacrificial art. But this reason is certainly not sufficient to make it late. On the contrary, its rather unpolished style, its poor imagery, its beginning with the invocation of the most ancient triad of Indian gods, *Mitra*, *Varuṇa*, and *Aryaman*, the very names of which deities are even to be met with in kindred nations, such as the Iranians and Greeks, the mentioning of several sacrificial priests by obsolete and uncommon names,—all these circumstances combined tend to show, that it is rather one of the earliest than one of the latest productions of Vedic poetry. We find in it the sacrificial art, if compared with its description in the Brāhmaṇas, in its infancy, yet containing all the germs of the latter system. Because of almost all incidents attendant upon a sacrifice being mentioned in this hymn, it affords us the best means for investigating into the extent

---

<sup>6</sup> History of Ancient Sanscrit Literature, page 553.

and development of the sacrificial art at the time of its composition. Let us point out some of the most remarkable facts which may be elicited from it.

[13] In the fifth verse the names of the performing priests are mentioned. They are only six in number, *viz.* *Hotar*, *Adhvaryu*, *Avayâj*, *Agnimindha*, *Grâvagrâbha*, and *Samstar*. Four of these names are quite uncommon or obsolete. *Avayâj* is the *Pratiprasthâtar*, *Agnimindha* (the fire-kindler), the *Agnîdhra*, *Grâvagrâbha* the *Grâvastut*, and *Samstar* the *Maitrâvaruṇa* of the *Brâhmaṇas*. The small number of priests at the horse-sacrifice (*âśvamedha*), which was at later times, as we may learn from descriptions given of it in the epic poems, the greatest, most complicated and costly which the Brahmins used to perform, must surprise, principally if we consider, that the *Agniṣṭoma*, which was the most simple Soma sacrifice, required for its performance already at the time of the *Brâhmaṇas*, and even anterior to it, sixteen officiating priests.

There can be no doubt that in the most ancient times a comparatively small number of priests was sufficient for the performance of a simple animal or Soma sacrifice. The two most ancient offices were those of the *Hotar* and *Adhvaryu*; they were known already when the ancient Iranians separated from the ancestors of the Hindus; for we easily recognise them by the names *Zota* and *Rathwi* (now corrupted to *Raspi*) in the *Zend-Avesta*.

The *Pratiprasthâtar* appears to have been an assistant of the *Adhvaryu* from a very remote time; for we find the two *Âsvins* called the two *Adhvaryus* (*Ait. Br.* I, 18), by which expression we can only understand the *Adhvaryu* and [14] his constant assistant the *Pratiprasthâtar*. That there was a plurality of *Adhvaryus* already at the time of the *Ṛṣis*, we may learn from several passages of the *Saṁhitâ* of the *Ṛigveda* (2, 37, 2; 8, 2, 4).

The fourth priest here mentioned is the *Agnîdhra*; for by the term *Agnimindha* we can only understand him. His office appears to be very old and he is once mentioned by his very name *Agnîdhra* in a Vedic song (2, 36, 4). Besides, we meet with the well-known formula which he has, as the protector of the sacrifice, to repeat as often as the *Adhvaryu* commences a set of oblations accompanied by the *Anuvâkyâ* and *Yajya* mantras of the *Hotar*. This is *astu śrauṣat* (1, 139, 1), which he has to repeat when the *Adhvaryu* calls upon him to do so, by the formula *ô śrāvaya*.<sup>7</sup> Before he repeats it, he takes a wooden sword, called

<sup>7</sup> This formula is repeated just before the commencement of the so-called *Prayâjnas*. *Âśval. Śr.* S. 1, 4, gives the following rules; *Adhvaryur âśrāvayati pratyâśrāvayati*

*sphya*\* into his hand, and ties round it twelve stalks of *kuśa* grass, called *idhmasannahanāni* (what is tied round the wood), making three knots (*trisaṇdhana*). He must hold it up as long as the principal offerings last, from [15] the time of the beginning of the *Prayājas* till the *Sviṣṭakṛit* is over. The purpose of this act as explained by the *Śrotriya*s (sacrificial priests) of the present day is to keep the *Rakṣasas* and evil spirits away from the sacrifice. Now the whole ceremony, along with the formulas used, resembles so closely what is recorded in the *Zend-Avesta* of the angel *Šraoša* (now called *Seroš*), that we can fairly conclude that the office, or at any rate, the duties, of the *Agnīdhra* priests were already known to the *Aryas* before the *Iranians* separated from the *Indians*. *Seroš*, as may be seen from the *Seroš Yasht* (*Yasna* 57), holds in his hand a sword (*śnaithis*) in order to fight against the *Devas*, and to keep them away from the creation of *Ormazd*. He first spread the sacred grass or twigs; he first repeated (*fraśrāvayat*) the sacred prayers. His very name of *Šraoša* reminds of the call *śrauṣaṭ*. One of the duties of the *Agnīdhra*, or *Agnī*t, was to kindle the fire. Such an office is known also to the *Parsi* ritual. It is that of the *Atarevakašo*, i. e. who feeds the fire, a name often applied to the *Rathwi*, in which we have recognised the *Adhvaryu*.

The fifth priest is the *Grāvagrābha*, a name no further mentioned in other *Vedic* books. *Sāyana* identifies him with the *Grāvastut*\* of the ceremonial of the *Brāhmaṇas*. The office of the latter is to repeat the *Pāvamānya* verses when the *Soma* juice is being prepared. But the name *Grāvagrābha* [16] implies more, for it means, one who holds, or seizes the *Grāvaṇas*<sup>10</sup> (*Soma* squeezing stones). This is done by the *Adhvaryu* himself. In ancient times the *Soma* juice was very likely extracted by that priest who had to repeat the mantras for the purification of the *Soma* juice, that is, by the *Grāvastut*. Such a priest who was engaged in the preparation of the *Soma* (*Homa*) juice is also known in the *Zend-Avesta*.

*agnīdhrah*, i. e. the *Adhvaryu* calls, *ō śrāvaya*, to which the *Agnīdhra* responds by *astu śrauṣaṭ*. Both formulas are mentioned or alluded to in two *Sūtras* of *Pāṇini* (8, 2, 91-92), who teaches that the first vowel in *śrāvaya*, and the first and second in *ō śrāvaya* are to be pronounced in the *pluta* way, i. e. with three moras. Regarding *śrauṣaṭ* *Āśval*. gives the same rule (*astu śrauṣaṭ iti aukaram plāvayan*); but the pronunciation of *ō śrāvaya* he does not particularly mention.

\* Other interpretations have been given of this word by European scholars. But being myself in possession of a *sphya*, and having seen its use at the sacrifice, I can prove beyond any doubt, that it is a wooden sword.

\* On his office, see 6, 1-2, pp. 379-80.

<sup>10</sup> See the note on the preparation of the *Soma* 7, 32 pp. 488-90.

His name there is *havanan*,<sup>11</sup> i.e. one who makes or prepares the *havana*=*savana* "libation."

The sixth priest mentioned in the *Aśvamedha* hymn is the *Śamstar*, i.e. the repeater of *Śastras*. This is no doubt the *Maitrāvaruṇa* of the later ritual, who is several times mentioned by the name of *Prāśāstar* in other passages of the *Saṁhitā* (1, 94, 6) and in the *Brāhmaṇas*. *Sāyana* takes the same view.

Besides the names of the officiating priests, we have to examine some of the technical terms of the sacrificial art. In the 15th verse we find [17] the expressions, *iṣṭam*, *vitam*, *abhiḡārtam*, *vaṣaṭkṛitam*, which all refer to the repetition of the *Yājyâ* mantra by the *Hotar* when the *Adhvaryu* is ready to throw the offering into the fire. *Iṣṭam* is the technical term for pronouncing the *Yājyâ* mantra itself; *abhiḡārtam*, which is the same as *âḡārtam*, signifies the formula *ye yajāmahe* (generally called *âgur*) which always precedes the *Yājyâ* verse; *vaṣaṭkṛitam* is the pronunciation of the formula *vâuṣaṭ* at the end of the *Yājyâ* verse; *vitam* refers to the formula *Agne vihi*, which follows the *vaṣaṭkâra*, and is itself followed by another *vaṣaṭkâra* (the so-called *Anuvaṣṭkâra*).

Let us now sum up the evidence furnished by this sacrificial hymn as bearing upon the history of the sacrificial art in its relationship to the mass of other Vedic songs on the one, and to the *Brāhmaṇas* on the other, side.

In examining the names of the officiating priests, we can here discover only two classes instead of the four, known to other Vedic hymns, and principally to the *Brāhmaṇas*. We have only *Adhvaryus* and *Hotṛis*, but no *Brahma* priests, and no *Udgâṭris* (chanters). Without the two latter classes no solemn sacrifice at which *Soma* was used could be performed even at a time far anterior to the *Brāhmaṇas*. There is no doubt, the introduction of each of these two classes marks a new epoch in the history of the sacrificial art, just as the separation of the offices of *Adh-*

<sup>11</sup> See *Viśparad* 3, 1. The term *havana* occurs in the *Gāthās* for *Homa* (*Yāśna*, 10). That it means the same as the Vedic *savana* with which it is identical follows unmistakably from the context. A *fratarem havānem* and an *uparem havanem*, that is, a first and second libation, are even distinguished (*Yāśna* 10, 2 ed. Westergaard). The *fratarem havanem* is the *prātaḥ savanam*, i.e. morning libation of the ritual books; the *uparem*, i. e. latter, following, corresponds to the *mādhyaṇḍina savanam*. The *Parsi* priests prepare up to the present day actually the *Homa* juice twice when performing the *Homa* ceremony. The first preparation takes place before the *Zota* (the *Hotar* of the *Brahmans*) appears; the second commences at the beginning of the proper ceremony, and is finished along with it. The *Zota* drinks the *Homa* which was prepared first by the *Raspi* (*Adhvaryu*); that one prepared during the ceremony is thrown into a well as a kind of offering.

varyu and Hotar in the ante-Vedic times, indicates the first step in the development of the art of sacrificing. At that early time when the [18] Iranians left their Indian brethren on account of a bitter religious contest, which is known in the Brâhmaṇas as the struggle between the Devas and Asuras, already the offices of an Adhvaryu and Hotar were distinct, as we may learn from the Zend-Avesta, which exhibits the religion of the Asuras (Ahura religion, its professors calling themselves *ahurotkêshô* = *asura-dîkṣâ*, i.e. initiated into the Asura rites).

But the offices of Udgâtris and that of the Brahma priests were not known to the Aryas at that time; they were introduced subsequently, after the separation. In many Vedic hymns we find, however, the duties principally of the former class (the chanters) mentioned. They are often juxtaposed with those of the Hotars. The term for the performance of the Hotri-priests is *śams*, to praise, recite; that for that of the Udgâtris *stu* or *gâi* to sing (see, for instance, Rîgveda Saṁh (8, 1, 1; 6, 62, 5; 6, 69, 2-3); besides the technical names *uktha* = *Śastra* and *Stoma*, *sâma*, are frequently to be met with (see 8, 1, 15; 3, 3, 6; 6, 3; 16, 9; 14, 11; 6, 24, 7, &c.). Now the absence of all such terms, indicative of the functions of the Udgâtris (chanters) in the Aśvamedha hymn is certainly remarkable. Their not occurring might, perhaps, be accounted for by the supposition that the chanters were not required at the horse sacrifice. It is true, several smaller sacrifices, such as the Darsapûrnamâsa, the Châturmâsya Iṣtis and the animal sacrifice (if performed apart without forming part of a Soma sacrifice) are performed without any chanting; [19] but for Soma sacrifices of whatever description, the chanters are as indispensable as the Hotars. That the Aśvamedha was connected with a Soma sacrifice<sup>12</sup> already at the time of the composition of the hymn in question, undoubtedly follows from the office of *Grâvagrâbha* being mentioned in it; for this priest is only required for the extracting of the Soma juice, and has nothing whatever to do with any other sacrificial rite. The mentioning of the Śaṁstar (Maitrâvaruṇa) is another indication that the Aśvamedha already at that early time was accompanied by a Soma sacrifice. For one of the principal duties of the Maitrâvaruṇa, who may be called the first assistant of the Hotar, is to repeat Śastras, which are only required at Soma sacrifices as the necessary accompaniments of all chants.

Besides the Udgâtris, we miss the class of the Brahma priests, viz. Brahmâ, Brâhmaṇachamsî, and Subrahmanyâ, whose services are required

<sup>12</sup> According to Aśval. Śr. Sâtras (10, 8) there are three Soma days (*satyâni*) required for the horse sacrifice.

at all great sacrifices. The Brahmâ cannot, even at small sacrifices, such as the Darśapûrnamâsa Iṣṭi, be dispensed with. The Brahmanāchamsî and Subrahmayâ are at Soma sacrifices as indispensable as the Maitravaruṇa; the first has to repeat also Śastras for the chants, the latter to invite every day Indra to the Soma feast (see the note to 6, 3, pp. 382-84).

The introduction of the Brahmâ priest marks no doubt a new era in the history of the sacrificial art; [20] for to judge from the nature of his duties as superintendent of the sacrificial ceremonies, he was only necessary at a time when the sacrifice had become already very complicated, and was liable to many mistakes. The origin of the office dates earlier than the Brâhmaṇas. Unmistakeable traces of it are to be found already in the Saṃhitâ of the Rîgveda. In one passage 1, 10, 1, the Brahmâ priests (*brahmânas*) are juxtaposed with the Hotṛis (*arkinaḥ*) and Udgâtṛis (*gâyat-rinaḥ*). They are there said to "raise Indra just as (one raises) a reed." Similarly we find together *gâyata*, chant, *śamsata*, praise, and *brahma kṛinuta* make the Brahma (8, 32, 17). In 10, 91, 10 the Brahmâ is mentioned along with other priests also, such as the Potar, Neṣṭar, &c. The little work done by the Brahmâ priests, or rather their idleness, is mentioned, 8, 92, 30, "do not be as lazy as a Brahmâ priest" (*mo ṣu brahmeva tandrayur bhuvah*). That the Brahmâ priests were thus reproached may clearly be seen from Ait. Brâhm. 5, 34. The Brahmâ priest is the speaker or expounder of religious matters (10, 71, 11; 117, 8), in which capacity they became the authors of the Brâhmaṇas. That the Brahmâ was expected to know all secret things, may be inferred from several passages (10, 85, 3; 16; 35; 36). Bṛhaspati, the teacher of the gods, is also called *brahmâ* (10, 143, 3), and Agni is honoured with the same name (7, 7, 5), as well as his pious worshippers of old, the so-called Āṅgirasah (7, 42, 1). Sometimes the name signifies the Brahman as distinguished from the Kṣattriyas *brahmaṇi rājani vâ* (1, 108, 7).

[21] It is certainly remarkable, that none of the Brahmâ priests is to be found among the priests enumerated in the Aśvamedha hymn, and we may safely conclude, that their offices were not known at that time. The word *brahma* (neuter) itself occurs in it (in the seventeenth verse), "If any one, in order to make thee sit, did thee harm by kicking thee with his heels, or striking thee with a whip violently so that thou didst snort, I cause all to go off from thee by means of the Brahma, just as I make flow (the drops of melted butter) by means of a Sruṇa (sacrificial spoon) over the piece which is among the ready-made offerings (*adhvareṣu*). Brahma has here very likely its original meaning, "the sacrificial grass"

or a certain bunch of it (see the note on pages 4, 5 of this Introduction). For the meaning "prayer," which is here given to it by Sāyaṇa, does not suit the simile. In order to understand it fully, one has to bear in mind that the Adhvaryu after having cooked and made ready any offering (Purodāśa or flesh, or Charu, &c.) generally pours from a *Śruṅ* some drops of melted butter over it. Now the *brahma* by means of which the priest is to soothe all injury which the sacrificial horse may have received from kicking or striking, is compared with this *Śruṅ*; the drops of melted butter are then the several stalks of the bunch of the sacrificial grass, required at all sacrifices and their taking out, and throwing away (as is done at all sacrifices, see note 8 to page 79), is compared to the flowing of the drops from the sacrificial spoon.

Not only is the number of priests less, but the [22] ceremonies are also more simple. It appears from verse 15th, that there was no *Puronuvākya* or introductory mantra required, but the *Yājyā* alone was sufficient. The latter consisted already of the same parts as in the *Brāhmaṇas*, viz. the *Agur*, the *Yājyā* mantra, the *Vaṣaṭkāra* and *Anuvaṣaṭkāra* (see note 32 to page 95, page 126, and note 11 to page 133-34). The *Agur* or the introductory formula, *ye yajāmahe*, i.e., "what (gods are), these we worship by sacrificing," is very ancient, and seems to go back even beyond the properly so-called Vedic times; for we meet it even with the same name already in the *Zend-Avesta* (see note 11 to page 134); even a large number of the *Parsi* prayer formulas commence with it up to this day, viz. *yuzāmaidē*. The *Vaṣaṭkāra* or the call *vāṣaṭ*, and the *Anuvaṣaṭkāra*, or the second call *vāṣaṭ* preceded by *Agni rīhi*, i.e., "Agni eat (the food)," must be also very old, though we do not find any trace of them in the *Parsi* ritual, which circumstance can be, however, easily accounted for. The first call *vāṣaṭ* being required in the very moment of the offering being thrown into the fire, and the second at once after it, there was no occasion for them at the *Zoroastrian* sacrifices; for the priests are not allowed to throw flesh, or *Homa*, or even cakes into the fire; they have only to show their offerings to the sacred element. In the *Saṁhitā* itself, the *Vaṣaṭkāra* is frequently mentioned, and in hymns which show by no means a modern origin (see 1, 14, 8; 120, 4; 21, 5; 7, 14, 3; 15, 6; 99, 7, &c); some of them apparently allude to the [23] *Anuvaṣaṭkāra*, (so, for instance, 7, 156, *semām vetu vaṣaṭkṛitīm*, 'may he eat this piece' offered by the call *vaṣaṭ*! *vi* (in *vīhi*) being one of the characteristic terms of the *Anuvaṣaṭkāra*).

From all we have seen as yet it clearly follows that the *Aśvamedha* hymn is by no means a late, but a very early, production of Vedic poetry,



and that consequently a strict distinction between a Chhandas and Mantra period, making the former by about two hundred years older than the latter, is hardly admissible.

The same result is to be gained from a more close examination of other pre-eminently sacrificial hymns, which all would fall under the Mantra period. There being here no occasion to investigate into all hymns of that character, I will only here make some remarks on the Nābhānediṣṭha hymns (10, 61-62). Their history is given in the Ait. Brāhm. itself (5, 14). They are traced to Manu, the progenitor of the human race, who gave them to his son, Nābhānediṣṭha. He should communicate them to the Aṅgiras, for enabling them to perform successfully the ceremonies of the sixth day (in the Śaḷaha, (see note 9 to page 279), and receive all their property as a sacrificial reward.

This whole story appears to have no other foundation,<sup>13</sup> but the two hymns themselves, principally the [24] latter. The first is very difficult to understand, the second is on the whole simple. Both are by tradition ascribed to Nābhānediṣṭha, the son of Manu, whose existence is very doubtful. They differ so much in style, that they cannot have the same author. Several traits of the legend, however, are to be found in them. The refrain of the first four verses of 10, 62 which is addressed to the Aṅgiras, "receive the son of Manu," re-occurs in the legend; also the gift of a thousand. In a verse of the former (10, 61, 18) the word *nābhānediṣṭha* occurs, but it does not mean there a human, but some divine, being. I give the 18th and 19th verses in translation.

(18) "His relative, the wealthy Nābhānediṣṭha who, directing his thoughts towards thee, speaks on looking forward (as follows) 'this our navel is the highest; as often as required I was behind him (the Nābhānediṣṭha on earth).'"

(19) "This is my navel, here is what resides with me; these gods are mine; I am everything. Those who are first born, and those who are born for a second time (by reproduction),—the cow milked that (seed) from the truth, (and) they are born."<sup>14</sup>

<sup>13</sup> It is to be found also with little difference in the Taittiriya Saṁhitā 3, 1, 9, 4-6. Instead of the two Suktas (hymns) Manu there is said to have given his son a Brāhmaṇam on a certain rite concerning the share of Rudra in the Soma libation, to help the Aṅgiras to heaven. The "sixth day" is not mentioned in it. The man in a "blackish dress" of the Aitareya Br. is here called Rudra.

<sup>14</sup> The explanation given by Sāyana of these difficult verses is very artificial. He tries to get out of the hymn everywhere the story told of Nābhānediṣṭha in the Ait. Br. 5, 14.

From these two verses as well as from several others in it (principally 2 and 5-8 describing Prajâpati's illicit intercourse with his [25] daughter, see Ait. Br. 3, 33), we may clearly perceive that Nâbhânediṣṭha and the hymn in question refer to generation. This view is fully corroborated by the application of it at the sacrifice, as expounded by the Brâhmana, and as even pre-supposed in the hymn itself.

We know from various passages of the Brâhmanas, that one of the principal acts of the sacrificial priests was to make a new body to the sacrificer, and produce him anew by mantras, and various rites, by making him mystically undergo the same process to which he owed his natural life. So, for instance, the whole Pravargya ceremony (see note 1 to pages 41-43), the Aja and Pra-uga Śastras (see Ait. Br. 2, 35-38; 3, 2) of the morning libation, and the so-called Śilpa Śastras (6, 27-31) of the Hotri-priests are intended for this purpose. Of the latter the two Nâbhânediṣṭha hymns form the two first parts, representing the seed effused, and its transformation to an embryo in its rudest state (see 6, 27). Nâbhânediṣṭha is the sperm when effused; after having undergone some change in the womb, it is called Narāśamsa.<sup>15</sup> That the hymn originally had such a mystical sense, is evident from the two first verses :

[26] (1) "May this awful Brahma, which he (Prajâpati) thus skilfully pronounced in words at the congregation, at the assembly, fill the seven Hotars on the day of cooking (the sacrificial food), when his (the sacrificer's) parents (and other) liberal men (the priests) are making (his body)."

(2) "He established (as place) for the reception of his gift the altar (*vedi*), destroying and ejecting the enemy with his weapons. (After having thus made the place safe) he then hastily under a very loud cry poured forth his sperm in one continuous (stream)."

The meaning of these two verses can only be the following: the poet who was no doubt a sacrificial priest himself wishes, that the hymn which he regards as a revelation from Prajâpati, who repeated it at the great sacrificial session which he is so frequently said to have held, may fill the seven Hotri-priests when they, with the same liberality as Prajâpati

---

<sup>15</sup> This idea must be very old; for we find an unmistakeable trace of it in the Zoroastrian tradition. So we read in the Bundelesh (page 80 in Westergaard's edition of the Pehlevi text) that the angel Nerioseng (*nerioseng yazd* = *narāśamsa yajata* in Sanscrit) intercepted the three particles of sperm which Zoroaster is said to have once lost, and out of which the three great prophets, *Oshadar* (*bâmi*), *Oshadar mâh*, and *Sosiosh* are expected to spring at the end of the world. Nerioseng clothed the said sperms with lustre and strength (*rosnus Zor*), and handed them over to *Anâhit* (the Persian Venus) to look at them. They are guarded against the attacks of the *Devas* (the Indian gods) by 999,999 *Frohars* (a kind of angels).

(when he poured forth his sperm) are like parents making by their hymns the new celestial body to the sacrificer. The place for reception of the seed poured out mystically in prayer by the Hotars, is the altar; for standing near it (and even touching it with their feet) they repeat the mantras. The reason that they have to regard the Veda as the safe receptacle of the seed, is to be sought for in the antecedent of Prajâpati, who prepared it for the purpose, defending [27] it against the attacks of enemies. After having made it safe, he poured out his seed whence then all creatures sprang (see Ait. Br. 3, 34).

Nâbhânediṣṭha is, according to the verses above quoted, the heavenly guardian of all germs of generation; all gods, men, beasts, &c., come from him. His assistance is required when the sacrificial priests are producing the new celestial body of the sacrificer. He looks down from heaven at his relative, that is, the seeds containing the germ of new life poured out mystically by the Hotars in their prayers. His navel is the centre of all births in the universe; as being nearest ('nearest to the navel' is the literal meaning of *nâbhânediṣṭha*), he is the guardian of all seeds. Every seed on earth has only effect as far as he participates in it. We have here the Zoroastrian idea of the Fravashis (Frohars) who are the prototypes of all things existing.<sup>16</sup> The word *nâbhânediṣṭha* must be very old; for we find it several times in the form *nabânazdistâ* in the Zend Avesta. It is an epithet of the Fravashis (Yasna, 1, 18. Yashts 13, 156), and signifies the lineal descendants in future generations<sup>17</sup> (Vend. 4, 5-10 Westergaard).

[28] Although the Nâbhânediṣṭha hymn (10, 61) is purely sacrificial, and composed at a time when the Rîṣis already indulged in speculations on the mystical meaning of sacrificial rites, no trace can be found, to show that it is a modern composition. The circumstance, that it is already in the Aitareya Brâhmaṇam traced to Manu, the progenitor of the human race, shows, that its origin is entirely lost in the depths of antiquity. The mentioning of *Kakṣîvan* in verse 16, and the occurrence of the "seven Hotars" (in the 1st verse) are no proofs of a late origin. For

---

<sup>16</sup> See my Essays on the Sacred Language, Writings and Religion of the Parsis, page 186.

<sup>17</sup> This is the sense of *narâm nabânâzdistânâm*, in the fourth Frargard of the Vendidad. In the passage in question, the punishment consequent on the breach of a promise is said to extend to so and so many *narâm nabânâzdistânâm*, literally, men who are nearest the navel of the offender, that is, his lineal descendants. The Pehlevi translation gives in its notes about the same meaning to it. So it has for instance to 4, 5 the note: 300 *sawât bîm dâresn* "for three hundred years there will be danger (for the nabânâzdistas)." This is also the opinion of many Dasturs.

Kakṣivan appears as a celebrated Ṛṣi, who was distinguished as a great chanter and Soma drinker in many other passages, principally in the first book (see *Rigveda Samh.* 1, 18, 1-2; 51, 13; 116, 7; 117, 6; 4, 26, 1), who enjoyed the special favour of the Aśvins. He is to the majority of the Vedic Ṛṣis whose hymns are kept, a personage of as remote an antiquity as *Kāṇva*, *Uśanās*, the *Āṅgiras*, &c. The "seven Hotars"<sup>18</sup> occur several times besides (3, 29, 14; 8, 49, 16), most of them with their very names, *viz.*, Potar, Neṣṭar, Agnīd, Praśāstar, &c., (1, 15, 2-5; 9; 1, 94, 6; 10, 91, 10).

The second Nābhānediṣṭha hymn is certainly later than the first, and contains the germs of the later legend on Nābhānediṣṭha. The reason that it was also referred to him, is certainly to be sought [29] for in the 4th verse, where is said, "This one (*i.e.* I) speaks through the navel,<sup>19</sup> (*nābhā*), hails you in your residence; hear, O sons of the gods, ye Ṛṣis (to my speech)." The song is addressed to the *Āṅgiras*, who are requested to receive the poet. The gift of thousand is also mentioned.

Let us, after this discussion regarding the antiquity of the *Aśva-medha* and *Nābhānediṣṭha* hymns, return to the general question on the relationship between the pre-eminently sacrificial mantras and the other production of Vedic poetry.

If we look at the history of poetry with other nations, we nowhere find profane songs precede religious poetry. The latter owes its origin entirely to the practical worship of beings of a higher order, and must, as every art does, go through many phases before it can arrive at any state of perfection and refinement. Now, in the collection of the hymns of the *Rigveda*, we find the religious poetry already so highly developed, the language so polished, the metres already so artificially composed, as to justify the assumption, that the songs which have reached our time, are not the earliest productions of the poetical genius, and the devout mind of the ancient Indians. Generations of poets and many family [30] schools in which sacred poetry was regularly taught, just as the art of the bards and scalds with the Celtic and Scandinavian nations, must have preceded that period to which we owe the present

<sup>18</sup> They are, according to the *Brāhmaṇas* (see *Alt. Br.* 6, 10-12), Hotar, Maitrāvaruṇa, *Brāhmaṇāchhanasi*, *Achhāvāka*, Potar, Neṣṭar, and Agnīdhra.

<sup>19</sup> This expression appears to be strange. It implies a very ancient idea, which must have been current with the Iranians and Indians alike. The navel was regarded as the seat of an internal light, by means of which the seers received what they called revelation. It is up to the present day a belief of the Parsi priests, that the *Dasturs* or High-priests have a fire in their navel, by means of which they can see things which are hidden. This reminds us of some phenomena in modern somnambulism.

collection. If an old song was replaced by a new one, which appeared more beautiful and finished, the former was, in most cases, irrecoverably lost. Old and new poets are frequently mentioned in the hymns of the R̥gveda; but the more modern R̥ṣis of the Vedic period appear not to have regarded the productions of their predecessors with any particular reverence which might have induced them to keep their early relics.

Now the question arises, are the finished and polished hymns of the R̥gveda with their artificial metres the most ancient relics of the whole religious literature of the Brāhmans, or are still more ancient pieces in the other Vedic writings to be found? It is hardly credible, that the Brahmanical priests employed at their sacrifices in the earliest times hymns similar to those which were used when the ritual became settled. The first sacrifices were no doubt simple offerings performed without much ceremonial. A few appropriate solemn words, indicating the giver, the nature of the offering, the diety to which as well as the purpose for which it was offered, and addresses to the objects that were offered, were sufficient. All this could be embodied in the sacrificial formulas known in later times principally by the name of *Yajus*, whilst the older one appears to have been *Yāja* (preserved in *pra-yāja*, *anu-yāja*, &c). The invocation of the deity by different names, [31] and its invitation to enjoy the meal prepared, may be equally old. It was justly regarded only as a kind of *Yajus*, and called *Nigada*<sup>20</sup> or *Nivid*. The latter term was principally applied to the enumeration of the titles, qualities, &c., of a particular deity, accompanied with an invitation. At the most ancient times it appears that all sacrificial formulas were spoken by the Hotar alone; the Adhvaryu was only his assistant, who arranged the sacrificial compound, provided the implements, and performed all manual labour. It was only at the time when regular metrical verses and hymns were introduced into the ritual, that a part of the duties of the Hotar devolved on the Adhvaryu. There are, in the present ritual, traces to be found, that the Hotar actually must have performed part of the duties of the Adhvaryu.

According to the ritual which appears to have been in force for the last three thousand years without undergoing any considerable change, it is one of the principal duties of the Adhvaryu to give orders

---

<sup>20</sup> See Madhusūdana's *Prasthānabheda* in Weber's *Indische Studien*, i, page 14, and the *Bhāgavata Purāṇa* 12, 6, 52 (in the Bombay edition) where the *yajurgāṇa*, i. e. the series of *Yajus* mantras is called *nigada*. Madhusūdana comprises by this name, as it appears, principally the *Pratīṣas* or orders by the Adhvaryu to the other priests to do their respective duties.

(*praiṣa*) to most of the officiating priests, to perform their respective duties. Now at several occasions, especially at the more solemn sacrifices, the order is to be given either by the Hotar himself, or his principal assistant, the Maitrāvaruṇa. So, for instance, the order to the slaughtermen of the sacrificial animal, [32] which is known by the name of Adhrigu-Praiṣa-mantra (see Ait. Br. 2, 6-7) is given by the Hotar himself, though the formulas of which it is composed have all characteristics of what was termed in the ritual *Yajus*, and consequently assigned to the Adhvaryu. At the Soma sacrifice all orders to the Hotar to repeat the Yājyā mantra, before the libations are thrown into the fire, are to be given by the Maitrāvaruṇa, and not by the Adhvaryu. The formulas by which the gods are called to appear, the address to the fire when it is kindled are repeated by the Hotar, not by the Adhvaryu, though they cannot be termed *rik*, the repetition of which alone was in later times regarded as incumbent upon the Hotar. The later rule, "The Hotar performs his duties with the R̥gveda" (in the introductory chapter to the Hiranyakeśi and Āpastamba Śrāuta Sūtras) is therefore not quite correct. The Hotar himself even sacrifices on certain occasions what is, according to the later ritual, to be done by the Adhvaryu alone, or, when the offering is given as penance, by the Brahmā. So, for instance, he sacrifices melted butter before repeating the Aśvina Śastra (see the note to 4, 7, page 268), which is, as far as its principal parts are concerned, certainly very ancient.

Now, if we compare the sacrificial formulas as contained in the Yajurveda, and principally the so-called Nigadas, and Nivids, preserved in the Brāhmaṇas and Sūtras with the bulk of the R̥gveda hymns, we come to the conclusion, that the former are more ancient, and served the R̥ṣis as a kind of [33] sacred text, just as passages of the Bible suggest ideas to religious poets among Christians. That Vedic poets were perfectly acquainted with several of such formulas and addresses which are still extant, can be proved beyond any doubt.

Reserving a more detailed treatment of this important question to a future occasion, I here instance only some of the most striking proofs.

One reference to the Nivid inserted in the Vaiśvadeva hymn at the Vaiśvadeva Śastra, and my remarks on it (see pages 212-13), the reader will find, that the great R̥ṣi Viśvāmitra who with some of his sons are the poets of many hymns which we now possess (as, for instance, of the whole third Maṇḍala), knew this ancient sacrificial formula very well; for one of its sentences setting forth the number of deities is alluded to by him.

Certain stereotyped formulas which occur in every Nivid, to whatever deity it might be addressed, occur in hymns and even commence them. I instance the hymn *predam brahma* (8, 37), which is certainly an allusion to the sentence which occurs in all Nivids, *predam brahma predam kṣattram* (see note 25 on page 189.) That the coincidence is no mere chance follows from some other characteristic Nivid terms made use of in the hymn in question; compare *āvitha pra sunvataḥ* with *predam sunvantam yajamānam avatu* in all Nivids, and *kṣattriya tvam avasi* with *predam kṣattram (avatu)*.

The Subrahmanyā formulas, which is generally called a Nigadā (see on it the note to 6, 3 on pages 383-84) [34] is unmistakably alluded to in the hymn, 1, 51, principally in the first and thirteenth verses. In both, Indra is called *meṣa*, a ram, and *vṛṣanāś vasya menā*.

The call of the *Agnīdhra*, *astu śrāuṣat* as well as the Agur addressed to the Hotar, *hotā yakṣat*, were known to the R̥ṣis, as we learn from 1, 139, 1. 10.

The so-called Rituyājas which are extant in a particular collection of sacrificial formulas, called *praiṣa sūkta* or *praiṣādhyaya*, occur even with their very words in several hymns, such as 1, 15; 2, 37. (On the Rituyājas, see note 35 on pages 135-36).

The so-called Aprī hymns are nothing but a poetical development of the more ancient Prayājas, and Anuyājas (compare the notes 12 on page 18; 14 on pages 81-82; and 25 on page 110.)

Many hymns were directly composed not only for sacrificial purposes in general, but even for particular rites. This is principally the case with several hymns of Viśvāmitra. So, for instance, the whole of hymn 3, 8 *añjanti tvām adhvarē* (see about it, Ait. Br. 2, 2) refers only to the anointing, erecting, and decorating, of the sacrificial post; 3, 21 is evidently made for addressing the drops of melted butter which drip from the omentum, over which they were poured (see Ait. Br. 2, 12); 3 52, celebrates the offering of the Purodāśa consisting of fried grains, pap, &c., which belongs to each Soma libation (see Ait. Br. 2, 23.)

The first ten hymns of the first book of the R̥gveda Saṁhitā contain, as it appears, the Soma ritual [35] of Madhuchhandās, the son of Viśvāmitra. It provides, however, only for two libations, viz., the morning and midday. The first hymn has exactly the nature of an Ajya hymn, which forms the principal part of the first Śastra, the so-called Ajya. The second and third hymns contain the Pra-uga Śastra, which is the second at the morning libation, in all its particulars. The following seven

hymns (4-10) all celebrate Indra and it appears from some remarks in the Ait. Br. (3, 20, page 192), that in ancient times the midday libation belonged exclusively to Indra. The ritual for the evening libation is of so peculiar a nature, and so complicated, that we must ascribe to it quite a different origin than to the two other libations.

The hymns 12-23 appear to contain a more comprehensive ritual of the Kaṇva family, which is ancient. The 12th hymn (the first in this collection) is addressed to the Agni of the ancestors, the *pravara*, who must be invoked at the commencement of every sacrifice; it contains three parts of the later ritual—(a) the *pravara*, (b) the invocation of Agni by the Nigada, and (c) the request to Agni to bring the gods (the so-called *devāvahanam*). The 13th is an *apri Sūkta* containing the *Prayājas*, which accompany the very first offerings at every sacrifice.

These three hymns were, it appears, appropriate to a simple *Iṣṭi*, as it precedes every greater sacrifice. The following hymns refer to the Soma sacrifice. The 15th is a *Ṛituyāja* hymn; the *Ṛituyājas* always precede the *Ajya Śastra*. The hymns from [36] 16-19 contain a ritual for the midday libation, and in 20-22 we find the principal deities of the *Śastras* of the evening libation.

The hymns from 44-50 in the first book by Praskaṇva, the son of Kaṇva, contain, if the Indra hymn (51) is also reckoned, all the principal deities, and metres of the *Aśvina Śastra*, the former even in their proper order, *viz.*, Agni, Uṣās, the *Aśvins*, *Sūrya*, Indra (see Ait. Br. 4, 7-11).

These instances, which could be easily greatly enlarged, will, I think, suffice to show that the ritual of the *Brāhmaṇas* in its main features was almost complete at the time when the principal *Ṛishis*, such as the Kaṇvas, Viśvāmitra, Vasiṣṭha, &c., lived.

I must lay particular stress on the *Nivids* which I believe to be more ancient than almost all the hymns contained in the *Ṛigveda*. The principal ones (nine in number) are all to be found in the notes to my translation of the 3rd *Pañchikā* (book). That no attention has been paid as yet to these important documents by the few Vedic scholars in Europe, is principally owing to the circumstance of their not having been known to them. It being now generally believed, that the earliest relics of Vedic literature are to be found only in the *Ṛigveda Samhitā*, it is of course incumbent on me to state briefly the reasons why I refer the so-called *Nivid* to a still more remote antiquity.

The word *nivid* frequently occurs in the hymns, and even with the epithet *pārva* or *pārva*, old [37] (see 1, 89, 3; 96, 2; 2, 36, 6.) The



Marutvatiya Nivid<sup>21</sup> is, as it appears, even referred to by Vāmadeva (4, 18, 7, compared with note 25, on page 189); the repetition of the Nivids is juxtaposed with the performance of the chanters, and the recital of the Śāstras (6, '67, 10). The Brāhmaṇam regards the Nivids, particularly that one addressed to Agni, as those words of Prajāpati, by means of which he created all beings (see Ait. Br. 2, 33-34). That such an idea, which entirely coincides with the Zoroastrian of Ahuramazda (Ormazd) having created the world through the *yathā-ahû-vairyô* prayer (see the 19th chapter of the Yaśna), must be more ancient than the Brāhmaṇas, we learn from a hymn of the old Ṛṣi Kutsa, who is already in many Vedic songs looked upon as a sage of the remote past. He says (1, 96, 2) that Agni created by means of the "first Nivid" the creatures of the Manus (see page 143). In 1, 89, 3-4, an old Nivid appears to be quoted. For the words which follow the sentence, "we call them with the old Nivid," bear quite the stamp of such a piece.

Many Nivids, even the majority of them, are certainly lost. But the few pieces of this kind of religious literature which are still extant, are sufficient to show that they must be very ancient, and are not to be regarded as fabrications of the sacrificial priests at the times when the Brāhmaṇas were composed. [38] Their style is, in the main, just the same in which the hymns are composed, and far more ancient than that of the Brāhmaṇas. They contain, in short sentences, the principal names, epithets, and feats of the deity invoked. They have no regular metre, but a kind of rhythmus; or even a parallelismus membrorum as the ancient Hebrew poetry.

The circumstance that in the ritual such a paramount importance is attached to such half poetical, half prose pieces as the Nivids are (see particularly Ait. Br. 2, 33; 3, 10-11), clearly tends to prove, that they must have been regarded as very efficacious. This could be hardly accounted for at a time when beautiful and finished songs were forthcoming in abundance to serve the same purpose, had they not been very ancient, and their employment been sanctioned by the example of the most ancient Ṛṣis.

We have already seen, that several of those Nivid formulas which we have now were known to some Vedic poets. I will give here a few more instances. The hymn to the Marutas by Viśvāmitra (3, 47) is evidently based on the Marutvatiya Nivids (see them on page 189); the

---

<sup>21</sup> When the word *nivid* appears often in the plural, then the several pādas, of which the Nivid consists, are to be understood.

verse to Savitar (3, 54, 11) alludes to Savitṛi Nivids (see them on page 208); the hymn to Dyāvāprithivī (1, 160) is a poetical imitation of the Dyāvāprithivī Nivids (page 209); the Ribhu hymn (4, 33) resembles very much the Ribhu Nivids (page 210), &c.

Another proof of the high antiquity of the Nivids is furnished by the Zend-Avesta. The many prayer [39] formulas in the Yaśna which commence with *nivaê-ahayêmi*, i.e., I invite, are exactly of the same nature as the Nivids.

The Nivids along with many so-called Yajus formulas which are preserved in the Yajurveda, the Nigadas, such as the Subrâhmanyâ and the so-called Japa formulas (such as Ait. Br. 2, 38), which are muttered with a low voice only, are doubtless the most ancient pieces of Vedic poetry. The Ṛṣis tried their poetical talent first in the composition of Yâjyâs or verses recited at the occasion of an offering being thrown into the fire. Thence we meet so many verses requesting the deity to accept the offering, and taste it. These Yâjyâs were extended into little songs, which, on account of their finished form, were called *sâktam*, i.e. well, beautifully spoken. The principal ideas for the Yâjyâs were furnished by the sacrificial formulas in which the Yajurveda abounds, and those of the hymns were suggested by the Nigadas and Nivids. There can be hardly any doubt, that the oldest hymns which we possess, are purely sacrificial, and made only for sacrificial purposes. Those which express more general ideas, or philosophical thoughts, or confessions of sins, such as many of those addressed to Varuṇa, are comparatively late.

In order to illustrate that the development of the sacrificial and religious poetry of the ancient Brahmans took such a course as here described, I may adduce the similar one which we find with the Hebrews. The sacrificial ritual of Moses, as laid [40] down in the Leviticus, knows no rythmical sentences nor hymns which accompanied the oblations offered to Jehovah. It describes only such manual labour, as found with the Brahmans its place in the Yajurveda, and mentions but very few and simple formulas which the officiating priest appears to have spoken when throwing the offering into the fire of the altar. They differed, according to the occasion, but very little. The principal formula was *ניחח ליהוה* "a fire offering of pleasant smell for Jehovah," which exactly corresponds with the Vedic *agnaye*, *indrâya*, &c. *svâhâ*! <sup>22</sup> i.e. a good offering to Agni, Indra, &c. If it was the solemn holocaustum, then the word *עלה*, i.e.

<sup>22</sup> The term *svâhâ* is to be traced to the root *dhâ*, to put, with *â*, to put in, into, and stands for *svâdhâ* (*su*+*âdhâ*). It means the gift which is thrown into the fire.

holocaustum, was used in addition (Leviticus 1, 9-13); if it was the so-called *zebakh shlâmîm* or sacrifice for continued welfare, the word לחם food, bread, was added (Levit. 3, 11); if it was a penance, the words אשם הוא (Levit. 7, 5), "this is a penance," were required. When the priest absolved a sacrificer who brought an offering as a penance, he appears to have used a formula also, which is preserved in the so-frequently occurring sentence: רנסו עליך מחטאתך אשר חטא רנסלך לו (Lev. iv, 25, 31: v. 6, 10.) "and he (the priest) shall annul the sin which he has committed, so that he will be pardoned."<sup>23</sup>

[41] If we compare these formulas with the psalms, which were composed and used for the worship of Jehovah, then we find exactly the same difference between both, as we discover between the Yajus formulas, Nivids, &c., and the finished hymns of the Rîgveda Samhitâ. In the same way as there is a considerable interval of time between the establishment of the Mosaic ritual and the composition of the psalms, we are completely justified in supposing that a similar space of time intervened between the Brahmanical ritual with its sacrificial formulas, and the composition of the majority of the Vedic hymns. Between Moses and David there is an interval of five hundred years, and if we assume a similar one between the simple Yajus formulas, and such finished hymns as those addressed to Varuṇa which M. Müller ascribes to his Chhandas period, we shall not be in the wrong.

Another proof that the purely sacrificial poetry is more ancient than either profane songs or hymns of a more general religious character, is furnished by the *Shi-king* or Book of Odes of the Chinese. Of its four divisions, viz. *k'ao-fung*, i.e. popular songs of the different territories of ancient China, *ta-ya* and *siao ya*, i.e. imperial songs, to be used with music at the imperial festivals, and *sung*, i.e. hymns in honour of deceased emperors, and vassal kings, the latter, which are of a purely sacrificial character, are the most ancient pieces. The three last odes in this fourth division go back as far as the commencement of the *Shang* dynasty, which ascended the dragon seat in [42] the year 1766 B.C., whilst almost all other pieces in the collection are composed from the earlier part of the reign of the Chou dynasty down almost to Confucius' time (from 1120 B.C. till about 600 B.C.)

If we consider that the difference of time between the purely sacrificial and non-sacrificial hymns of the Chinese thus amounts to about

---

<sup>23</sup> The priest appears to have addressed these words to the sinner who was to be absolved in this manner, "I annul the sin which thou hast committed, and thou shalt be pardoned."

1,000 years, we would not be very wrong in presuming similar intervals to exist between the different hymns of the R̥igveda. R̥igis like Kāvya, Uśanās, Kaksivat, Hiranyastūpa, to whom several hymns are traced, were for the Kanvas, Viśvāmitra, Vasiṣṭha, &c., as ancient personages, as the emperors Tang (1765 B.C.) and Wuwang (1120 B.C.) to Confucius (born 551 B. C.)

On account of the utter want of Indian chronology for the Vedic and post-Vedic times, it will be of course for ever impossible to fix exactly the age of the several hymns of the R̥igveda, as can be done with most of the psalms and many of the odes of the Shi-king. But happily we possess at least one astronomical date which furnishes at any rate the external proof of the high antiquity of Vedic literature, which considerably tends to strengthen the internal evidence of the same fact. I here mean the well known passage in the Jyotiṣam, or Vedic calendar, about the position of the solstitial points. The position there given carries us back to the year 1181 according to Archdeacon Pratt's, and to 1186 [43] B.C. according to the Rev. R. Main's calculations.\* The questions on the age of this little treatise and the origin of the Nakṣatra \*\* system, about which [44] there has been of late so much wrangling among the few Sanscrit scholars of Europe and America, are of

---

\* See the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal of the year 1862 pages 49-50. Max Müller's Preface to the 4th Volume of his edition of the R̥igveda Saṁhitā, page Lxxxv.

\*\* There can be hardly any doubt, that the Nakṣatra system of the Indians, Chinese, Persians and Arabs is of a common origin, but it is very difficult to determine with what nation it originated. The original number was twenty-eight. I do not intend fully to discuss here the important question, but I wish only to direct attention to the circumstance overlooked as yet by all the writers on the subject, that the terms which the Indians, Arabs, and Chinese use for expressing the idea "constellation" have in all the three languages, Sanscrit, Chinese, and Arabic, precisely the same meaning, viz. a place where to pass the night, a station. This is certainly no mere chance, but can only be accounted for by the supposition, that the framers of the Nakṣatra system regarded the several Nakṣatras as heavenly stations, or night quarters, where the travelling moon was believed to put on his journey through the heavens. Let us examine these terms.

The Chinese expression for Nakṣatra is *Siu* (spelt by Morrison *suh* and *sew*, by Medhurst *sew* with the third or departing tone). The character representing it which is to be found under the 40th radical, strokes 8 (see Morrison's Chinese Dictionary, Vol. 1 page 847) is composed of three signs, viz. that for a *roof*, that for *man*, and that for a *hundred*. Its original meaning therefore is "a place where a hundred men find shelter, a station or night quarters for a company of soldiers." The word is, as is the case with most of the Chinese words, used as a substantive, adjective, and verb.

As a substantive it denotes "a resting place to pass the night at" with a road-house (*lu shih*), i.e. an inn, or a halting place in general; such places were situated at the distance of every thirty Li. Thence it is metaphorically employed to express the

[45] minor importance compared with the fact and the age of the observation itself. That an astronomical observation was taken by the

station on the heavens where the travelling moon is supposed to put up. In this sense the Chinese speak of *ölh shih pá siu* "the twenty-eight halting places" (on the heavens).

As an objective it means *past, former, i. e. the night-quarters which were just left.*

In the sense of a verb, but never in that of a substantive, we find it frequently used in two of the so-called See-shu or four Classical books of the Chinese, viz. the *Lun-yu* (the Confucian Analects) and in *Meng-tse*.

In order to show the use of this important word in the Classical writings, I here quote some instances :

(a) *intrans. to pass the night, to stop over night*, Lun-yu 14, 41 ; *tse lu siu yu Shih-man*, i. e. Tse-lu (one of the most ardent and zealous disciples of Confucius) passed the night at Shih-man ; 18, 7, 3 *ibidem* ; *chih Tse-lu siu*, i. e. he detained Tse-lu to pass the night (with him). Meng-tse 2, 2, 11, 1 ; Meng-tse *k'iu Tsi sia yu Ohaw*, i. e. Meng-tse after having left Tsi, passed the night at Chow ; 2, 2, 12, 4, *ibidem* : *yu san siu ölh hëu chüh Chow*, *yu yu sin i wei suh*, i. e. When I, after having stopped for three nights left Chow, I thought in my mind my departure to be speedy still.

(b) *trans. to make pass the night, to keep over night*. Lun-yu 10, 8, 8 : *tse yu kung pü siu ja*, when he (Confucius) sacrificed at the Duke's (assisted the Duke in sacrificing) he did not keep the (sacrificial) flesh over night. In this sense it is several times metaphorically used ; so Lun-yu 12, 2, 2 : *Tse-lu ru siu no*, i. e. Tse-lu never kept a promise over night (he carried it out at once, before he went to rest).

(c) *to have taken up his quarters, to be at rest*. Lun-yu 7, 26 : *yih pü shë siu*, he (Confucius) shot, but not with an arrow and string at (animals) which were at rest (asleep).

The Arabic word for the Nakshatras is *manzil* منزل *phur* *menázil* منزل, "a place where to put up, quarters," from the root *نزل* *nzl*, to make a journey, to put up at a place as a guest.

This name for the constellations must be very ancient with the Semitic nations, for we find it already in the Old Testament (Book of the Kings ii. 23, 5) in the form *mazzaloth* מזלות; it has no proper etymology in Hebrew (for the root *נזל* *nzal*, to which alone it could be traced, means to flow), and is apparently introduced as a foreign word from some other Semitic nation, probably the Babylonians. The Jewish commentators had no clear conception of the proper meaning of the word ; they take it to mean *star* in general, and then the twelve signs of the Zodiac. But from the context of the passage in the Book of the Kings, just quoted, where it stands together with the moon and the whole host of the heavens ("for the moon and the mazzaloth and the whole host of the heaven") it undoubtedly follows, that its meaning cannot be "star" in general, which idea is expressed by the "whole host of the heavens," but something particular in the heavens connected with the moon. The use of the same word in Arabic for expressing the idea of constellation, heavenly mansions of the moon, proves beyond any doubt, that the *mazzaloth* mean the same.

Now the Sanscrit word *nakshatra* has originally no other meaning than either *siu* or *manzil* have. The arrangement of the meaning of this word which is made in Boehtlingk and Roth's Sanscrit Dictionary is insufficient and treated with the same superficiality as the majority of the more difficult Vedic words in that much-lauded work. They make it to mean *star* in general (*sidus*), the *stars*, and then *constellation*, *station of the moon*. But the very formation of the word by means of the suffix *atra*

Brahmans as early as the 12th century before Christ is proved beyond any doubt by the date to be elicited from the observation itself. If astronomical calculations of past events are of any worth, we must accept as settled the date of the position of the solstitial [46] points as recorded in the Jyotiṣam. To believe that such an observation was imported from some foreign country, Babylon or China, could be absurd, for there is nothing in it to show, that it cannot have been made in the north-western part of India, or a closely adjacent country. A regulation of the calendar by such observations was an absolute necessity for the Brahmans; for the proper time of commencing and ending their sacrifices, principally the so-called Sattras or sacrificial sessions, could not be known without an accurate knowledge of the time of the sun's northern and southern progress. The knowledge of the calendar forms such an essential part of the ritual, that many important conditions of the latter cannot be carried out without the former. The sacrifices are allowed to commence only at certain lucky constellations, and in certain months. So, for instance, as a rule, no great sacrifice can commence during the sun's southern progress (*dakṣiṇāyana*); for this is regarded up to the present day as an unlucky period by the

---

indicates, that something particular must be attached to its meaning; compare *patatra* a wing, literally a means for flying, *vadhatra* a weapon, literally a means for striking, *yajatram* the keeping of a sacrificial fire, literally the means or place for sacrificing; *umatra*, a drinking vessel, literally a place to which a thing goes which holds it. According to all analogy we can derive the word only from *nakṣ*, which is a purely Vedic root, and means to "arrive at." Thus *nakṣatra* etymologically means, either the means by which one arrives, or the place where one arrives, a station. This expresses most adequately the idea attached by the Indians to the Nakṣatras as mansions for the travelling moon. But even if we waive this derivation, and make it a compound of *nak* (instead of *nakṣ*, see Rīgveda 7, 71, 1) and *satra*=*sattrā*, a session for the night, night quarters, we arrive at the same meaning. The latter derivation is, I think, even preferable to the former. The meanings of the word are to be classed as follows:

(1) station, quarters where to pass the night. In this sense it is out of use; (2) especially the stations on the heavens where the travelling moon is supposed to put up, the twenty-eight constellations; (3) metonymically stars in general, the starry sphere (Rīgveda 7, 86, 1: *nakṣatram paprathachcha bhūma*, he spread the starry sphere, and the earth). The latter use is pre-eminently poetical, as poets always can use *pars pro toto*. The *nakṣatras* as stations of the moon were perfectly known to the Rīṣis, as every one can convince himself from the many passages in the Taitirīya Brāhmaṇam, and the Atharvaveda. That these books are throughout much later than the songs of the Rīgveda is just what I have strong reasons to doubt. The arrangement of the meanings of *nakṣatra* as given here entirely coincides with all we know of the history of either the word *sin* in Chinese, or *manzil*, *mazzaloth* in the semitic languages. The Chinese, especially poets, used the word *sin* in the sense of *star* or *stars* in general, and so did the Rabbis in the Mishnah and the Talmud, according to the testimony of Juda ben Karish (see Gesenius Thesaurus Linguae Hebraeae, et Chaldaeae ii. page 869).

Brahmans, in which even to die is belived. to be a misfortune. The great sacrifices take place generally in spring, in the months *Chaitra* and *Vaisākha* (April and May). The sattras which lasted for one year were, as one may learn from a careful perusal of the 4th book of the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇam*, nothing but an imitation of the sun's yearly course. They were divided into two distinct parts, each consisting of six months of thirty days each ; in the midst of both was the *Viṣuvan*, i.e. equator or central day, cutting the [47] whole Sattra into two halves. The ceremonies were in both the halves exactly the same ; but they were in the latter half performed in an inverted order. This represents the increase of the days in the northern, and their decrease in the southern progress ; for both increase and decrease take place exactly in the same proportions.

In consideration that these Sattras were already at the time of the compilation of the *Brāhmaṇas* an old institution, we certainly can find nothing surprising in the circumstance, that the Indian astronomers made the observation above-mentioned so early as the 12th century B.C. For the Sattras are certainly as early as, if not earlier than, this time. Sattras lasting for sixty years appear even to have been known already to the authors of the *Brāhmaṇas* (see page 287).

Now that observation proves two things beyond doubt : (1) That the Indians had made already such a considerable progress in astronomical science, early in the 12th century, as to enable them to take such observations ; (2) That by that time the whole ritual in its main features as laid down in the *Brāhmaṇas* was complete.

We do not hesitate therefore to assign the composition of the bulk of the *Brāhmaṇas* to the years 1400-1200 B.C.; for the *Samhitā* we require a period of at least 500-600 years, with an interval of about two hundred years between the end of the proper *Brāhmaṇa* period. Thus we obtain for the bulk of the *Samhitā* the space from 1400-2000; the oldest hymns and [48] sacrificial formulas may be a few hundred years more ancient still, so that we would fix the very commencement of Vedic Literature between 2400-2000 B. C. If we consider the completely authenticated antiquity of several of the sacred books of the Chinese, such as the original documents, of which the *Shu-king*, or Book of History, is composed, and the antiquity of the sacrificial songs of the *Shi-king*, which all carry us back to 1700-2200 B.C., it will certainly not be surprising that we assign a similar antiquity to the most ancient parts of the Vedas. For there is nowhere any reason to show,

that the Vedas must be less ancient than the earliest parts of the sacred books of the Chinese, but there is on the contrary much ground to believe, that they can fully lay claim to the same antiquity. Already at the time of the composition of the Brâhmanas, which as we have seen, cannot be later than about 1200 B. C., the three principal Vedas, *i.e.* their respective Samhitâs, were believed to have proceeded directly from the mouth of Prajâpati, the lord of the creatures, who occupies in the early Vedic mythology the same place which is, in the later writings, held by Brahmadeva. This could not have been the case, had they not been very ancient. In a similar way, the Chinese ascribe the ground text of their most ancient and most sacred book, the *Y-king*, *i.e.* Book of Changes, to a kind of revelation too, which was made to *Fuhi*, the Adam of the Chinese, by a Dragon horse, called *Lung-ma*.

Speculations on the nature of the sacrificial rites, [49] and cognate topics of a mystical character which form the proper sphere of the Brâhmanas, commenced already during the Samhitâ period, as one may learn from such hymns as Rigveda 1, 95, and the so-called Vâmana Sûkta 1, 164. Even at the time of the composition of the present Brâhmanas, there existed already some time-hallowed sayings, which resemble in every respect those dicta of the Brahmâ priests, of which the bulk of the Brâhmanas consists. I instance here the *Brahmodyam* (Ait. Br. 5, 25), which was used already at that time at the conclusion of the tenth day's performance of the Dvâdasâha sacrifice. It is, therefore, very difficult to draw a strict line of separation between the period during which the hymns were composed, and that one which brought forward the speculations known by the name of Brâhmanas. On a more close comparison of the mystical parts of the Samhitâ with the Brâhmanas, one must come to the conclusion, that the latter were commenced already during the period of the former.

Let us say a few words on the division made of the contents of the Brâhmanas by the Indian divines and philosophers. According to the introductory chapters to the Hiranyâkesi (and Apastamba Sûtras) the Brâhmanas contain the following topics:—

(1) *Karmavidhânam*, or *vidhi*, *i.e.* rules on the performance of particular rites. To this class all those sentences in the Brâhmanas are referred which contain an order expressed in the potential mood, such as *yajeta*, he ought to sacrifice; *śamset*, he ought [50] to repeat (such and such a verse); *kuryât*, he ought to proceed (in such or such a way), &c. This is the principal part of the Brâhmanas, and has for the Brahmans



about the same significance as in the Talmudic Literature the *halakah* has for the Jews ; it is simply authoritative.

(2) *Arthavāda*. This term comprises the numerous explanatory remarks on the meaning of mantras and particular rites, the reasons why a certain rite must be performed in a certain way. This is the speculative part, and is on account of its containing the germs of all Hindu philosophy, and even of grammar, of the greatest importance. There is nowhere anything like an approach to a regular system perceptible, but only occasional remarks bearing on philosophical and grammatical topics. For the history of grammar, the fifth Pañchika of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇam is of a particular interest. We learn from it, that at that time not only numerous attempts were made to explain the meaning of words by etymology, but that the Brahmans even had already commenced to analyse the forms of speech by making distinctions between singular and plural, present, past, and future tenses, &c. The idea of *mukti* or final absorption in the Supreme Being, as taught in the later Vedānta philosophy, is even with most of its particulars spoken out in several of those explanatory remarks. I allude here to the frequently occurring terms, *sayujyatā* junction, *sarupata* identity of form, *salokatā* identity of place, which mark in the later times different stages of the final beatitude. [51] The principal tendency of this part is, to show the close connection of the visible and invisible worlds, between things on earth, and their counterparts or prototypes in heaven. Pantheistic ideas pervade all the Brāhmaṇas, and are already traceable in hymns of the Saṁhitā.

(3) *Nindā*, censure. This refers principally to the controversial remarks contained in all Brāhmaṇas. There was amongst these ancient divines and metaphysicians often difference of opinion as to the performance of a certain rite, or the choice of a particular mantra, or their meaning. One criticised the practice of the other, and condemned its application often in the strongest terms. The censure is generally introduced by the expression, "but this opinion is not to be attended to." The sacrificers are often cautioned from adopting such a malpractice, by the assertion that if a priest would proceed in such or such a way, the sacrificer would lose his life, be burned by the sacrificial fire, &c.

(4) *Samsā*, i. e. praise, recommendation. This part comprises principally those phrases which express that the performance of such or such a rite with the proper knowledge, produces the effect desired. They almost invariably contain the expression, *ya evam vedu*, i. e. who has such a

knowledge. The extreme frequency of this phrase in the Brāhmaṇas, and Upaniṣads, is probably the reason, that the whole sacred knowledge was comprised afterwards only by the general term *veda*. Originally [52] it appears to have applied to Brāhmaṇa like sentences and explanations only.

(5) *Purākalpa*, i. e. performance of sacrificial rites in former times. Under this head come the numerous stories of the fights of the Devas and Asuras, to which the origin of many rites is attributed, as also all legends on the sacrifices performed by the gods. This very interesting part forms the historical (or rather legendary) background of the whole sacrificial art. All rites were traced to the gods as their originators, or even to Prajāpati, the Supreme Being, the Lord of creatures. We can derive one important historical fact from the legends on the fight between the Devas and Asuras, viz., that the religious contest between the ancient Indians (represented by the Devas) and the Iranians (represented by the Asuras, contained in the name Ahuramazda=Ormazd) took place long before the time of the composition of the Brāhmaṇas, that is, before the 12th century B.C. This is another proof corroborative of the high antiquity ascribed by Grecian writers to Zarathustra (Zoroaster), the prophet of the Asura nation (Iranians), who did manfully battle against idolatry and the worship of the Devas, branded by him as "devils." That contest which must have been lasting for many years appeared to the writers of the Brāhmaṇas as old as the feats of King Arthur appear to English writers of the nineteenth century.

(6) *Parakṛiti*, i. e. the achievement or feat of another. This head comprises the stories of certain performances of renowned Śrotriyaś, or sacrificial [53] priests, of gifts presented by kings to Brahmins, the successes they achieved. The last book of the Aitareya particularly is full of this class of topics.

These six heads are often, however, brought only under two principal ones, viz., *vidhi* and *arthavāda*. The latter then comprises all that is not injunction, that is, all topics from 2 to 6. This philosophical division exactly corresponds to the division of the contents of the Talmud by the Jewish Rabbis into two principal parts, viz: *halakah*, i. e. rule of conduct, which is as authoritative as the *thorah* (law of Moses), and *haggadah*, i. e. story, parable, and in fact everything illustrative of the former.

---

## II.

*The Aitareya Brâhmaṇam in particular.*

The Aitareya Brâhmaṇam is one of the collections of the sayings of ancient Brahmâ priests (divines and philosophers), illustrative and explanatory of the duties of the so-called Hotṛi-priests. The latter performing the principal part of their duties by means of the mantras, termed *rik*, and contained in the so-called R̥gveda Saṁhitâ, the Aitareya is therefore one of the Brâhmaṇas belonging to the R̥gveda. There must have been, as we may learn from Pāṇini and Patañjali's Mahâbhâṣya, a much larger number of Brâhmaṇas belonging to each Veda; and even Sâyaṇa, who lived only about four hundred years ago, was acquainted with more than we have now. To the R̥gveda we know at present besides [54] the Aitareya, only the Kâuṣîtaki Brâhmaṇam, which is also called Sâṅkhâyaṇa. Both appear to have been known to the grammarian Pāṇini,<sup>1</sup> as one may gather from the rule (v. 1, 62) which he gives regarding the formation of names of Brâhmaṇas consisting of thirty and forty Adhyâyas; for the Kâuṣîtaki actually consists of thirty and the Aitareya of forty Adhyâyas, which were afterwards divided into eight Pañchikâs, each of which comprises five Adhyâyas.

The name "Aitareya" is by Indian tradition traced to *Itarâ*. Sâyaṇa tells regarding the origin of the name and of the Brâhmaṇa itself, in his introduction to the Aitareya Brâhmaṇam, the following story, on the authority of the *sampradâya-vidah*, i.e. men versed in traditional stories. An ancient R̥ṣi had among his many wives one who was called *Itarâ*. She had a son *Mahidâsa* by name, who is mentioned in the Aitareya Aranyaka as Mahidâsa Aitareya. The R̥ṣi preferred the sons of his other wives to Mahidâsa, and went even so far as to insult him once by placing all his other children in his lap to his exclusion. His mother, grieved at this ill-treatment of her son, prayed to her family deity (*kuladevatâ*), the Earth (*bhûmi*), who appeared in her celestial form in the midst of the assembly, placed him on a throne (*sinhâsana*), and gave him as a token of honour for his surpassing all other children in learning a boon [55] (*vara*) which had the appearance of a Brâhmaṇa. After having received this gift, a Brâhmaṇam consisting of forty Adhyâyas, which commenced with the words, *agnir vâi devânâm avamo* (the first sentence of the Aitareya), and ended with *strîṇute strîṇute* (the two last words of the Aitareya), came forth through the mind of Mahidâsa.

<sup>1</sup> The attention of Sanscrit scholars was first directed by Professor Weber at Berlin to this circumstance.

Afterwards the Brâhmanam, commencing with *atha mahadvratam* (the beginning words of the first Aitareya Aranyaka) and ending with *âchârya âchârya* (the two last words of the third Aranyaka)<sup>3</sup> was also revealed in the shape of the vow of an hermit<sup>4</sup> (*âranjakavratârûpam*).

The Aitareya Brâhmanam, as well as the Kâuṣîtaki, do not treat of all the sacrifices and sacrificial rites which are mentioned and described in the books of Yajurveda, which may be (principally the Sûtras) regarded as the proper sacrificial encyclopædiæ. They were, however, perfectly well known to the authors of these Brâhmanas, as we may learn from the fact, that the names of several sacrifices, such as Vâjapeya, Aptoryâma (see 3, 41) are mentioned without the description of the rituals belonging to them. Several things concerning [56] the Hotṛis whose duties principally are treated at every Soma sacrifice are left out. So the ceremony of choosing the sacrificial priests (*ritvig-varaṇam*) by the sacrificer, including the Hotars, is left out, as Sâyana has already observed. But every *Hâutra-prayoga*, i.e. practical hand-book for the Hotṛi-priests (for each sacrifice there are separate *prayogas* for each set of priests required), commences with it; the topic is generally treated in the Sûtras belonging to the Yajurveda; the principal mantras required at that occasion are to be found in the first chapter of the Tâṇḍya Brâhmanam of the Sâmaveda. The dialogue used at this occasion is interesting, and throws some light on the nature and character of some sacrifices; therefore I give here some account of it.

The person who wishes to perform the Agniṣṭoma sacrifice, for instance, sends a delegate called *Somapravâka* to all Śrotriyas (sacrificial priests) whose services he wishes to engage for his forthcoming Soma sacrifice, to ask whether they would be willing to officiate at this occasion. The dialogue between the Somapravâka and the Hotar is as follows: S. "There will be a Soma sacrifice of such and such one; you are respectfully requested to act as Hotar at it." H. "What sacrifice is it?" S. "The *Jyotiṣṭoma-Agniṣṭoma-Soma* sacrifice." H. "What priests (*ritvijah*) will officiate?" S. "Viṣṇu, Mitra,<sup>4</sup>" &c. H. "What is the reward for

<sup>3</sup> This remark throws some light on the relationship in which the five treatises, of which the present Aitareya Aranyaka consists, and each of which bears the name *âranjaka*, stand to one another. Only the three first Aranyakas were according to this notice regarded as a divine revelation to the Aitareya Rishi; the two others are then later additions, and did not form originally part of the Aitareya Aranyaka.

<sup>3</sup> According to Brahminical ideas, a vow, a curse, a blessing, &c., can assume a visible form and so become manifest to the mental eyes of men.

<sup>4</sup> The priests represent the gods.

the priests?" S. "One hundred and twelve cows." [57] If the priests have accepted the invitation, then the sacrificer has actually to appoint them to their respective offices. This is the *varaṇam* or selection (of the priests).

The sacrificer first mentions the gods who are to act as his priests, "Agni (the fire) is my Hotar, Aditya (the sun) my Adhvaryu, the Moon my Brahmâ, Parjanya (the god of rain) my Udgâtar, the Sky (*âkâśa*) is my Sadasya (superintendent), the waters are my Hotrâśamsis (all the minor Hotri-priests); the rays my Chamasa Adhvaryus (cup-bearers). These divine priests I choose (for my sacrifice)." After having thus appointed the gods, who are to act as his divine priests, he now proceeds to appoint the "human" (*mânuṣa*) priests. This is at the Agniṣṭoma done with the following formula, "I (the name) of such and such a Gotra, will bring the Jyotiṣṭoma sacrifice by means of its Agniṣṭoma part, with the Rathantara-Priṣṭha, four Stomas (the nine, fifteen, seventeen and twenty-one-fold), for which ten things, cows and so on are required, and for which as fee one hundred and twelve cows must be given. At this sacrifice be thou my Hotar." The Hotar then accepts the appointment by the following formula: "May the great thing thou spokest of (unto me), the splendour thou spokest of, the glory thou spokest of, the Stoma thou spokest of, the way of performance thou spokest of, the enjoyment thou spokest of, the satisfaction thou spokest of; may all that thou spokest of come to me; may it enter me; may I have enjoyment through it. Agni is thy Hotar. He is [58] thy (divine) Hotar. I am thy (human) Hotar.' All priests are appointed in the same way, and by the same formulas.

After this digression let us discuss the contents of the Aitareya Brâhmaṇam. It treats in its eight books, or forty chapters, each of which is subdivided into a certain number of *kaṇḍikâs*, i.e. small sections, paragraphs, as we have seen, almost exclusively of the duties of the seven Hotri-priests at the great Soma sacrifices, and the different royal inauguration ceremonies. All minor sacrifices and Iṣṭis, although they require the services of a Hotar, are excluded. The Hotri-priests are to be divided into three distinct classes: (1) The *Hotar*, the chief of all Hotri-priests. (2) The *Hotrakas*, i.e., the little Hotras; these are, Maitrâvaruṇa (Prâśâstar) Brâhmaṇâchhamṣî, and Achhâvâka. (3) The *Hotrâśamsinah*, i.e. the repeaters of the Hotri verses; they are, Potar, Neṣṭar, and Agnidhra.

The first thirteen chapters (the two first books, and the three first chapters (of the third) treat of the duties of the chief Hotar at the Agniṣṭoma Soma sacrifices only; for this is the model (*prakṛiti*) of

all Soma sacrifices which last for one day only (the so-called *aikâhikas*); all other Soma sacrifices of the same duration are mere modifications (*vikṛiti*) of it. It is regarded as an integral part of the Jyotiṣṭoma, and said to consist of the following seven sacrifices: (1) Agniṣṭoma, (2) Atyagniṣṭoma, (3) Ukthya, (4) Śoḷasi, (5) Atirâtra, (6) Vājapeya, (7) Aptoryâma Adv. Śr. S. 6, 11). In many places, however, the [59] term Jyotiṣṭoma is equivalent to Agniṣṭoma. The Aitareya does not know these seven parts, as belonging together, but simply remarks, that they follow the Agniṣṭoma as their *prakṛiti* (3, 41). The Atyagniṣṭoma is not even mentioned in it at all.

All the duties of the Hotar at the Agniṣṭoma are mentioned almost in the exact order in which they are required. It lasts generally for five days. The ceremonies are then divided as follows:

*First day.*—Preliminary ceremonies, such as the election of the priests giving them presents (*madhuparka*), the Dikṣaṇīya Iṣṭi, and the Dikṣâ itself.

*Second day.*—The Prâyaṇīya or opening Iṣṭi; the buying of the Soma; the Atithya Iṣṭi, Pravargya, and Upasad twice (once in the forenoon, and once in the afternoon).

*Third day.*—Pravargya and Upasad twice again.

*Fourth day.*—Agnipraṇayanam, Agni-Soma-praṇayanam, Havirdhâna praṇayanam. The animal sacrifice.

*Fifth day.*—The squeezing, offering and drinking of the Soma juice at the three great Libations, viz. the morning, midday, and evening Libations. The concluding Iṣṭi (*udayanīya*). Ablution (*avabhṛita*).

The ceremonies of the four first days are only introductory, but absolutely necessary; for without them no one is allowed to sacrifice and drink the Soma juice. The Soma ceremony is the holiest rite in the whole Brahmanical service, just as the Homa ceremony of the Parsi priests is regarded by them as [60] the most sacred performance. No Parsi priest is allowed to perform it, if he does not very frequently undergo the great purification ceremony, called the Barashnom of nine nights. In the same way every Brahman has, as often as he brings a Soma sacrifice to undergo the Dikṣâ (see 1, 3; 4, 26.) One such ceremony is even not considered sufficient. For the sacrifice has besides the Dikṣâ to undergo the Pravargya, which is a similar preparation for the great Soma day. Even the animal sacrifice must precede the solemn Soma festival; for it is of minor importance. The animal is instead of the sacrificer himself.

The animal when sacrificed in the fire, goes to the gods, and so does the sacrificer in the shape of the animal (see page 80 of the translation). The animal sacrifice is vicarious. Being thus received among the gods, the sacrificer is deemed worthy to enjoy the divine beverage, the Soma, and participate in the heavenly king, who is Soma. The drinking of the Soma juice makes him a new man ; though a new celestial body had been prepared for him at the Pravargya ceremony, the enjoyment of the Soma-beverage transforms him again ; for the nectar of the gods flows for the first time in his veins, purifying and sanctifying him. This last birth to the complete enjoyment of all divine rights is symbolically indicated in rites of the morning libation (see 32, 35 ; 38 ; 3, 2).

The principal features of this Agniṣṭoma sacrifice must be very ancient. For we discover them almost complete with the Parsis. They also do not prepare [61] the corresponding Homa (Soma) juice alone, but it must always be accompanied with other offerings. The Puroḍāśa of the Brahmans, which always belongs to a Soma libation, is represented by the Dārūn (holy bread), the animal offering indicated by the ring of hair (*varaśa*) taken from an ox, to be placed on the same table with the Homa. The Homa shoots are treated in the same way, when brought to the spot, as the Brahmans treat them. The Parsi priest sprinkles them with water,\* which is exactly the *āpyāyana* ceremony of the Brahmans. He must go round the fire with the Homa just as the Brahmans carry the Soma round the sacrificial compound (see 1, 14). The ceremonies of preparing and drinking both the Homa and Soma juice are quite similar.<sup>6</sup> The water required for it must be consecrated, which exactly corresponds to the Vasativarīs and Ekadhanās of the Brahmanical Soma service (2, 20). The Zota of the Parsis drips his cup filled with Homa in three turns, so does the Hotar also from the Graha. After the libation has been poured from the Grahās into the fire, and drunk by the Hotar, the Stotras are chanted, and then the Śastras belonging to them recited. In a similar way the Zota priest repeats, shortly after having enjoyed the Homa, the *Gāthās* of Zarathustra Spitama (Zoroaster), which [62] are metrical compositions, and represent the Śastras of the Brahmanical Soma service. He must repeat five such *Gāthās*, just as there are five Śastras, at the morning

---

\*The mantra repeated at that occasion is Yaśna 10, 1, "May the water-drops (sprinkled over the Homa) fall to the destruction of the Devas, and Devis."

<sup>6</sup>Compare notes 8 on page 118, 5 on page 131, 14 on page 137, and my Essays on the Sacred Language, &c., of the Parsis, pages 132-33, 167.

and midday libations, and at the Ukthya Soma sacrifice at the evening libations also.

These are only a few of the points of comparison which I could easily enlarge ; but they will be sufficient to show, that the Agniṣṭoma Soma sacrifice was originally the same ceremony as the Homa rite of the Parsi priests. The opinions of both the Brahmans and Parsis on the effect of the drinking of the Soma (Homa) juice are besides exactly the same. The Brahmans believe that it leads to heaven ; so do the Parsi Priests. They say, that Homa is a plant, and a great angel. Any one who has drunk the Homa juice becomes united with this angel, and after his death an inhabitant of paradise. For the juice which is in the body of the priest who has drunk him, goes to heaven, and connects him mystically with the angel.

With particular care are the the so-called Śastras or recitations of the Hotri priests treated in the Aitareya Brâhmaṇam. The fifth chapter of the second, and the three first chapters of the third book are entirely taken up with the exposition of the Śastras of the Hotar at the morning, midday, and evening libations. As the reader may learn from a perusal principally of the third book, the Śastras always belong to Stotras or performances by the Sâma singers, viz : the Udgâtar or chief singer, the Prastotar who chants the prelude, and the Pratihartar [63] who chants the response. Their recitations must be very ancient, as we have seen ; for they are by the name *uktha* (exactly corresponding to *ukhdhem* in the Zend language) frequently mentioned in the Sâmhita. A closer examination of them will throw much light on the history of the composition of the Vedic hymns. As ancient as the Śastras are the Stomas, the exposition of which forms one of the topics of the Sâmaveda Brâhmaṇas (see note 18 on page 237-38). The word *stoma* is in the form *stoma* also known in the Zend-Avesta. The Parsi priests understand by it a particular sacrificial ceremony of minor importance, which consists in consecrating a meal (meat is at this occasion indispensable) in the honour of an angel or a deceased person, to be enjoyed afterwards by the whole party assembled. That the idea of "sacrificial rite" was attached also by the Brahmans to the word, clearly follows from the terms, *Agniṣṭoma* and *Jyotiṣṭoma*. The musical performance which was originally alone called a Stoma, formed a necessary part of certain sacrifices, and was then, as *pars pro toto*, applied to the whole rite.

The universal character of the Agniṣṭoma and its meaning is treated especially in the fourth chapter of the third book. In its last chapter, and



in the two first of the fourth, the principal modifications of the Agniṣṭoma are mentioned, and briefly described, viz., the Ukthya, Soḷasi, and Atirātra, along with the Āsvina Śastra.

The Atirātra sacrifice introduces, however, the [64] Sattras or sacrificial sessions, the principal rules for the Hotṛi performances of which are laid down in the third chapter of the fourth book. They are applicable for Sattras which last for a whole year. The two last chapters of the fourth, and the first four chapters of the fifth book describe very minutely the duties of the Hotar during the ten principal days of the Dvādaśāha which may be performed as a Sattra, or as a Ahina (a Soma sacrifice lasting for more than one, and less than thirteen days).

The last chapter of the fifth book is taken up with miscellaneous matter, such as the penances required of an Agnihotri when he becomes guilty of some fault, or if some misfortune should befall him regarding his duties towards his sacred fires, and the question, whether the Agnihotram (daily burnt offering) is to be offered before or after sunrise; it further treats of the duties of the Brahmā priest, how he has to perform the penances for mistakes committed by any one of the performing priests.

The whole sixth book treats, after some remarks on the offices of the Grāvastut and Subrahmanyā, almost exclusively of the duties of the six minor Hotṛi-priests, principally at the great Soma sacrifices, which last for one week at least, or for a series of weeks (Śaḷaha). We find in it descriptions of the so-called Śilpa Śastras, or "skilful (rather very artificial) recitations" of the minor Hotars. These Śastras, principally the Vālahkilyas, the Vṛṣākapi, Evayāmarut, and the so-called Kuntāpa hymns, are no doubt the latest additions, looking like [65] decorations, to the ritual of the Hotṛi-priests. The whole book has the appearance of a supplement to the fourth and fifth.

The seventh and eighth books treat principally of the sacrifices of the Kṣattriyas and the relationship in which the princes stand to the Brahmans. They are, from an historical point of view, the most important part of the whole Brāhmaṇam.

The seventh book describes first the division of the sacrificial animal into thirty-six single pieces, and their distribution among the officiating priests, the sacrificer, his wife, and other persons connected with the performance of the sacrifice.

Then follows a chapter of penances for neglects on the part of an Agnihotri, or mishaps which might befall him. This is a continuation of the fifth chapter in the fifth book.

In the third chapter we are introduced to the rites of the princely inauguration ceremonies connected with a sacrifice, by the story of *Śunaśhepa*. On account of its containing Ṛik verses, as well as Gāthās (stanzas) it was to be told to the king on the day of its inauguration by the Hotar. The story is highly interesting; for it proves beyond doubt the existence of human sacrifices among the ancient Brahmins, and shows that they were in a half savage state; for we find here a Brahmin selling his son to a prince to be immolated.

Now three kinds of such inauguratory sacrifices for the king, called *Râjasūyas*, are described, viz. [66] *Abhiṣeka*, *Punarabhiṣeka*, and *Mahābhiṣeka*. The principal part of all these ceremonies consists in the sprinkling of holy water over the head of the kings, which is called *abhiṣeka*. It corresponds to the ceremony of anointing the kings with the Jews. It is of particular interest to observe that the Brahmins at this occasion did not allow the king to drink the proper Soma juice, but that he had to drink instead of it, a beverage prepared from the roots and leaves of several trees. The enjoyment of the Soma juice was a privilege reserved by the Brahmins to themselves alone. The king was, properly speaking, even not entitled to bring a sacrifice at all. It was only for the sake of the most extravagant gifts which the shrewd Brahmins extorted from kings for their offices, that they allowed him to bring a sacrifice. But before he could do so, he was to be made first a Brahmin himself; at the conclusion of the ceremony he had, however, to resign his Brahminship, and return to his former caste.

The last chapter of the *Brāhmaṇam* is taken up with the appointment by the king of a duly qualified Brahmin to the office of a house-priest, who is called *purohita*, i.e., president, superintendent. The word, as well as the office, must be very ancient; for we find it not only in the *Samhitā* of the Ṛigveda, but even in the *Zend-Avesta*. It is, as to etymology, the same word as *paradhâta*,<sup>1</sup> which is generally [67] the epithet of one of the most ancient Iranian heroes, of *Haoshyanha* (see Yashts 5, 20; 9, 3; 15, 7; 17, 24 ed. Westergaard) the Hosheng of the *Shāhnāmāh*. The later Iranian legends, as preserved in the *Shāhnāmāh*, made of the *paradhâtas* a whole dynasty of kings, which they call *Peshdadians* (the modern Persian corruption of the primitive *paradhâta*) who then precede the *Kayanians* (the *Kavis* of the Vedas). This shows that the institution of

---

<sup>1</sup> The word *purohita* is composed of *purā* before, and *hita* placed (from the root *dhā*); so *paradhâta* also; *parā* is the *Zend* form of *purā* before, which is equivalent to *purā*, and *dhâta* is the *Zend* participle of the root *dhā*.

serve practical as well as theoretical ends. From a practical point of view it was to be a guide to the repeaters of the mantras of the R̥gveda in some of their most important performances; but as regards the theoretical one, the author intened to instruct them on the real ends of their profession, viz. to make the sacrificer, by means of the mystical power ascribed to the mantras, either attain to anything he might wish for, or if the Hotar should from some reason or other choose to do so, to deprive him through the same power of his property, children, and [71]life. The Hot̥ris could learn from such a book how great their power was as the preservers of the sacred R̥ik verses. Every one who wished to perform a sacrifice as the only means for obtaining the favour of the gods, was entirely given up to the hands of the Hot̥ri-priests, who could do with him what they pleased.

The mantras referred to are, for the most part, to be found in the R̥gveda Samhitā which we have at present. There are, however, several quoted, which are not to be met with in it, whence we must conclude, that the Samhitā of the Aitareyins belonged to a Śākhā different from that one (the Śākala Śākhā) which is at present only known to us. Aśvalāyana, in his Śrāuta Sūtras, which are, as we have seen, founded on the Aitareya Brāhmaṇam, generally supplies the text of those mantras which are wanting in the Samhitā. Several of them are in the Atharvaveda Samhitā, but they generally show different readings. In comparing both, those in the Aśvalāyana Sūtras, and those in the Atharvaveda Samhitā, we find that, if there is any difference, the text of the Atharva is then always incorrect. It is remarkable that we do not only discover some relationship between the supposed Śākhā of the Aitareyins and the Atharvaveda Samhitā, but also between the Aitareya and Gopatha Brāhmaṇam. Whole kaṇḍikās of the Aitareya, such as those on the Vaṣatkāra (3, 7-8) on Atirātra (4, 5) are almost literally to be found in the Gopatha Brāhmaṇam of the Atharvaveda.

The author's own additions consisted principally [72] in critical remarks, recommending certain practices, and rejecting others, statement of reasons, why a particular rite must be performed in a particular way, and explanations of apparent anomalies in the ritual. The author does never, however, speak in the first person; for the whole he has the appearance of a tradition having descended from him. He is referred to only in the third person by the words, *taddha smāha*, "this he told." The theologians whose opinions are either accepted or rejected, are generally mentioned in the third person plural by the words "they say." Now

and then they are called *mahāvādāḥ*, i.e. the speakers of great things. But their real name appears to have been *Brahmavādins*, i. e. the speakers on Brahma (theologians, divines), which term we frequently meet in the Taittiriya Veda (Black Yajurveda.)

The work was, like the other Brāhmaṇas, no doubt, like the Samhitā, orally handed down. Some external mark is still visible. At the end of each Adhyāya the last word, or phrase, is put twice. The same fact we observe in all other Brāhmaṇas as well as in the Sūtras. This was evidently a mark for the repeater as well as the hearer by which to recognise the end of a chapter, each of which formed a little treatise for itself.

Regarding the repetition of the Brāhmaṇam we have to remark, that it is done in a very slow tone, but quite monotonously, whilst the Brāhmaṇas of the Yajurveda are recited with the proper accents, like the Samhitās. Of very frequent occurrence in it is the *pluti* i.e. the lengthening of a vowel to [73] three moras marked by ३. This Pluti is used in three cases, (1) to ask a question, (2) to deliberate or consider whether a thing should be done or not, and (3) to give some emphasis to a certain word. In the two first cases it expresses exactly the idea of our sign of interrogation, in the latter that of our underlining or italicising of certain important words.

Let us make before we conclude some remarks on the principal sacrificial and theological ideas (as far as they have not been touched already) which pervade the Aitareya Brāhmaṇam.

The sacrifice is regarded as the means for obtaining power over this and the other world, over visible as well as invisible beings, animate as well as inanimate creatures. Who knows its proper application, and has it duly performed, is in fact looked upon as the real master of the world; for any desire he may entertain, if it be even the most ambitious, can be gratified, any object he has in view can be obtained by means of it. The *Yajña* (sacrifice) taken as a whole is conceived to be a kind of machinery. in which every piece must tally with the other, or a sort of large chain in which no link is allowed to be wanting, or a staircase, by which one may ascend to heaven, or as a personage, endowed with all the characteristics of a human body. It exists from eternity, and proceeded from the Supreme Being (Prajāpati or Brahma) along with the *Trīvidyā*, i. e. the three-fold sacred science (the Rik verses, the Samans or chants, and the Yajus or sacrificial formulas). The creation of the world [74] itself was even regarded as the fruit of sacrifice performed by the

Supreme Being. The Yajña exists as an invisible thing at all times, it is like the latent power of electricity in an electrifying machine, requiring only the operation of a suitable apparatus in order to be elicited. It is supposed to extend, when unrolled, from the Ahavaniya or sacrificial fire into which all oblations are thrown, to heaven, forming thus a bridge or ladder, by means of which the sacrificer can communicate with the world of gods and spirits, and even ascend when alive to their abodes. The term for beginning the sacrificial operations is "to spread the sacrifice;" this means that the invisible thing, representing the ideal sacrifice which was lying dormant, as it were, is set into motion, in consequence of which its several parts or limbs are unfolding themselves, and thus the whole becomes extended. This ideal sacrifice stands in the closest relationship with all the sacrificial implements, the sacrificial place, and all the sacred verses and words spoken during its actual performance. The sacrifice being often represented as a kind of being with a body like that of men, certain ceremonies form his head, others his neck, others his eye, &c. The most important thing at a sacrifice is that all its several parts should tally together, and that consequently there should neither anything be in excess, nor deficient in it. This agreeing of the several parts of the sacrifice constitutes its *rûpa* i. e. form. The proper form is obtained, when the mantras which are repeated are in [75] strictest accordance with the ceremony for which they are repeated, or (if the sacrifice lasts for several or many days) when they have the characteristics of the respective days. If the form is vitiated, the whole sacrifice is lost. Mistakes being, on account of the so extremely complicated ritual, unavoidable, the sacrificial being was to be attended by a physician in the person of the Brahma priest (5, 34). Each mistake must be made good by a *prâyaścitta*, i. e. penance, or propitiatory offering.

The power and significance of the Hotri-priests at a sacrifice consists in their being the masters of the sacred word, which is frequently personified by *Vâch* i. e. Speech, who is identical with *Sarasvatî*, the goddess of learning in the latter Hindu Pantheon. Speech has, according to the opinion of the earliest Hindu divines, the power of vivifying and killing. The sacred words pronounced by the Hotar effect, by dint of the innate power of *Vâch*, the spiritual birth of the sacrificer, form his body, raise him up to heaven, connect him with the prototypes of those things which he wishes to obtain (such as children, cattle, &c.) and make him attain to his full life term, which is a hundred years; but they are at the same time a weapon by means of which the sacrificer's enemies, or he himself (if the Hotar have any evil

designs against him) can be killed, and all evil consequences of sin (this is termed *pāpman*) be destroyed. The power and effect of Speech as regards the obtaining of any particular thing wished for, mainly lies in the form in which it is uttered. Thence [76] the great importance of the metres, and the choice of words and terms. Each metre is the invisible master of something obtainable in this world; it is, as it were, its exponent, and ideal. This great significance of the metrical speech is derived from the number of syllables of which it consists; for each thing has, (just as in the Pythagorean system) a certain numerical proportion. The Gâyatrî metre, which consists of three times eight syllables, is the most sacred, and is the proper metre for Agni, the god of fire, and chaplain of the gods. It expresses the idea of Brahma; therefore the sacrificer must use it when he wishes for anything closely connected with the Brahma, such as acquirement of sacred knowledge, and the thorough understanding of all problems of theology. The Tristubh, which consists of four times eleven syllables, expresses the idea of strength, and royal power; thence it is the proper metre by which Indra, the king of the gods, is to be invoked. Any one wishing to obtain strength and royal power, principally a Kṣatriya, must use it. A variety of it the Uṣṇih metre of twenty-eight syllables, is to be employed by a sacrificer who aspires for longevity, for twenty-eight is the symbol of life. The Jagatî, a metre of forty-eight syllable, expresses the idea of cattle. Any one who wishes for wealth in cattle, must use it. The same idea (or that of the sacrifice) is expressed by the Pañkti metre (five times eight syllables). The Brihatî, which consists of thirty-six syllables, is to be used when a sacrificer is aspiring to fame and renown for this metre is the exponent [77] of those ideas. The Anuṣṭubh metre, of thirty-two, syllables, is the symbol of the celestial world; thence a candidate for a place in heaven has to use it. The Virāj of thirty syllables, is food and satisfaction; thence one who wishes for plenty of food, must employ it.

The words contained in these different metrical forms must always be appropriate to the occasion. If the oblation is given to Agni, the verse repeated must contain his name, or an allusion to it; were it to contain the name of Indra, or one of his characteristics, the offering would be thrown away. Every act, even the most trifling one, is at the sacrificial performance accompanied with mantras, and always such a verse is to be chosen as contains (or is made to contain by interpretation) an allusion to it. This will all be clear to the reader on reference, for instance, to 2, 2, where the mantras connected with every particular act of the ceremony of anointing and erecting the sacrificial post is given.

Of almost equal importance with the metres are the so-called Stomas, based also on numerical proportions. Each Stoma contains a certain number of verses, chanted according to one and the same tune. The number is very often obtained only by frequent repetition of the same triplet of verses (see about the particulars of the Stomas note 18 on pages 237-38 of the translation). Each has, just as the metres, its peculiar symbolical meaning. The Trivṛit (nine-fold) stoma, is, for instance, the symbol of Brahma, and the theological wisdom, and has Agni, the house-priest of the gods, for its deity: the Pañchadaśa (fifteen-fold) is the [78] symbol of royal power and thence appropriate to Indra, and the Kṣatriyas: the Saptadaśa (seventeen-fold) is the exponent of wealth in cattle; thence a Vaiśya should use it, or any other sacrificer who wishes to obtain wealth: the Ekaviṃśa-(twenty-one-fold) is the symbol of generation: thence it is principally to be used at the third libation, many rites of which refer to the propagation of progeny. The other Stomas, such as the *Trīṇava* (twenty-seven fold), *Trayastrīṃśa* (thirty-three-fold), &c., have a similarly symbolical meaning.

Besides the Stomas, the so-called Pṛiṣṭhas (the name of certain Sāmans and their combinations) are a necessary requisite at all the Soma sacrifices. They form the centre of all the ceremonies, and the principal one of them is always regarded as the womb (*yoni*) of the sacrificial being. They are generally only used at the midday libation. The two principal Pṛiṣṭhas are the Rathantara and Bṛihat Sāmans (*abhivā sūva nonuma*, and *tvāmiddhi havāmahe*). They can be used singly, or along with one of their kindred (see notes 29 on page 193, 14 on page 282, and 4, 28). The name Pṛiṣṭha means "back," for they are regarded on the whole as the back of the sacrifice.

All these things, metres (*chhandas*), Stomas and Pṛiṣṭhas, are believed to be as eternal and divine, as the words themselves they contain. The earliest Hindu divines did not only believe in a primitive revelation of the words of the sacred texts, but even in that of the various forms, which might be used for their repetition or chanting. These forms along with their contents, [79] the everlasting Veda words, are symbols expressive of things of the invisible world, and in several respects comparable to the Platonic ideas. They are in the hands of the sacrificial priests the instruments for accomplishing anything they might wish for in behalf of the sacrificer. But a great deal depends upon the way of using those spiritual instruments. It is a matter of importance whether a mantra is repeated without stopping,

or pāda by pāda (quarter by quarter), or half verse by half verse. The four feet (pādas), of which many metres are composed, represent the four feet of animals. The repetition of such a verse, half verse by half verse, that is, with two stops only, represents the sacrificer who as a human being, has two legs. By thus combining the ideas of four and two-footed beings, the sacrificer is mystically placed amidst cattle, and obtains them, in future, in the largest quantity. Another important point is, whether the mantra is repeated *upîmśu*, i.e. with an almost inaudible voice, or *tāṣṇīm*, i.e. silently, or with a low and slow voice (*mandrasvara*), or with a middle tone (*madhyama*), or very loud (*uttama*). (See 3, 44).

Among the large number of the sacred words, there are always some which have a destructive quality, and must, therefore, be used with great caution. In order to protect the sacrificer, as well as himself, from the dangerous effects of such words, the repeater must, by means of certain other words, or formulas, deprive them of their destructive power, and thus propitiate them. This is generally called *śānti* [80] (propitiation, appeasing). Such dangerous words are for instance, *vāṇṣaṭ* (see 3, 8) and *rudra*, the name of Śiva, the god of destruction (3, 34).

The sacrificer, who is the object of all these mystical operations on the part (of the priests) by means of their mantras, chants, and manual labour, is not allowed to remain inactive, but he himself has to repeat certain mantras, expressive of his desires. When, for instance, the Hotar is performing the mystical operation of placing him among cattle, he must say, "May I become rich in cattle!" When the same priest makes a firm standing place (a *pratiṣṭhā*) for him, he must say, "May I go to my place!" Thus he obtains the fulfilment of any desire which might be obtainable by means of a particular verse or mode of repeating, or chant, or performance of a particular rite, when he repeats the appropriate formula at the right time and occasion. For what he himself speaks, connects him with the ideals of his wishes, which are brought within his grasp by the priest.

The objects sacrificed for are manifold, viz. offspring, cattle, wealth, fame, theological learning, skill for performance of sacrifices, and heaven. For gaining heaven a Soma sacrifice is indispensable. For the sacred Soma juice has, according to the opinions of the ancient Hindu theologians, pre-eminently the power of uniting the sacrificer on this earth with the celestial king Soma, and make him thus one of his subjects, and consequently an associate of the gods, and an inhabitant of the celestial world.





the place of another metre. Gâyatri aspired after the place of Triṣṭubh and Jagatî, Triṣṭubh after that of Gâyatri and Jagatî, and Jagatî after that of Gâyatri and Triṣṭubh.

Thereupon Prajâpatî saw this Dvādaśāha with metres being removed from their proper places (*vyûlḥachhandasa*). He took it and sacrificed with it. In this way, he made the metres obtain (fulfilment of) all their desires. He who has such a knowledge, obtains (fulfilment of) all desires.

The Hotar removes the metres from their proper places, in order that the sacrifice should not lose its essence.

This circumstance that the Hotar changes the proper place of the metres has its analogy in the fact [308] that (great) people when travelling (to a distant place) yoke to their carriages, at every stage, fresh horses or oxen which are not fatigued. Just in the same way, the sacrificers travel to the celestial world by employing at every stage fresh metres (representing the horses or oxen) which are not fatigued. (This results) from changing the places of the metres.

These two worlds (heaven and earth) were (once) joined. (Subsequently) they separated. (After their separation) there fell neither rain, nor was there sunshine. The five classes of beings (gods, men, &c.) then did not keep peace with one another. (Thereupon) the gods brought about a reconciliation of both these worlds. Both contracted with one another a marriage, according to the rites observed by the gods.

In the form of the Rathantara Sâman, this earth is wedded to heaven ; and in the form of the Bṛihat Sâman, heaven is wedded to the earth. (And again) in the form of the Naudhasa Sâman, the earth is wedded to heaven ; and in the form of the Śyâita Sâman, heaven is wedded to the earth.

In the form of smoke, this earth is wedded to heaven ; in the form of rain, heaven is wedded to the earth.

The earth put a place fit for offering sacrifices to the gods into heaven. Heaven (then) put cattle on the earth.

The place fit for offering sacrifices to the gods which the earth put in heaven is that black spot in the moon.

This is the reason that they perform their sacrifice in those half months in which the moon is waxing and full (for only then that black spot is visible) ; for they only wish to obtain that (black spot).

Heaven (put) on the earth herbs for pasturage. About them Tura, the son of Kavaṣa, said : O Janamejaya, what is (to be understood by the words) [309] *poṣa* (fodder) and *ûṣa* (herbs of pasturage) ? This is the reason that those who care for what proceeds from the cow (such as milk, &c.)

put the question (when sending a cow to a pasturage), are there ūśās, i.e., herbs of pasturage? For ūśa is fodder.

That world turned towards this world, surrounding it. Thence heaven and earth were produced. Neither came heaven from the air, nor the earth from the air.

## 28.

(On the Sâma Priṣṭhas.)<sup>6</sup>

At the beginning, there were Bṛihat and Rathantaram; through them there were Speech and Mind. Rathantaram is Speech, Bṛihat is Mind. Bṛihat being first created, thought Rathantaram to be inferior; the Rathantaram put an embryo in its body and brought forth Vairûpam. These two, Rathantaram and Vairûpam joined, thought Bṛihat to be inferior to them; Bṛihat put an embryo in its own body, whence the Vairâjam was produced. These two, Bṛihat and Vairâjam joined, thought Rathantaram and Vairûpam to be inferior to them. Rathantaram then put an embryo in its body, whence the Śâkvaram was produced. These three, Rathantaram, Vairûpam, and Śâkvaram thought Bṛihat and Vairâjam to be inferior to them. Bṛihat then put an embryo in its body, whence the Raivatam was produced. These three Sâmans on each side (Rathantaram, Vairûpam, Śâkvaram, and Bṛihat, Vairâjam, Raivatam) became the six Priṣṭhas.<sup>7</sup>

At this (time, when the Sâma Priṣṭhas originated) the three metres (Gâyatri, Triṣṭubh, and Jagati) [310] were unable to get hold of these six Priṣṭhas. Gâyatri put an embryo in herself and produced Anuṣṭubh. Triṣṭubh put an embryo in herself and produced Pañkti. Jagati put an embryo in herself and produced the Atichhandas (metres). The three metres having thus become six, were thus able to hold the six Priṣṭhas.

The sacrifice of him becomes (well) performed and (also) becomes well performed for the whole assemblage (of sacrificer), who at this occasion takes his Dikṣâ when knowing this production of the metres and Priṣṭhas.

## FIFTH CHAPTER.

(The Two First Days of the Dvîdasâha Sacrifice)

## 29.

(The Śâstras of the Morning and Midday Libations on the First Day.)

Agni is the leading deity of the first day. The Stoma (required) is

\* See page 214.

<sup>7</sup> The purport of this paragraph is to show why on certain days of the Dvîdasâha the Rathantara Sâman, and on others the Bṛihat Sâman, is required for forming a Priṣṭha with another Sâman. See on these different Sâmans 4, 13.

Trivṛit (the nine-fold), the Sâman Rathantaram, the metre Gâyatri. He who knows what deity, what Stoma, what Sâman, what metre (are required on the first day), becomes successful by it. The words *â* and *pra* are the characteristics of the first day. (Further) characteristics of this day are: *yukta* joined, *ratha* carriage, *âsu* swift, *pâ* to drink, the mentioning of the deities in the first padas (of the verses repeated) by their very names, the allusion to this world (earth), Sâmans akin to Rathantaram, metres akin to Gâyatri, the future of *kṛi* to make.

The Ajya hymn of the first day is, *upa prayanto adhvaram* (1, 74); for it contains the term *pra*, which is a characteristic of the first day.

**[311]** The Pra-uga Śastra is, *vâyavâyâhi darśateme* (1, 2-3); for it contains the term *â*, a characteristic of the first day.

The Pratipad (beginning) of the Marutvatiya Śastra is, *â tvâ ratham yathotaye* (8, 57, 1-3); its Anuchara (sequel), *idam vaso sutam andhaḥ* (8, 2, 1-3); they contain the terms *ratha* and *piba* (drink), which are characteristics of the first day.

The Indra-Nihava Pragâtha is, *indra nediya ed ihi* (Vâlakh. 5, 5-6); here the deity is mentioned in the first pada, which is a characteristic of the first day.

The Brâhmanaspatya Pragâtha is, *praitu Brahmanaspatiḥ* (1, 40, 3-4); it contains the term *pra*, which is a characteristic of the first day.

The Dhâyyâs are, *agnir netâ, tvam Soma kratubhiḥ, pinvanty apaḥ* (Ait. Br. 3, 18); here are the deities mentioned in the first padas, which is a characteristic of the first day.

The Marutvatiya Pragâtha is, *prava indrâya brihate* (8, 78, 3-4); it contains the term *pra*, which is a characteristic of the first day.

The (Nivid) hymn is, *â yâtv indro vase* (4, 21); it contains the term *â*, which is a characteristic of the first day.

#### (Niṣkevalya Śastra)

The Rathantara Pṛiṣṭham is, *abhi tvâ śûra nonumo* (7, 32, 22-23) and *abhi tvâ pûrvapîtaye* (8, 3, 7-8); (this is done) at a Rathantara day, of which characteristic the first day is.

The Dhâyyâ is, *yad vâvâna* (Ait. Br. 3, 22); it contains the term *â*, which is a characteristic of the first day.

The Sâma Pragâtha is, *piba sutasya* (8, 3, 1-2); it contains the term *piba*, "drink," which is a characteristic of the first day.

The Târksyam is, *tyam â su râjinam* (Ait. Br. 4, 20). The Hotar repeats it before the (Nivid) hymn **[312]** (of the Niṣkevalya Śastra). The Târksyam is safe journey. (It is repeated) for securing safety.

He who has such a knowledge makes his journey in safety and reaches the end of the year in safety.

## 30.

(The Rest of the Nis̥kevalya Śāstra, and the Śāstras of the Evening Libation)

The (Nivid) hymn (of the Nis̥kevalya Śāstra) is, *ā na indro dūrād* (4, 20); it contains the term *ā*, which is a characteristic of the first day.

Both Nivid hymns, that of the Marutvatiya as well as that of the Nis̥kevalya Śāstras are (so called) *Sampātas*.<sup>1</sup> Vāmadeva, after having seen (once) these (three) worlds, got possession of them (*samopatāt*) by means of the *Sampātas*. On account of his getting possession of (*sampati*) by means of the *Sampātas*, they are called by this name (*sampātas*).

The reason that the Hotar, on the first day, repeats two *Sampāta* hymns, is, to reach the celestial world, to get possession of it, and join (its inhabitants).

The Pratipad (beginning verse) of the Vaiśvadeva Śāstra on the first day, which is a Rathantara day<sup>2</sup> [313] is, *tat savitur vṛṇimahe*, (5, 82, 1-3); its Anuchara (sequel) is, *adya no deva savitar* (5, 82, 4-6). It is used at a Rathantara day, which is characteristic of the first day.

The (Nivid) hymn for Savitar is, *yuñjate mana uta* (5, 81); it contains the term *yuñj* to join, which is a characteristic of the first day.

The (Nivid) hymn for Heaven and Earth is, *pra dyāvā yajñāñ* (1, 159); it contains the *pra*, which is a characteristic of the first day.

The (Nivid) hymn for the Ribhus is, *iheha vo manasā* (3, 60). If it would contain *pra*, and *ā*, the (proper) characteristics of the first day, then all would be *pra*, i. e., going forth, and consequently the sacrificers would depart (*prāiśyan*) from this world. This is the reason that the Hotar repeats on the first day (as Nivid hymn for Heaven and Earth) *iheha mano* though it does not contain the term characteristic of the first day).

<sup>1</sup> See Ait. Brāhm. 6, 18.

<sup>2</sup> The so-called Rathantara days of the Dvādaśāha are the first, third and fifth. Śāy. here remarks that the Pratipad of the Vaiśvadeva Śāstras is joined to the Rathantara Sāman. This is, however, an erroneous statement, as I can prove from the Sāma prayoga of the Dvādaśāha (the last sacrifice of this kind has been, in this part of India, performed about fifty years ago) which is in my possession. The triplet addressed to Savitar is always (at all Soma sacrifices) the opening of the Vaiśvadeva Śāstra on the evening libation; but on the first day of the Dvādaśāha, there is besides the Arbhava Pavamāna Stotra, only the Yajña yajñiya Sāma used, the same which is required at the evening libation of the Agniṣṭoma. Śāy. wrote that explanation only to explain the term *rāthantara*. This means only that this is done on the "Rathantara day." The Rathantara is on this day required at the midday libation.

*Iha*, i.e., here, is this world. By doing so, the Hotar makes the sacrificers enjoy this world.

The (Nivid) hymn for the Viśvedevāh is, *devān huve brīhach chhavasah svastaye* (10, 66). The deities are mentioned in the first pada, which is a characteristic of the first day.

The reason that the Hotar repeats this hymn (as Nivid Sūkta) for the Viśvedevāh on the first day, is to make the journey (of the sacrificers) safe, because those who hold a session lasting for a year, or who perform the Dvādaśāha, are going to set out on a long journey. Thus the Hotar makes (for them) the journey safe.

He who has such a knowledge reaches in safety the end of the year, as well as those who have a Hotar knowing this and acting accordingly.

The Partipad of the Agnimâruta Śastra is, *vaiś vānarāya priṭhu-pājase* (3, 3). The deity (Vaiśvânara) [314] is mentioned in the first pada, which is a characteristic of the first day.

The (Nivid) hymn for the Marutas is, *pra tvakṣasaḥ pra tavasaḥ* (1, 87). It contains the term *pra*, which is a characteristic of the first day.

He repeats the Jâtavedâs verse, *jâtavedase sunavâma* (1, 99, 1) before (the Jâtavedâs) hymn. The Jâtavedâs verse is safe journey. (It is repeated) for securing a safe journey. Thus he secures a safe journey (for the sacrificer). He who has such a knowledge reaches in safety the end of the year.

The (Nivid) hymn for Jâtavedâs is, *pra tavyastîm navyastîm* (1, 143). It contains the term *pra*, which is a characteristic of the first day.

The Agnimâruta Śastra (of the first day of the Dvādaśāha) is the same as in the Agniṣṭoma<sup>3</sup>. The creatures live on what is performed equally in the sacrifice (i.e., in several different kinds of sacrifices). Thence the Agnimâruta Śastra (of the first day of the Dvādaśāha) is identical (with that of the Agniṣṭoma).

### 31

*(The Characteristics of the Second Day of the Dvādaśāha. The Śastras of the Morning and Midday Libations. Story of Sâryâta, the son of Manu)*

Indra is the leading deity of the second day; the Stoma (required) is the fifteen-fold (*pañchadaśa*), the Sâman is Brīhat, the metre is Trisṭubh. He who knows what deity, what Stoma, what Sâman, what metre (are required for the second day) succeeds by it. On the second day, neither *â* nor *pra* (the characteristics of the first day) are used, but *sthâ* (derivations from this root) "to stand," is the characteristic. Other

<sup>3</sup> See 3, 35-38.

characteristics of the second day are, *ûrdhva* [315] upwards, *prati* towards, *antar* in, between, *vriṣan* male, *vriddhan* growing, the deities mentioned (by their names) in the second pada, the allusion to the airy region, what has the nature of the Bṛihat Sâman, what has the nature of the Triṣṭubh the present tense<sup>4</sup>.

The Aja (hymn) of the second day is, *agnim dûtam vrinîmahe* (1, 12); this contains the present tense (in *vrinîmahe*), which is a characteristic of the second day.

The pra-uga Śastra is, *vāyo ye te sahasriṇo* (2, 41); it contains the term *vriddhan* growing, increasing, in the words *sutaḥ soma ritā ridha* (2, 41, 4), which is a characteristic of the second day.

The Pratipad (beginning) of the Marutvatiya Śastra is, *viśvânarasya vaspatim* (8, 57, 4-6), and its Anuchara (sequel), *indra it Somapâ* (8, 2, 4-6). They contain the terms *vriddhan* (8, 57, 5) and *antar* (8, 2, 5), which are characteristics of the second day.

The constant (Indra-Nihava) Pragâtha is, *indra nedîya edthi*.

The Brahmanaspati Pragâtha is, *uttiṣṭha brahmanaspate*; it contains the term *ûrdhva* up, upwards, (in the word *uttiṣṭha*, i.e., rise), which is a characteristic of the second day.

The constant Dhâyyâs are, *agnir netâ tvam soma kratubhiḥ, pinvanty apah*.

The Marutvatiya Pargâtha is, *brihad indrâya gâyata* (8, 87, 1-2); it contains the term *vriddhan* increasing, in the word *ritarridhâ*.

The (Nivid) hymn (of the Marutvatiya Śastra) is, *indra somam somapate* (3, 32); it contains the [316] term *vriṣan* in the word *â vriṣasva* "gather strength" (show yourself as a male 3, 32, 2), which is a characteristic of the second day.

The Bṛihat Pṛiṣṭham (i. e., Stotriyam, and Anurûpam) is *tvâm iddhi havâmohe* (6, 46, 1-2) and *tvam hyehi cherave* (8, 50, 7-8); (this is done) on the Bârhata day,<sup>5</sup> of which kind the second day is (the use of the Bṛihat *pṛiṣṭha*), being a characteristic of the second day.

The constant Dhâyyâ (of the Niṣkevalya Śastra) is, *yad vâvâna*.

The Sâma Pragâtha is, *ubhayam śrinavachcha* (8, 50, 1-2); (the term *ubhayam*, i. e. both) means, what is today and what was yesterday. It belongs to the Bṛihat Sâman, which is a characteristic of the second day.

The constant Târksya is, *tyam â ṣu vâjinam*.

<sup>4</sup> The word for "present tense" in the original is *kurvat*, which is the participle of the present tense of the root *kri* to make. That it cannot have any other meaning, undoubtedly follows from the application of this term to the hymn *agnim dûtam vrinîmahe*, in the whole of which there is nowhere any present tense or present participle of the root *kri*, but present tenses of other verbs.

<sup>5</sup> The Bârhata days are the second, fourth, and sixth.

(The Remainder of the Nis̥kevalya Śastra and the Śastras of the Evening Libation on the Second Day)

The (Nivid) hymn (of the Nis̥kevalya Śastra) is, *ya ta ūtir avamā* (6, 25); it contains the term *vṛṣan*, in the word *vṛṣṇyāni* (6, 25, 3), which term is a characteristic of the second day.

The Pratipad of the Vaiśvadeva Śastra is, *vis̥vo devasya netus* (5, 50, 1), and *tat savitur vareṇyam* (3, 62, 10-11), the Anuchara (sequel) is, *ā viśvadevam satpatim* (5, 82, 7-9). It belongs to the Bṛihat day, and is thus a characteristic of the second day (which is a Bṛihat day).

The (Nivid) hymn for Savitar is, *ud u śya devah savitā* (6, 71); it contains the term "up upwards" (in *ut*), which is a characteristic of the second day.

[317] The Nivid hymn for Dyāvāprithivī is, *te hi dyāvāprithivī* (1, 160); it contains the term *antar*, which is a characteristic of the second day.

The (Nivid) hymn for the Ribhus is, *taḁṣan ratham* (1, 111), it contains the term *vṛṣan*, in the word *vṛṣanvasū*, which is a characteristic of the second day.

The (Nivid) hymn for the Viśvedevāh is, *yajñasya yo rathyam* (10, 92); it contains the term *vṛṣā* in the words *vṛṣa ketur*, which is a characteristic of the second day. This hymn is by Śāryāta. As the Agirās were engaged in a sacrificial session for going to heaven, they became always confounded (in their recitations) as often as they were going to perform the ceremonies of the second day (of the Śaḁaha). Śāryāta, the son of Manu, made them repeat the hymn, *yajñasya rathyam* on the second day, whereupon they got aware of the sacrifice (the sacrificial personage), and (by means of it) of the celestial world. The reason that the Hotar repeats this hymn on the second day is (to help the sacrificer), to get aware of the sacrifice, and consequently to see the celestial world (of which he wishes to become an inhabitant).

The Pratipad (beginning) of the Agnimāruta Śastra is, *priḁṣasya vṛṣṇo* (6, 8); it contains the term *vṛṣan*, which is a characteristic of the second day.

The (Nivid) hymn for the Marutas in the Agnimāruta Śastra is, *vṛṣṇe śardhāya* (1, 64); it contains the term *vṛṣan*, which is a characteristic of the second day.

The constant Jātavedās verse is, *Jātavedase sunavāma*.

The (Nivid) hymn for Jātavedās is *yajñena vardhata* (2, 2); it contains the term *vridh*, which is a characteristic of the second day.



## [318] FIFTH BOOK.

### FIRST CHAPTER.

(*The Characteristics and Śāstras of the Third and Fourth  
Days of the Dvâdâśûha*)

#### 1

(*The Characteristics of the Third-Day. The Śāstras of the Morning  
and Midday Libations*)

The leading deities of the third day are the Viśvedevâḥ; its (leading) Stoma is the so-called Saptadaśa (seventeen-fold), its Sâman the Vairûpam, its metre the Jagatî. He who knows what deity, what Stoma, what Sâman, what metre (are required on the third day), becomes successful by it.

What hymn has a refrain, that is a characteristic of the third day. Other characteristics are: *aśva* horse, *anta* end, repetition, (*punarâvṛitti*) consonance (in the ending vowels), cohabitation, the term "covered, closed," (*paryasta*), the term *three*, what has the form of *anta* (end), the mentioning of the deity in the last pada, an allusion to that world, the Vairûpam Sâman, the Jagatî metre, the past tense.

The Ajya Śāstra is, *yukṣvâ hi devahûtamân* (8, 64). The gods went to heaven by means of the third day. The Asuras (and) Râkṣas prevented them (from entering it). They said (to the Asuras), "Become deformed, become deformed" (*virûpa*); when the Asuras were becoming deformed, the Devas entered (heaven). This produced the Sâman called Vairûpam, thence it is called so (from *virûpa* deformed). He who has become deformed in consequence of his own guilt, destroys it (his deformity) by means of this knowledge.

[319] The Asuras persecuted the Devas again, and came into contact with them. The Devas turned horses (*aśva*) and kicked them with their feet. Thence the horses are called *aśva* (from *aś* to reach). He who knows this obtains (*aśnute*) all he desires. Thence the horse is the swiftest of animals, because of its kicking with the hind legs. He who has such a knowledge destroys the consequences of guilt. This is the reason that the Ajya hymn on the third day contains the term *aśva* horse, which is a characteristic of the third day.

The Pra-uga Śastra consists of the following triplets : *vāyavāyāhi vītayē* (5, 51, 5-7) *vāyō yāhi śivād.* (8, 26, 23-25), *indraś cha vāyav eṣām sutānām* (5, 51, 6-8), *ā mitre varuṇē vāyam* (5, 72, 1-3), *āśvināveha gachhatām* (5, 75, 7-9), *dyāhy adribhiḥ* (5, 40, 1-3), *sojātr devebhir viśvebhir* (7, 34, 15-17), *utanaḥ priyā* (6, 61 10-12). They are in the Uṣṇih metre, have a refrain (*samānodarkam*), which is a characteristic of the third day.

*Tam tam id rādhase* (8, 57, 7-9), *traya indrasya Soma* (8, 2, 7-9) are the beginning and the sequel of the Marutvatiya Śastra, which contain the terms, *nṛtā*, i.e., consonance (8, 57, 7) and *traya*, i.e., three, which are characteristics of the third day. *Indra nedīya* (Vāl. 5, 5-6) is the constant (Indra-Nihava) *pragāthah*.<sup>1</sup> *Pranūnam Brahmanaspatir* (1, 40, 5-6) is the Brāhmaṇaspatya Pragātha which has a consonance (of vowels), is a characteristic of the third day. *Agnir netā* (3, 20, 4), *tvam Soma kratubhiḥ* (1, 91, 2), and *pinvanti apō* (1, 64, 6) are the immovable Dhāyyās. *Nakiḥ Sudāsō ratham* (7, 32, 10) [320] is the Marutvatiya Pragātha, which contains the term *prayasta*, i.e., covered, closed. *Fryaryamā manuṣo devatātā* (5, 29) is the (Nivid) hymn (for the Marutvatiya Śastra); it contains the term "three." *Yad dyāva indra* (8, 59, 5-6), *yad indra yāvatas* (7, 32, 18-19) form the Vairūpam Pṛiṣṭham on the third day, which is a Rathantara day, which is a characteristic of the third day.

*Yad vāvāna* (10, 74, 6) is the constant Dhāyyā. By repeating (after this Dhāyyā) : *abhi tvā śāra nonumah* (7, 32, 22-23) the Hotar turns back the womb (of this day), because this (third) day is, as to its position, a Rathantara day which Sāman is, therefore, the womb of it. *Indra tridhātu śaraṇam* (6, 46, 9-10) is the Sāma Pragātha; it contains the term "three" (in *tridhāta*). *Tyam ū ṣu vājinam* (10, 178) is the constant Tārksya.

## 2

### (The Nivid Hymn of the Niṣkevalya Śastra, and the Śastras of the Evening Libation of the Third Day)

*Yo jātō eva prathamō manasvān* (2, 12) is the (Nivid) hymn, every verse of which ends in the same words (*sa janāsa Indraḥ*), which is a characteristic of the third day. It contains the words *sa jana* and *Indra*. If this be recited, then Indra becomes possessed of his Indra (peculiar) power. The Sāma singers, therefore, say, the Rīgvedis (the Hotars) praise Indra's peculiar nature (power, *indrasya indriyam*). This hymn is by the Rīṣi Gṛitsamada. By means of it, this Rīṣi obtained Indra's favour

<sup>1</sup> Sayana explains *punarṇinritam* as follows : पुनर्निर्दिष्टं स्वरविज्ञेयवाच्यतां, पुनः पुनरावर्तनेन क नर्तनवाच्यं, This clearly expresses what we call consonance; the recurrence of the same vowel at the end is compared to the movements of a dancer (*ninritam*).

## [318] FIFTH BOOK.

### FIRST CHAPTER.

(*The Characteristics and Śāstras of the Third and Fourth  
Days of the Dvâdasâha*)

#### 1

(*The Characteristics of the Third-Day. The Śāstras of the Morning  
and Midday Libations*)

The leading deities of the third day are the Viśvedevâḥ ; its (leading) Stoma is the so-called Saptadaśa (seventeen-fold), its Sâman the Vairûpam, its metre the Jagatî. He who knows what deity, what Stoma, what Sâman, what metre (are required on the third day), becomes successful by it.

What hymn has a refrain, that is a characteristic of the third day. Other characteristics are : *aśva* horse, *anta* end, repetition, (*punardvritti*) consonance (in the ending vowels), cohabitation, the term "covered, closed," (*panyasta*), the term *three*, what has the form of *anta* (end), the mentioning of the deity in the last pada, an allusion to that world, the Vairûpam Sâman, the Jagatî metre, the past tense.

The Ajya Śāstra is, *yukṣvâ hi devahûtamân* (8, 64). The gods went to heaven by means of the third day. The Asuras (and) Rākṣas prevented them (from entering it). They said (to the Asuras), "Become deformed, become deformed" (*virûpa*) ; when the Asuras were becoming deformed, the Devas entered (heaven). This produced the Sâman called Vairûpam, thence it is called so (from *virûpa* deformed). He who has become deformed in consequence of his own guilt, destroys it (his deformity) by means of this knowledge.

[319] The Asuras persecuted the Devas again, and came into contact with them. The Devas turned horses (*aśva*) and kicked them with their feet. Thence the horses are called *aśva* (from *aś* to reach). He who knows this obtains (*aśnute*) all he desires. Thence the horse is the swiftest of animals, because of its kicking with the hind legs. He who has such a knowledge destroys the consequences of guilt. This is the reason that the Ajya hymn on the third day contains the term *aśva* horse, which is a characteristic of the third day.

The Pra-uga Śastra consists of the following triplets : *vāyavāyāhi vītayē* (5, 51, 5-7) *vāyō yāhi śivād* (8, 26, 23-25), *indraś cha vāyav eṣām sutāndm* (5, 51, 6-8), *ā mitre varuṇē vāyam* (5, 72, 1-3), *āstindveha gachhatām* (5, 75, 7-9), *āyāhy adribhāh* (5, 40, 1-3), *sojātr devebhir viśvebhir* (7, 34, 15-17), *uta nah priyā* (6, 61 10-12). They are in the Uṣṇih metre, have a refrain (*samānodarkam*), which is a characteristic of the third day.

*Tam tam id rādhasē* (8, 57, 7-9), *traya indrasya Soma* (8, 2, 7-9) are the beginning and the sequel of the Marutvatiya Śastra, which contain the terms, *nṛtā*, i.e., consonance (8, 57, 7) and *traya*, i.e., three, which are characteristics of the third day. *Indra nedīya* (Vāl. 5, 5-6) is the constant (Indra-Nihava) *pragāthah*.<sup>1</sup> *Pranānam Brahmanaspatir* (1, 40, 5-6) is the Brāhmaṇaspatya Pragātha which has a consonance (of vowels), is a characteristic of the third day. *Agnir netā* (3, 20, 4), *tvam Soma kratubhāh* (1, 91, 2), and *pinvanti apō* (1, 64, 6) are the immovable Dhāyyās. *Nakih Sudāsō ratham* (7, 32, 10) [320] is the Marutvatiya Pragātha, which contains the term *prayasta*, i.e., covered, closed. *Tryaryamā manuṣo devatātā* (5, 29) is the (Nivid) hymn (for the Marutvatiya Śastra); it contains the term "three." *Yad dyāva indra* (8, 59, 5-6), *yad indra yāvatas* (7, 32, 18-19) form the Vairūpam Prīṣṭham on the third day, which is a Rathantara day, which is a characteristic of the third day.

*Yad vāvāna* (10, 74, 6) is the constant Dhāyyā. By repeating (after this Dhāyyā) : *abhi tvā sūra nonumah* (7, 32, 22-23) the Hotar turns back the womb (of this day), because this (third) day is, as to its position, a Rathantara day which Sāman is, therefore, the womb of it. *Indra tridhātu śaraṇam* (6, 46, 9-10) is the Sāma Pragātha; it contains the term "three" (in *tridhāta*). *Tyam ū ṣu vājinam* (10, 178) is the constant Tārksya.

## 2

### (The Nivid Hymn of the Niṣkevalya Śastra, and the Śastras of the Evening Libation of the Third Day)

*Yo jātō eva prathamō manasvān* (2, 12) is the (Nivid) hymn, every verse of which ends in the same words (*sa jandsa Indrah*), which is a characteristic of the third day. It contains the words *sa jana* and *Indra*. If this be recited, then Indra becomes possessed of his Indra (peculiar) power. The Sāma singers, therefore, say, the Rīgvedis (the Hotars) praise Indra's peculiar nature (power, *indrasya indriyam*). This hymn is by the Rīṣi Gṛtsamada. By means of it, this Rīṣi obtained Indra's favour

<sup>1</sup> Sayana explains punarvritam as follows : पुनर्व्रितं स्वविशेषाच्चरणां, पुनः पुनरावर्तनेन क नर्तनसदृशं, This clearly expresses what we call consonance; the recurrence of the same vowel at the end is compared to the movements of a dancer (vritam).

and conquered the highest world. He who has this knowledge obtains Indra's favour and conquers the highest world.

*Tat Savitur vṛiṇīmahe vayam* (5, 82, 1-3) and *adyâ nô deva savitaḥ* (5, 82, 3-5), are the beginning and the [321] sequel of the Vaiśvadeva Śastra on the third day, which is a Rathantara day.

*Tad devasya Savitur vâryam mahad vṛiṇīmahe* (4, 53, 1) is the (Nivid) hymn for Savitar. Because the end (which is aimed at) is a great one (*mahad*); and the third day is also an end. *Ghṛitena dyâvâ prithivî* (6, 70) is the (Nivid) hymn for Dyâvâprithivî. It contains the words *ghṛitaśriyâ*, *ghṛita prichâ*, *ghṛitavridhâ*, in which there is a repetition (because the word *ghṛita* is three times repeated) and the consonance of the terminating vowels (because there is three times *â* at the end), which are characteristics of the third day.

*Anaśvô jâtô anabhīsur* (4, 36) is the (Nivid) hymn for the Ribhus. It contains, in the words *rathas trichakraḥ*, the term "three" (*tri*), which is a characteristic of the third day.

*Parâvatô ye didhiṣanta* (10, 63) is the (Nivid) hymn for the Viśvedevâḥ. Because the word *anta* (the end) is to be found in the word *paravatô* (*atô* in the strong form *antô*), and the third day is an end (an object). This is the Gayasūkta, by which Gaya, the son of Plata, obtained the favour of the Viśvedevâḥ and conquered the highest world. He who has this knowledge obtains the favour of the Viśvedevâḥ and conquers the highest world.

*Vaisvanarâya dhiṣaṇâm* (3, 2) is the beginning of the Agnimâruta Śastra. The *anta* (end) is in *dhiṣaṇâ* (but the *t* is wanting). The third day is also an "end" (to a *Tryaha* or period of three days).

*Dhârávarâ marutô* (2, 34) is the (Nivid) hymn for the Marutas. Here by *anta* is the plural (most of the nominatives of this verse are in the plural) to be understood, because the plural is the end (the last among the terminations, following the singular and dual). The third day is also the end (of the *Tryaha*).

[322] *Jâtavedase sunavâma* (1, 99, 1) is the constant verse for Jâtavedâs. *Tvam agne prathamô aṅgirâ* (1, 31) is the (Nivid) hymn for Jâtavedâs, where each verse begins by the same words (*tvam agne*), which is a characteristic of the third day. By repeating *tvam tvam* (in every verse), the Hotar alludes to the following three days (from the fourth to the sixth) for connecting (both series of three days). Those who, with such a knowledge, repeat (at the end of the last Śastra of the third day a hymn every verse of which contains the term *tvam*) have both series of three days performed without interruption and breach.

## 3.

(On the *Nyûñkha*)\*

(Sây. These periods of three days form part of the *Navarâtra*—nine nights included in the *Dvâdasâha*. [323] The first Tryahab or period of three days is now explained, and the very same is the first part of the *pristhyam*, comprising six days. Now the middle part of the *Navarâtra* (the second three days) are to be explained.

The *Stomas* and *Chhandas* are at an end (i.e., all the *Stoma* combinations, and the metres are exhausted) on the third day; that one only remains. This "that one" is the syllable *vâch*, which consists of three sounds; *vâch* is one syllable, and (this) syllable consists of three sounds, which represent the latter three days (out of the six), of which *Vâch* (Speech) is one, and *Gâus* (Cow) is one, and *Dyaus* (Heaven) is one. Therefore, *Vâch* alone is the leading deity of the fourth day.

On just the fourth day, they make *Nyûñkha* of this syllable by pronouncing it with a tremulous voice, increasing and decreasing (dividing) the tone. It serves for rising the fourth day (to make it particularly important). Because the *Nyûñkha* is (produces) food, for the singers seeking a livelihood wander about, in order to make food grow (by their singing for rain).

By making *Nyûñkha* on the fourth day, they produce food; (because it is done) for producing food. Thence the fourth day is *jâtavat*, i.e., productive. Some say, one must make *Nyûñkha* with a word comprising four sounds; for the animals are fourfooted, in order to obtain cattle. Others say, one must make *Nyûñkha* with three sounds. These three sounds are the three worlds. In order to conquer these worlds, they say,

\* The rules for making the *Nyûñkha* are laid down in *Āśval. Śr. S* (7, 11). They are प्रातरनुवाक प्रतिपद्यद्वा चोयूँखो द्वितीयस्वरमोकारं त्रिमात्रमुदात्तं त्रिस्तस्य तस्य चोपरिष्टादपरिमितान्यं चवाद्धौकाराननुदात्तानुत्तमस्य, तु त्रीन् पूर्वमक्षरद्विहिन्यते न्युल्यमाने, i.e., "on the fourth day is the second sound (syllable) of each of the two first half verses in the beginning of the *Prâtaranuvâke* to be pronounced with *Nyûñkha*. (This *Nyûñkha* is made in the following manner). The *ô* (in *âpô revatir* and *râyô*) is pronounced thrice with three moras, in the high tone (*udâtta*); this *ô* thus pronounced in the high tone with three moras is each time followed by an indefinite number of half *os* (i.e., the vowel *o* pronounced very abruptly with half a mora only) or by five only, the last *ô* (with three moras) being, however, followed by three half *os* only; the first sound is pronounced with some impetus, when a syllable is spoken with *Nyûñkha*.

This description which is quite exact, as I can assure the reader from my having heard the *Nyûñka* pronounced by a *Śrotriya*, is illustrated in *Āśv* by several instances. It occurs twice in the first verse of the *Prâtaranuvâka* (after the words *yajña rāyas*, the last syllable of both being changed into *ô*), and once in the *Ajva Sūkta* (*agnim na 10 21*), after the *â* of the word *yajñāya*, and in the *Niṣkevalya Śāstra*. The *Nyûñkha* is always followed by a *pratigara*, pronounced by the *Adhvaryu*, containing also the *Nyûñkha*.

one must make Nyûnkha with one sound only. Sângalâyana, the son of Mudgala, a Brahman, said "The word ' Vâch ' comprises one syllable only ; therefore he who makes Nyûnkha by one sound only, does it in the right way." They say, one must make Nyûnkha with two sounds for [324] obtaining a stand-point, for man has two legs, and the animals have four ; thus he places the two-footed man among the four-footed animals. Therefore, the Hotar ought to make Nyûnkha with two sounds. At the beginning, he makes Nyûnkha in the morning prayer (Prâtarānuvâka) ; because creatures first eat food with the mouth. In this way, the Hotar places the sacrificer with his mouth (ready for eating) towards food.

In the Ajya Śāstra, the Nyûnkha is made in the middle ; for, in the middle, he makes the creatures fond of food, and he places thus the sacrificer in the midst of food. In the midday libation, the Hotar makes Nyûnkha at the beginning, because animals eat food with their mouth. Thus he places the sacrificer with his mouth towards food. Thus he makes Nyûnkha at both the libations (morning and midday) for obtaining food.

#### 4.

#### (The Characteristics of the Fourth Day. The Śāstras of the Morning and Midday Libations)

The leading deity of the fourth day is the Vâch. The Stoma is the twenty-one-fold, the Sâman is Vairâja, the metre is Anuṣṭubh. He who knows what deity, what Stoma, what Sâman, what metre (are required) on the fourth day, succeeds through it (the fourth day). The terms *ā pra* are the characteristics of the fourth day. The fourth day has all the characteristics of the first, viz., *yukta ratha âśu pâ* (to drink) ; the mentioning of the deity in first pada, an allusion to this world. Other characteristics of the fourth day are the *jâta*, *hava*, *śukra* what has the form of speech (the Nyûnkha), what is by Vimada *viriphita*, what has different metres (*vichhandas*), what is wanting in syllables, and [325] what has an excess of them ; what refers to Virâj and to Anuṣṭubh ; the tense in future (*karīṣyat*).

*Agnim na svavriktibhiḥ* (10, 21) is the Ajya hymn of the fourth day.

It is by the Risi Vimada, whose name is contained in an alliteration in it (in *vi vo made*), and has alliterations, consonances, and assonances (*viriphitam*).<sup>3</sup> Such a hymn is a characteristic of the fourth day. It con-

<sup>3</sup> The word *viriphitam* has, it appears, been misunderstood by Śâyana, who explains it by "nyûnkhitā," i. e., in which the Nyûnkha is made. It is true, the Nyûnkha is made by the Hotar, when repeating the two Vimada hymns (*āgnim na svavriktibhiḥ* 10, 21, and *kuha śruta indrah* 10, 22) on the morning and midday of the fourth day (See *Asv.*

sists of eight verses, and is in the Pañkti metre ; because the sacrifice is a Pañkti (series of ceremonies) ; and cattle are of the Pañkti nature (i. e., they consist of five parts) ; (it is done) for obtaining cattle.

These eight verses make ten Jagatis,\* because [326] this morning libation of the middle three days (from the fourth to the sixth) belongs to the Jagat (i. e., *Jagatī*). This (the connection of the Jagatī with the morning libation) is a characteristic of the fourth day.

These eight verses comprise ten Anuṣṭubhs ; for this is the Anuṣṭubh day, in the application of which metre one of the characteristics of the fourth day consists.

These eight verses contain twenty Gāyatrīs ; for this day is, again, a day of commencement (like the first, where Gāyatri is the metre). In this consists a characteristic of the fourth day.

Although this hymn is neither accompanied by the chants of the Sāma singers, nor by the recitations of the Hotri priests, the sacrifice does not lose its essence by it, but the sacrificial personage is even actually present (in it) ; thence it serves as the Aṅgī Śāstra of the fourth day. They thus develop (stretch) out (of the form of) the sacrifice (contained in this hymn), the sacrifice (i. e., this hymn is the external shape, in the boundary of which the sacrifice—conceived as a being—extends and thrives), and obtain (through the medium of this hymn) the Vāch again. (This is done) for establishing a connection (between the several periods of three days. Those who have such a knowledge move continually within the closely connected and uninterrupted periods of three days (required for having success in the sacrifice).

---

Śr. S. 7, 11). But the term *nyūñkha* being perfectly known to the author of our Brāhmaṇam, and its application even being accurately described by him (in 5, 3), it is surprising only why he should call this peculiar way of lengthening the syllable *ō* (*m*) in the midst of a verse, here *viriphita*. Besides, the Nyūñkha does not take place in the Vimada hymn only, but in the beginning verses, the Prātaranuvāka of which verse is by the Śūdra Rīṣi Kavaṣa Ailūṣa. *Viriphita* must refer to some peculiarities which lie in the two hymns alluded to. On reference to them, every one will observe that in the first of them, each verse concludes with the word *vivakṣase*, and contains the words *vī vo made*, which are an allusion to the name of the Rīṣi Vimada, who is therefore also called *viriphita* ; in the second, there occurs in the two first verses in the same place (in the commencement of the second pada) the term *adya*, and at the end of several padas in the following verses, the word *vajrivah*. These repetitions of the same words, generally commencing with *va*, *vī*, *vo* is, no doubt, the proper meaning of the term "*viriphitam*," as understood by the author of our Brāhmaṇam.

4. This is brought about by repeating thrice the first and last verses. The pañkti consists of 41 syllables. In this way of computation, one obtains 480 syllables, just as many as 10 Jagatis comprise (Śāy.) If they are divided by 32 (the number of syllables for the Anuṣṭubh metre), then we obtain 15 Anuṣṭubhs, and if divided by 24, 20 Gāyatrīs.



The Pra-uga Śastra, which is in the Anuṣṭubh metre, is composed of the following verses: *Vâyô śukro* (4, 47, 1), *vihi hotrâ avitâ* (4, 48, 1) *vâyô śatam harinâm* (4, 48, 5), *indraś cha vâyaḥ eśām* (4, 48 2-1), *â chikitâna sukratâ* (5, 66, 1-3), *â no viśvâbhir âtibhiḥ* (7, 24, 4-6), *tyam u vo aprahanam* (6, 44, 4-6), *apa tyam vrijinam ripum* (6, 51, 13-15) *ambitam nadâtame* (2, 41, 1-3). In them, there occur the words, [327] *â pra*, and *śukra*, which are characteristics of the fourth day.

*Tam tvâ yajñebhir imahe* (8, 57, 10) is the beginning (*pratipad*) of the Marutvatiya Śastra. The word *imahe* "we ask for" in this verse, means that this day's work is to be made long (in consequence of the multitude of rites) as it were (just as one has to wait long before a request is acceded to). This is a characteristic of the fourth day (for it indicates the multitude of its rites).

The verses, *Idam vaso sutam andhaḥ* (8, 2, 1-2), *Indra nedīya* (Val 5. 5-6), *prâitu Brahmaṇaspatir* (1, 4, 34), *Agnir netâ* (3, 20, 4), *tvam Soma kratubhiḥ* (1, 91, 2), *pinvanty apô* (1, 64, 6), *pra va indrâya brihate* (8, 78, 3), which form part of the Marutvatiya Śastra of the first day, are also required for the fourth day, and are a characteristic of it. *Śrudhi havam mâ riṣanya* (2, 11, 1) is the hymn which contains the word *hava* (call), being a characteristic of the fourth day. In the hymn *Marutvâm Indra vriṣabhô* (3, 47), there is, in its last quarter (47, 5), in the word *huvema*, the root *hu* perceptible, which is a characteristic of the fourth day. This hymn is in the Triṣṭubh metre.

By means of the padas of this hymn which stand firm, the Hotar keeps the libation lest it fall from its proper place (it should be kept in its proper place, like a piece in machinery). *Imam nu mâyinam huva* (8, 65, 13) is the setting (*paryâsa*), containing the word *huva*, which is a characteristic of the fourth day. The verses (of this hymn) are in the Gâyatrî metre, for the Gâyatrî verses are the leaders of the midday libation in these latter three days. That metre is the leading one in which the Nivid is placed; therefore one puts in (these) Gâyatrî verses the Nivid.

*Piba Somam Indra mandatu* (7, 22, 1-2) and *śrudhi havam vipipânasyâdrer* (7, 22, 4-5) is the Vairâja Prīṣṭham of the Bṛihat days, to which the fourth day belongs. [328] This (reference to the Bṛihat) is a characteristic of the fourth day.

*Yad vâvâna* (10, 74, 6) is the immovable Dhâyyâ.

*Tvâm iddhi havâmahe* (6, 46, 1) forms the womb (central verse) to which the Hotar brings (all) back, after the Dhâyyâ has been recited; for this is a Bṛihat Sâma day, according to its position (thence the Pragâtha, constituting the text of the Bṛihat Sâman, is its womb).

*Tvam Indra pratârṭiṣu* (8, 88, 5) is the Sâma Pragâtha ; (the third pada) *âsastihâ janitâ* contains the term “*jâta*,” which is a characteristic of the fourth day. *Tyam â ṣu vâjinam* (10, 178) is the immovable Târṣya.

## 5.

(The Remainder of the *Niṣkevalya Śāstra*, and the  
*Śāstras of the Evening Libation*)

*Kuḥa śruta indrah* (10, 22) is the Vimada hymn, with alliterations, assonances, and consonances, by the Rīṣi whose (name) is contained in an alliteration (*vi vo made* in 10, 21 being taken as equal to *vimada*). This is one of the characteristics of the fourth day. The hymn *yudhmasya te vṛiṣabhasya* (3, 46) contains (in the fourth verse) the word *januṣâ* (from the root *jan* “to be born”), which is a characteristic of the fourth day. It is in the Triṣṭubh metre. By means of the padas of this hymn which stand firm, the Hotar keeps the libation, lest it fall from its proper place.

*Tyam uvaḥ satrâsâham* (8, 81) is the setting. Its words, *viśvâsu gṛṣv âyatam*, indicate that this day's work is to be made long, as it were, which is one of the characteristics of the fourth day. They are in the Gâyatrī metre ; the Gâyatrīs are the leaders of the midday libation in these three (latter) days.

[329] The Nivid is to be put in that metre which leads (the day) ; therefore they put the Nivid in the Gâyatrīs. *Viśvô devasya netus* (5, 50, 1), *tat savitur varenyam* (3, 62, 10-18), *â viśvadevam saptatim* (5, 82, 7-9), are the beginning and sequel of the Vaiśvadeva Śāstra on the fourth day, which is a Bṛihat day, being one of the characteristics of the fourth day. *A devô yâtu* (7, 45) is the (Nivid) hymn for Savitar ; it contains the term *â*, which is a characteristic of the fourth day.

*Pra dyâvâ yajñâḥ prithivî* (7, 53) is the (Nivid) hymn for Dyâvâ-prithivî ; it contains the term *pra*, which is a characteristic of the fourth day. *Pra rībhubyô dātam iva vâcham iṣya* (4, 33) is the (Nivid) hymn for the Ribhus ; it contains the words *pra* and *vâcham iṣya*, which are characteristics of the fourth day. *Pra śukrâitu devīmanīṣâ* (7, 34) is the (Nivid) hymn for the Viśvedevâḥ ; it contains the terms *pra* and *śukra*, which are characteristics of the fourth day. It has different metres, such as consist of two padas, and such as consist of four padas. This is a characteristic of the fourth day.

*Vaiśvânarasya sumatâu syâma* (1, 98) is the beginning of the Agni-mâruta Śāstra ; it contains the term *jâta*, which is a characteristic of the fourth day. *Ka im vyaktâ* (7, 56) is the (Nivid) hymn for the Marutas.

(In the third pada of its first verse) there are the words, *nakir hy eṣāṃ janāṅsi veda*, which contain the root *jan* to be born (in *janāṅsi*), which is a characteristic of the fourth day. The verses of this hymn are in unequal metres; some have two padas, some four. This constitutes a characteristic of the fourth day.

*Jâtavedase sunavâma somam* (1, 99, 1) is the immovable Jâtavedâs verse. *Agnim narô didhitibir* (7, 1) is the (Nivid) hymn for Jâtavedâs; it contains the term *janayanta*, which is a characteristic of the fourth [330] day. Its meters are unequal; there are in it Virâjas and Triṣṭubhs. This constitutes a characteristic of the fourth day.

## SECOND CHAPTER.

*(The Characteristics and Śāstras of the Fifth and Sixth Days of the Dvādaśāha)*

### 6

*The Characteristics of the Fifth day. The Śāstras of the Morning and Midday Libations)*

The leading deity of the fifth day is *Gâus* (the cow). Its Stoma is the Triṇava (twenty-seven-fold), the Sâman is the Śâkvaram, the metre is Pañkti. He who knows what deity, what Stoma, what Sâman, what metre (are required on this day), succeeds by it. What is not *â* and not *pra*, what is fixed (standing), that is a characteristic of the fifth day. Besides, the characteristics of the second day re-occur in the fifth, such as *ârdhva*, *prati*, *antar*, *vriṣan*, *vridhan*: the mentioning of the deity in the middle pada, an allusion to the airy region. (In addition to these, there are the following peculiar characteristics), *dugdha*, (*duh* to milk) *udha* (udder), *dhenu* (cow) *priṣni* (cloud, cow) *mad* (drunk), the animal form, an increase (*adhyâsah*),<sup>1</sup> for the animals differ in size, as it were, one being smaller or bigger than the other.<sup>2</sup> This (fifth) day is *jâgatam*, i.e., it refers to the movable (*jagat*) things (or the Jagati metre), for [331] the animals are movable; it is *bârhatam*, for the animals have reference to the Bṛihatî metre; it is *pāñktam*, for the animals refer to the Pañkti metre; it is *vâmam*, i.e., left, because the animals are of this quality.<sup>3</sup> It is *haviṣmat*, i.e., having offerings; because the animals

<sup>1</sup> The *Puṣu* is considered to have five feet, the mouth being reckoned as the fifth. *Sây.*

<sup>2</sup> The original *vikṣudrâ iva hi paśavâ* cannot be literally translated. I therefore must content myself with a paraphrase, based chiefly on *Śâyana*; *kṣudra* means small, low; and *vi* expresses "different, manifold."

<sup>3</sup> *Sây.* interprets the word *vâma* here differently. He takes it to mean "lowly, beautiful." This, he says, refers to the song (what song, he does not specify) which is pleasing to hear on account of its sweet tones and sounds; or to the beautiful view which animals, such

are an offering (serve as an offering); it is *vapuṣmat*, i.e., having a body; for the animals have a body; it is *śākṡvaram pāṅktam*, and has the present tense, just as the second day.

*Imam ā suvo atithim* (6, 15) is the *Ajya Śastra*. It is in the *Jagati* metre with additional other metres (such as *Śakvari*, *Atiś akvari*, &c.); this is the animal characteristic of the fifth day.

The *Pra-uga Śastra* of the fifth day, which is in the *Bṛihati* metre, consists of the following verses: *A no yajñam divispriṣam* (8, 90, 9-10), *ā no vāyo* (8, 46, 25), *rathena prithapājasā* (4, 46, 5-7) *bahavaḥ sūrachakṣasā* (7, 66, 10-12), *imā u vām diviṣṭaya* (7, 74, 1-3), *pibā sutasya rasiṇō* (8, 3, 1-3), *devam devam vo vase devam* (8, 27, 13-15) *bṛihad u gāyīṣe vacha* (7, 96, 1-3).

In the verse *yat pāñchajanyayâviśā* (8, 52, 7), which is the beginning of the *Marutvatiya Śastra*, there is the word *pāñchajanyayâ* (consisting of five families) which (five) is a characteristic of the fifth day (it being *pāṅkta*, i. e., five-fold.)

*Indra it somapa ekaḥ* (8, 2, 4), *Indra nedīya ediki* (Val. 5, 5), *uttiṣṭha Brahmanaspate* (1, 40, 1), *Agnir netā* (3, 20, 1), *tvam soma kratubhiḥ* (1, 91, 2), [332] *pinvanty apō* (1, 64, 6), *bṛihad Indrāya gāyata* (8, 78, 1) is the extension (of the *Marutvatiya Śastra*) of the fifth day, which is identical with that of the second day.

*Avitāsi sunvatō* (8, 36) is a hymn which contains the word *mad* "to be drunk." There are (in the first verse) five padas, which is in the *Paṅkti* metre, all these are characteristics of the fifth day. *Itthā hi soma in mada* (1, 80) is another hymn in the *Paṅkti* metre, consisting of five padas which contains the word *mad* also.

The hymn *Indra piba tubhnyam suto madāya* (6, 40), composed in the *Triṣṭubh* metre, contains the word *mad* also. By means of this pada which remained firm, the *Hotar* keeps the libation in its proper place, preventing it from slipping down. The triplet *marutvām indra mīdhva* (8, 65, 7-9) is the setting containing neither the word *ā* nor *pra* which is a characteristic of the fifth day. These verses are in the *Gyātrī* metre, which lead the midday libation of the three days' sacrifice. The *Nivid* is placed in that metre which is the leading one. Therefore the *Hotar* places the *Nivid* in (these) *Gyātris*.

---

as cows, horses, &c., represent to the eye of the spectator. But these explanations have no sense at all, and appear to be mere guesses. I think it better to take the word in the meaning "left" according to which the animals are the "left part" in creation, opposed to men and gods who represent the right.

## 7.

(On the Śākvara Sāman and the Mahānāmñis.  
The Niṣkevalya Śastra.)

On the fifth day, which is a Rathantara day, the Sāma singers chant the Mahānāmñi verses\* according to the Śākvara tune ; this is a characteristic of the fifth day. Indra (having had once a desire of becoming great), made himself great by means of these verses ; therefore they are called Mahānāmñi. These worlds (also) are Mahānāmñis, for they are great.

[333] Prajāpati had, when he created the universe, the power (of making all) this and everything. The power possessed by Prajāpati to make all this and everything when creating these worlds, became the Śakvari verses. Thence they are called Śakvaris (from śaknoti, he has the power). He (Prajāpati) made them (these Mahānāmñis) to extend beyond the frontiers. All that he created as extending beyond the frontiers, turned cords (*sima*). Thence comes the word *sīman*, from *sima* a cord.

The verses *Svādor ithā viśvato* (1, 84, 10), *upa no haribhiḥ sutam* (8, 82, 31), *indram viśvā avīrvridhann* (1, 111, 1), are the Anurūpa (of the Niṣkevalya Śastra) ; they contain the words *vriṣan*, *prīṣni*, *mad*, *vridhan*, which are characteristics of the fifth day. *Yad vāvāna* (10, 74, 6) is the immovable Dhāyyā. By repeating *Abhi tvā śūtra nonumo* after the Dhāyyā, the Hotar returns to the womb of the Rathantaram (as the receptacle of all ceremonies), this (fifth) day being a Rathantara day by its position. *Mô ṣu tvā vāghataś chana* (7, 32, 1-2) is the Sāma Prāgatha with an additional foot, having the animal form (five parts), which is a characteristic of the fifth day. *Tyam ā ṣu vājinam* is the immovable Tārṣya.

## 8.

(The Remainder of the Niṣkevalya Śastra. The  
Śastras of the Evening Libation.)

The hymn, *predam brahma* (8, 37) is in the Paṅkti metre, comprising five padas. The hymn, *Indro madāya vāvridha* (1, 81) is in the Paṅkti metre, consisting of five padas, and containing the term "mad." By means of the hymn *Satrā madāsas tava* (6, 36, 1) which contains the term "mad" also, and is in the Triṣṭubh metre, the Hotar keeps through its padas which remain firm, the libation in its proper place, [334] thus preventing it from falling down. The triplet, *tam Indram vājay-āmāsi* (8, 82, 7-9) is the setting (*paryāsa*). (Its third pada) *sa vriṣā vriṣ-abho bhuvāt*, contains the animal from (there is the word *vriṣan*, i. e.,

\* These are *vidā maghavan*. See 4, 4.

male, in it). It is in the Gāyartī metre, for the Gāyatrīs are the leading metres at the midday libation in this Tryaha (the three days from the fourth to the sixth). The Nivid is placed in that metre which is the leading. Therefore the Hotar places the Nivid in (these) Gāyatrīs.

The verses, *tat saritur vrinīmahe* (5, 82, 1-3) *adyā no deva savitar* (5, 82, 13-15), are the beginning and sequel of the Vaiśvadeva Śastra on the Rathantara day, of which the fifth is one. *Ud u sya deraḥ savitā damānā* (6, 71, 4-6) is the (Nivid) hymn for Savitar. In it there is the word *vāmam* (in the last pada), i.e., left, which is a characteristic of the animal form. In the Dyāvāprithivī hymn, *mahī dyāvāprithivī* (4, 56) the words *ruvad dhokṣā* (in the last pada) contain the animal form (because the word *dhokṣā*, from the root *duh*, to milk, is in it).

*Ribhur vibhvā vāja* (4, 34) is the Ribhu hymn. Because the animals are *vājāḥ*, i. e., property, booty, which (*vājāḥ*) is an animal form. *Stuṣe janam suvratam navyasibhir* (6, 49, 1) is a hymn (in the Triṣṭubh metre) with an additional pada (in the last verse, which is in the Śakvari, instead of in the Triṣṭubh metre). This is the animal form (animals being supposed to have five feet instead of four, the mouth being counted as the fifth) which is a characteristic of the fifth day. *Haviṣ pāntam ajaram* (10, 88, 1) is the beginning of the Agnimāruta Śastra. It contains the word *haviṣ*, i. e., offering, which is a characteristic of the fifth day. *Vapurna tachchikituṣē* (6, 66) is the (Nivid) hymn for the Marutas, which contains the word *vapus*, i. e., from. *Jātavedase sunavāma* is the invariable Dhāyā. *Agnir hotā* [335] *grihapatiḥ* (6, 15, 13) is the (Nivid) hymn for Jātavedas, with an additional pada (at the end); this is the animal form, which is a characteristic of the fifth day.

### 9.

#### (On the Rituyājas of the Sixth Day.)

The sixth day is *deva kṣetra*, i. e., the field of the gods. Those who enter on the sixth day, enter the field of the gods who do not live together, but each in his own house. They say, No Ritu (season) lives in the house of another Ritu. Therefore the priests perform the Rituyājas (offerings to the Ritus), each for himself, without appointing another one to do it for them.\* Thus the priests prepare all the Ritus

\* This refers to the circumstance that at the common Soma sacrifices, such as the Agniṣṭoma, the Rituyāja mantra for the Adhvaryu and the sacrificer are repeated by the Hotar, and not by the Adhvaryu and the sacrificer themselves. But at a Sattrā, to which class of sacrifices the Dvādaśāha belongs, this is not allowed; each must act for himself, each member of the body of priests who are performing a Sattrā, being alternately priest and sacrificer. The Rituyāja mantras for the Adhvaryu and sacrificer are the eleventh and twelfth in order. See the note on page 135-36.

without foregoing such or such one (and make them fit for their own use), that the whole assemblage enjoys happiness, each in his own place. They say, No order for making the Ritu offering is required, nor is the formula "*vâuṣaṭ*" to be repeated. Because the order given (by the Maitrâ-varuṇa), for the Ritu offerings are the Vâch, who is wearied on the sixth day. When they would give the order (for repeating the Yâjyâs) for the Ritu offerings, and call "*vâuṣaṭ*," then they would have Vâch wearied, tired, sinking under her load<sup>6</sup> (the number of mantras recited on the previous days) and faltering in her [336] voice.<sup>7</sup> But if the priests do not repeat the order for the Ritu offerings, nor repeat *vâuṣaṭ* after the Yâjyâs, then they fall from the line of the sacrifice which should not be broken and (consequently they fall) from the sacrifice, from the prâṇa (breath), Prajâpati and cattle, and will (henceforth) walk crooked. Therefore the order (praiṣa) to repeat the mantras, as well as the Yâjyâ verse (at the end of which the Vaṣaṭkâra occurs) should be preceded by a Rik verse.<sup>8</sup> Thus they will not have the Vâch wearied, tried, sinking beneath her load, faltering in her voice, nor will they fall from the line of sacrifice which should not be broken, nor from the sacrifice, nor from the prâṇa, nor from Prajâpati, nor from the cattle, nor walk crooked.

#### 10.

(On the Nature and Meaning of the Paruchhepa Verses.)

They place at the two first libations a Paruchhepa verse (one seen by the Rîṣi Paruchhepa) before each of the Yâjyâs, which are repeated by the seven Hotars in their order (the so-called *prasthitas*).<sup>9</sup> The name of their metre is *Rohita*. By means of it Indra ascended the seven heavens. Thus he who has this knowledge ascends the seven heavens. They say, Verses which consist of five padas (steps) are a characteristic of the fifth day, and such ones as consist of six padas are fit for the sixth day, why then are metres of seven padas (as the Rohita is) [337] recited on the sixth day? (The reason is) By six steps the sixth day is reached; but by cutting off, as it were, the seventh day (by taking it single) they settle with the seventh step down (in heaven after having reached it by six). Thus they regain the Vâch for the connection (of the whole). Those who are possessed of such a knowledge have the three days connected and unbroken.

<sup>6</sup> *Rikṇavahi*; *rikna*=*bhagna*, broken, stands, as Sây. observes, instead of *vrikna*.

<sup>7</sup> *Vuharâvîñi*.

<sup>8</sup> The verse to be prefixed to the Praiṣa and Yâjyâ is *tubhyam hinvânâ* (2, 36, 1).

<sup>9</sup> Previous to the recital of every Yâjyâ, one of the Paruchhepa verses is to be repeated. These are, *vriṣann indra vriṣa pânâsa indavañ* (1, 139, 6-11) and *pibâ somam indra suvânâ* (1, 139, 2-10).

## 11.

(On the Origin of the Paruchhepa Verses.)

The Devās and Asuras waged war in these worlds. The Devas turned the Asuras by means of the sixth day's ceremonies out of these worlds. The Asuras seized all things which they could grasp, took them and threw them into the sea. The Devas following them behind<sup>10</sup> seized by means of this metre (of the Paruchhepa verses which have seven padas) all they (the Asuras) had grasped. Just this pada, viz., the additional pada (the seventh in the Paruchhepa verses) became a hook for the purpose of gathering the treasures (thrown into the sea by the Asuras). Therefore he who has this knowledge, deprives his enemy of his fortune and turns him out of all these worlds.

## 12.

(The Characteristics of the Sixth Day. The Śastras of the Morning and Midday Libations.)

Heaven (*Dyāus*) is the leading deity of the sixth day. The Stoma is the thirty-three-fold, the Sāman is Raivatam, Atichhandās the metre. What has the same end (refrain) is a characteristic of the sixth day. [338] The sixth day has the same characteristics as the third, viz. the words, *āśca*, *anta*, end; repetition, consonance, cohabitation, *pariyasta* (set), three, what has the form of *anta*; the mentioning of the deity in the last pada, an allusion to that world (heaven). The peculiar characteristics of the sixth day are, the *Paruchhepa* hymns comprising seven padas, the *Naraśamsam*, the *Nābhānediṣṭham*, the *Raivatam* the *Atichhandāḥ*, and the past tense.

*Ayam jāyata manuṣo dharīmaṇi* (1, 128) is the *Ajya Śastra*, which is a *Paruchhepa* hymn, an *Atichhandāḥ* (a metre exceeding the normal measure) comprising seven padas, which is a characteristic of the sixth day.

The *Pra-uga Śastra* consists of the following verses, which all are *Paruchhepa*, and *Atichhandāḥ*, comprising seven padas: *stīrṇam barhir up no yāhi vītaye* (1, 135, 1-3), *ā vām ratho niyutvān* (1, 135, 4-6); *suṣumā yatam adribhir* (1, 137, 1-3); *yuvām stomebhir devayanto* (1, 139, 4-6); *avar maha* (1, 133, 6-7); *astu śrduṣaḥ* (1, 139, 1); *o ṣu no agne śriṇuhi tvām īlītō* (1, 139, 7); *ye devāso divy ekōdāśa* (1, 139, 11); *iyam adadād rabhasam* (6, 61, 1-3).

*Sa pūrvyō mahānām* (8, 52, 1-3) is the beginning of the *Marutvatīya Śastra*, because *mahan* is a word in *anta* (acc. *mahāntam*), and *anta*, i. e.,

<sup>10</sup> *Anuhāya* = *priṣṭhato gatvā* S.



end, is a characteristic of the sixth day, being the *end* (the last of the second series of three days). The verses, *Traya indrasya Soma* (8, 2, 7-9); *Indra nedīya edihi* (Vâl. 5, 5-6); *pra nānam Brahmanaspatir* (1, 40, 5-6); *Agnir netâ* (3, 20, 4); *tvam Soma kratubhih* (1, 91, 2), *pinvanty apô* (1, 64, 6); and *nakiḥ suddâsô ratham* are the extension (*âtânaḥ* of the Marutvatīya Śastra) and identical with those of the third day.

*Yam tvam ratham indra medhasâtaye* (1, 129) is a Paruchhepa hymn in the Atichhandâḥ metre, consisting [339] of seven padas. *Sa yo vṛiṣṭ vṛiṣṇyebhih* (1, 100) is the hymn whose verses have the same refrain<sup>11</sup> (*samānodarka*). *Indra Marutvâ iha pâhi* (3, 51, 7) is the hymn,<sup>12</sup> which contains an *anta*, (a participle of present tense form in *ant*, or its equivalent) in the words (verse 9), *tebhiḥ sâkam pibatu vṛitrakhâdaḥ*; because *vṛitrakhâdô* (*âdô* being taken as equivalent to *anta*) is the *anta*, and the sixth day is the end (*anta*). By means of this hymn, which is in the Triṣṭubh metre, the Hotar keeps through its padas which remain firm, the libation in its proper place, preventing it from falling. *Ayam ha yena* (10, 65, 4-6) is the triplet which serves as a setting, for in its words, *sva marutvatâ jitam*, there is an *anta*, *jita* is an *anta*.<sup>13</sup> These verses are in the Gâyâtrī metre; the Gâyâtrīs are the leading metres at the midday libation during these three days. The Nivid is put in the leading metre; thence the Hotar puts the Nivid in the Gâyâtrī metre.

The verses, *revatîr na sadhamâde* (1, 30, 13-15), and *revân id* (8, 2, 13-15), form the Raivata Priṣṭha (the Raivaita Sâma), which is used on a Bṛihat day, to which the sixth day belongs. The verse *yad vâvâna* is the invariable Dhâyyâ. By "*tvâm iddhi havâmahê*" (6, 46, 1-2) which follows the Dhâyyâ, the Hotar returns all to the womb of the Bṛihat Sâma; for this is a Bṛihat day according to its position. *Indram id devatâtaya* (8, 3, 5-6) is the Sâma Pragâtha which has the characteristic of *ninṛita* (has a consonance).<sup>14</sup> *Tyam ūṣu vâjinam* is the invariable Târksya.

### 13

[340] (*The Remainder of the Niṣkevalya Śastra and the Śastras of the Evening Libation.*)

*Endra yâhy upa naḥ* (1, 130) is the Paruchhepa hymn, in the Atichhandâḥ metre, comprising seven padas. *Pra gha nvasya* (2, 15) is the hymn whose several verses have the same refrain.<sup>15</sup> In the hymn *abhuṛ eko*

<sup>11</sup> This is *Marutvân no bhavatu indra ūti*.

<sup>12</sup> In the present state of the Samhitâ it is incorporated with another one.

<sup>13</sup> This appears to be an error, the form *ant* is to be sought in *marutvatâ*.

<sup>14</sup> Because in every pada there is the word *Indra*, the repetition of which resembles the sounding of a bell metal instrument.—*Sâḥ*.

<sup>15</sup> This is *mada indra chakâra*.

*rayipate* (6, 31), the words occur (verse 5) *ratham ātiṣṭha tuvinrimna bhīmam*; in it the word *sthā* "to stand," marks an end (standing being the end of going) which is a characteristic of the sixth day. By means of this hymn, which is in the *Triṣṭubh* metre, the Hotar keeps, through its *padas* which remain firm, the libation in its proper place, preventing it from falling. *Upa no haribhiḥ stutam* (8, 82, 31-33) is the setting which has the same refrain. It is in the *Gāyatrī* metre, which is the leading one of the midday libation of the three (latter) days. Therefore the *Nivid* is to be placed in it. *Abhi taym devam Savitāram* (*Vaj. Samh.* 4, 25) is the beginning of the *Vaiśvadeva Śāstra*, in the *Atichhanda* metre. *Tat Savitur vareṇyam* (3, 62, 10-11) and *doṣo agāt* from the sequel, because *gata*, i.e., gone, signifies an end, which is a characteristic of the sixth day.

*Ud u śya devaḥ savitā savāya* (2, 38) is the (*Nivid*) hymn for *Savitar*; the words therein, *śāsvattamam tadapa vahnir asthāt*, contain an *anta*, for *sthita*, i.e., standing is an *anta*.

*Katarā pārvā* (1, 185, 1) is the (*Nivid*) hymn for *Dyāvāprithivī*, whose verses have the same refrain.<sup>16</sup>

*Kim u śreṣṭhaḥ kim yaviṣṭhō* (1, 161) and *upa no vājā adhvaram ṛibhukṣa* (4, 37) form the *Arbhavam* [341] *Narāsaṃsam* hymns, in which the term "three" occurs, being a characteristic of the third day.

The two hymns *Idam itthā rāudram* (10, 61), and *ye yajñena dakṣiṇayā samaktā* (10, 62) form the *Vaiśvadeva* (*Nābhānediṣṭha*) hymns.

#### 14.

(*The Story of Nābhānediṣṭha, the son of Manu.*)

He recites the *Nābhānediṣṭham*. *Nābhānediṣṭha* was a son of *Manu*, who was given to the sacred study (after his investiture in the house of his *Guru*);<sup>17</sup> his brothers deprived him of his share in the paternal property. He went (to them) and said, "What portion is left to me?" They answered, "Go to the adjudicator<sup>18</sup> and arbitrator." By "adjudicator and arbitrator" they meant their father. He went to his father and said, "They have divided the property including my share among themselves." The father answered, "My dear son, do not mind that. There are the *Angirasaḥ* just engaged in holding their sacrificial session (*Sattra*) for going to heaven. As often as they commence the ceremonies of the sixth day, they are puzzled (frustrated in their design). Let them recite on the sixth day those two hymns (abovementioned, *Rigveda* 10, 61-62), then they will give thee the sum of a thousand which is contributed by all the

<sup>16</sup> This is *dyāvā rakṣatam prithivī no abhūt*.

<sup>17</sup> This is the meaning of the term *brahmacharyam vasantam*.

<sup>18</sup> *Niṣṭāva*.

sacrificers who participate in the sacrificial session, <sup>19</sup> when they go to heaven." He said, "Well, let it be so." He then went to them, saying, "Receive me, the son of Manu, among you, O ye wise!" They said, "What dost thou wish, that thou speakest thus?" He answered, [342] "I will show you how to perform the sixth day, then give me the reward for the sacrificial session of a thousand (cows or other valuables), when you go up to heaven." They said, "Well, let it be so." He made them recite on the sixth day those two hymns; then they became aware of the Yajña (the sacrifice regarded as a person, leading to heaven), and of the heaven-world. Therefore the Hotar recites those two hymns on the sixth day, in order that the sacrificer might become aware of the sacrifice, and to have subsequently pointed out the heaven-world. When they were going up, they said, "This thousand, O Brâhmaṇa, belongs to thee." When he was putting all together (the thousand pieces), a man clothed in a blackish (dirty) dress <sup>20</sup> alighted and approaching him, said, "This is mine; I have left it here." He answered, "The Angirasaḥ have given it to me." The man said "Then it belongs to either of us, thy father may decide." He went to his father. He asked him, "Have they not, my dear son, given you (the reward)?" He said, "They have given me; but a man clothed in a blackish dress alighted, and approaching me said, 'This is mine, I have left it here.' So saying, he took it." The father said, "It is his, my dear son! but he will give it to thee." He went back to him, and said, "Sir, this belongs only to you; so says my father." He said, "I give it to thee, because you have spoken the truth, (i.e., acknowledged that it is my property)." Therefore a man who is learned must speak only the truth. This is the mantra of "the thousand gifts," the Nâbhânediṣṭha hymn. Upon that man who has this knowledge, a thousand gifts shower, and he gets a glimpse of heaven by means of the sixth day.

## 15.

[343] *On the auxiliary Śāstras at the Evening Libation, Nâbhânediṣṭha, Vâlakhilyâ, the Sukîrti Hymn, Vṛiṣākapi, and Evayāmarut. The Agni-mâruta Śāstra of the Sixth Day. (See 6, 27-30.)*

The Hotar ought to repeat those Śāstras which are called the accompaniments (of the others on the sixth day), viz., the Nâbhânediṣṭham, Vâlakhilyâ, Vṛiṣākapi and Evayāmaruta only as auxiliaries (to the Vaiśvadeva-Śāstra). If the Hotar foregoes only one of them,

<sup>19</sup> This is the translation of *sattra-pariveṣanam*.

<sup>20</sup> Sâya. says that according to another Śâkhâ, this man is Rudra, the master of cattle.

(these additional Śāstras), the sacrificer will lose something. If he foregoes the Nābhānediṣṭham, then the sacrificer will lose his semen; if he foregoes the Vālakhilyās, then the sacrificer will lose his breath; if he foregoes the Vṛiṣākapi, the sacrificer will lose his soul; and if he foregoes the Evayāmarutam, then he will turn the sacrificer out of his divine and human position. By means of the Nābhānediṣṭham, he (the priest) poured the semen into the sacrificer; by means of the Vālakhilyā verses, he transformed them (to make an embryo). By means of the hymn <sup>21</sup> by Sukīrti, the son of Kākṣīvat, he made the womb set forth the child, because therein (in the first verse is said), "Let us rejoice in thy shelter, Indra! (just as people find pleasure in a large commodious room)." Thence the child (*garbha*), though being larger, does not damage the womb which is (much) smaller. If the womb is prepared by (this) sacred hymn (Brahma, the Sukīrti hymn), then the Hotar imparts to the sacrificer the faculty of walking by means of the Evayāmaruta hymn (5, 87). If he has done all required for making the sacrificer walk, then he walks (he has obtained the faculty of walking).

*Ahaścha kṛiṣṇam ahar arjunam* (6, 9, 1-33) is the beginning of the Agnimāruta Śāstra, because *ahas* [344] is a repetition, and a consonance, which is a characteristic of the sixth day. *Madhvo vo nāma mārutam yajatrā* (7, 57) is the Maruta hymn. Here is the plural (because the Marutas are many) to be urged; because the plural is an *anta*, and this is a characteristic of the sixth day.

*Jâtavedase sunavâma* (1, 99, 1), is the invariable Jâtavedâs verse. *Sa pratnathâ sahasâ* (1, 96, 1) is the (Nivid) hymn for Jâtavedâs, whose verses have the same refrain, which is a characteristic of the sixth day.

The priest, apprehending the *anta*, *i. e.*, ends of the sacrifice, might fall down, keeps them up by repeating twice the word *dhârayan*,<sup>22</sup> *i. e.*, they may hold, just as one ties and unties successively the ends of a cord,<sup>23</sup> or just as one (a tanner) is driving in the end of a (wetted) skin a peg, in order to keep it (expanded). It is done to keep the sacrifice uninterrupted. Those who have such a knowledge have the three days continuous and unbroken (undisturbed).

<sup>21</sup> *Apa prâcha Indra* (10, 131).

<sup>22</sup> It is in the last pada of all verses of this hymn.

<sup>23</sup> In order to make of them a large ring.

## THIRD CHAPTER.

(The Characteristics and Śāstras of the Seventh and Eighth Days.)

## 16.

(The Characteristics of the Seventh Day. The Śāstras of the Morning and Midday Libation.)

The terms *ā* and *pra* are the characteristics of the seventh day. The seventh day is just like the first, *yukta*, *ratha*, *āśu*, *piba*, the deity mentioned in the first pada, the allusion to this world (earth,) *jāta*, *anirukta*, *kariṣyat* (future), these are the characteristics of the seventh day.

[345] *Samudrād ūrmim* (10, 123, 2) is the Ajya hymn. Here is something hidden (*aniruktam*, i. e., not explicitly stated) which is a characteristic of the seventh day. In the sea (Samudra) is *Vāch*; because neither the sea becomes (ever) extinct, nor *Vāch*. Thence this (hymn) is the Ajya (Śāstra) of the seventh day. From the *Yajña* (sacrifice) only, the Hotar thus extends the sacrifice,<sup>1</sup> and thus they recover *Vāch* again (to continue the sacrifice). The Stomas are at an end, the meters are at an end on the sixth day. Just as (at the *Darsapūrnāmāsa Iṣṭi*) they cause to drip upon the pieces of sacrificial food drops of melted butter (*djya*), in order to make them hot again<sup>2</sup> for recovering its essence already gone; in the same way, they recover the Stomas and meters for regaining (the essence of) the sacrifice again by this Ajya Śāstra of the seventh day. It is in the *Triṣṭubh* metre; because this is the metre at the morning libation during the (last) three days.

The *Pra-uga* Śāstra consists of the following mantras: *ā vāyo bhūṣa* (7, 92, 1), *prayābbhir yāsi* (7, 92, 3) *ā no niyudbhiḥ śatinīr* (7, 92, 5), *pra sotā jiro adhvareṣv asthāt* (7, 92, 2), *ye vāyava indra māda nāsa* (7, 92, 4), *yā vām śatam* (7, 91, 6),<sup>3</sup> *pra yad vam Mitrāvaruṇā* (6, 67, 9-11), *ā gomatā nāsatyā* (7, 72, 1-3), *ā no deva śavasā* (7, 30, 1-3) *pra vo yajñeṣu* (7, 43, 1-3), *pra kṣodasā dhāyasā* (7, 95, 1-3). In these verses there are the characteristics of the [346] seventh day, *ā* and *pra*, contained. They are in the *Triṣṭubh* metre, because this is the metre at the morning libation during the (last) three days.

<sup>1</sup> With the sixth day, the sacrifice is finished. *Vāch* is done up; but the priest commences now developing the *Yajña* again. This can be done only by starting from the *Yajña* itself (without any other help), and recovering the *Vāch* in the form of this allusion.

<sup>2</sup> All this is implied in the expression *pratyabhihārayan*

<sup>3</sup> These six verses form two triplets; they all are so called *ekapātinis*, and constitute the two triplets for *Vāyu* and *Indra* respectively, which are always required at the *Pra-uga* Śāstra.

*A tvā ratham yathotaya*, (8, 57, 1-2) *idam vaso sutam andaḥ* (8, 2, 1-2), *Indra nedīya ed ihi* (Vāk. 5, 5-6), *praitu Brahmanaspatīr* (1, 40, 3-4), *Agnīr netā* (3, 20, 4), *tvam soma kratubhīḥ* (1, 91, 2), *pinvanti apaḥ* (1, 64, 6), *pra va indrāya bṛihate* (8, 78, 3), are the extension (of the Marut-vatīya Śāstra) of the seventh day, identical with that of the first.

In the hymn, *Kayā śubhā savayaśaḥ* (1, 165) (9th verse), in the words *na jāyamāno naśate, na jāta* the term *jāta* occurs, which is one of the characteristics of the seventh day. This is the *Kayāśubhīya* hymn which effects unanimity (among people) and prolongs life. By means of it Indra, Agastya, and the Maruts became (unanimous). By reciting the *Kayāśubhīyam* hymn, the Hotar produces unanimity. But it bears upon the prolongation of life also. Who desires that, may have repeated the *Kayāśubhīyam*. It is in the Triṣṭubh metre. By means of its pada which remains firm, the Hotar keeps the libation in its proper place, preventing it from falling down.

The hymn, *tyam su meṣam mahayā* (1, 52) contains (in the second pada of the first verse) the words *atyam na vājam havanasyadamratham*, the term *ratha*, i.e., carriage, being a characteristic of the seventh day. It is in the Jagatī metre, for the Jagatīs are the leading metres at the midday libation of these three last days. The Nivid is placed in that metre which is the leading; thence one places (here) the Nivid in the Jagatīs.

The hymns representing cohabitation are now repeated; they are in the Triṣṭubh and Jagatī metres. Because cattle is represented by cohabitation and [347] the Chandomāś \* are cattle and calculated for obtaining cattle. *Tvām iddhi havāmahe*, and *tvam hy ehi* [348] *cherave* (8, 50, 1-2) form the Bṛihat Pṛiṣṭha on the seventh day. The same Pṛiṣṭhas take place as on the sixth day. The Vairūpam (Sāma) belongs

---

\*The Chandomāś are three peculiar Stomas, which are required on the three last days of Navarātra, or the seventh, eighth, and ninth days of the Dvādasāha and the name of these three days themselves. They are minutely described in the Tāṇḍya Brāhmaṇam 3, 8-13. These Stomas are, the twenty-four-fold (*chaturvīmśā*), the forty-four-fold (*chatuṣ-chatvāriṃśā*), and the forty-eight-fold (*aṣṭāchatvāriṃśā*). The verses required for chanting the Chandomāś on the three last days of Navarātra are (according to the Udgātri prayoga of the Dvādasāha) all put together in the second part of the Sāmavedārchikam, commencing with the second Ardhra of the fourth Prapāṭhaka (*pra kāvyam uśaneva*), and ending with the fifth Prapāṭhaka (with the verse *Yvākṣvā hi keśinā hari*). The order is, on the seventh day, all Sāma verses are put in the twenty-four-fold Stoma, on the eighth all are chanted according to the forty-four-fold Stoma in three varieties, on the ninth all are put in the forty-eight-fold Stoma, of which there are two varieties enumerated. There is here no change of the Stomas according to the libations, as it is in the Agnistoma and the cognate sacrifices. That Stoma, in which the first Stotram

to the Rathantaram ; the Vairâjam to the Bṛihat ; the Sâkvaram to the Rathantaram, and the Raivatam to the Bṛihat. Therefore (because the Raivatam representing the Bṛihat was chanted on the sixth day) the Bṛihat Prīṣṭha takes place (on the seventh day) ; for they fasten through that Bṛihat (of the sixth day), the Bṛihat (of the seventh day) to prevent the cutting off of the Stomas ; for, if the Rathantaram (which is opposed to the Bṛihat) is used, then the union (of the sixth and seventh days) is destroyed. Therefore only the Bṛihat is to be used (on the seventh day.)

*Yad vâdâna* is the immovable Dhâyyâ. By the subsequent recital of the Rathantaram *abhi tvâ sūtra nonumaḥ*, the Hotar brings all back to the womb ; for this is a Rathantara day according to its position. *Pibâ suta-sya rasinaḥ* (8, 3, 1-2) is the Sâma Pragâtha, which has *piba*, one of the characteristics of the seventh day. *Tyam ūṣu vâjinam* is the invariable Târksya.

## 17

(*The Remainder of the Niṣkevalya Śastra. The Śastras of the Evening Libation.*)

*Indrasya nu vîryâni* (1, 32) is a hymn which has the characteristic word *pra* of the seventh day. It is [349] in the Triṣṭubh metre. By

(the Bahiṣ-pavamâna) is chanted, remains in force for the whole day. The Bahiṣ-pavamânas of all three days, generally contain as many verses as the Stoma has members. So, for instance, the Bahiṣ-pavamâna of the seventh day consists of 24 verses (Sâmaveda ii. 465-88), for the twenty-four-fold Stoma is reigning during this day ; the Bahiṣ-pavamâna of the eighth day consists of forty-four verses (Sâmaveda ii. 524-67), for the Stoma reigning during this day is the forty-four-fold, &c. The four Sâmans which follow the Bahiṣ-pavamâna Stotras at the midday libation, are called *âjyâni*, the four which follow the Pavamâna Stotras at the midday libation, go by the name of *Prīṣṭhâni*, and the four which follow the Arbhava-pavamâna Stotra at the evening libation are called *ukthâni*. Now the *âjyâni*, *prīṣṭhâni* and *ukthâni* generally consist either of three or even only two verses. If they consist of only two verses, they are to be made three, just as is the case with the Rathantara, Nândhasa, and Kâleya Prīṣṭha at the Agniṣṭoma. The three verses then are, in three turns, so often to be repeated, as to yield twenty-four, forty-four, or forty-eight. Each turn of the twenty-four-fold Stoma contains, for instance, eight verses, in three divisions, in the following order :—

I. 8—a, 3 ; b, 4 ; c, 1 : II. 8—a, 1 ; b, 3 ; c, 4 : III. 8—a, 4 ; b, 1 ; c, 3.

In the forty-four-fold Stoma, the repetitions are arranged in the following way :—

I. 15—a, 3 ; b, 11 ; c, 1 : II. 14—a, 1 ; b, 3 ; c, 10 : III. 15—a, 11 ; b, 1 ; c, 3.

The forty-eight-fold Stoma is as follows :—

I. 16—a, 3 ; b, 12 ; c, 1 : II. 16—a, 1 ; b, 3 ; c, 12 : III. 16—a, 12 ; b, 1 ; c, 3.

The forty-eight-fold Stoma is the last of the Stomas ; thence it is called *anta*. The Chandomaḥ are said to have the animal form. According to the Tâpdyâ Brâhm. (8, 8), the animals have eight hoofs, thence are eight verses required in each turn when the twenty-four-fold Stoma is made ; or, they are said (3, 12) to consist of sixteen pieces ; thence are sixteen verses in each turn required when the forty-eight-fold Stoma is made.

means of the pādas which remain firm, the Hotar keeps the libation in its proper place, preventing it from falling down.

*Abhi tyam meṣam puruhūtam* (1, 51, 1) is a hymn in which *pra* is replaced by *abhi*, forming a characteristic of the seventh day. It is in the Jagatī metre, because the Jagatīs are the leading metres at the midday libation. Therefore the Nivid is to be placed in it.

These hymns representing cohabitation are now repeated, which are in the Triṣṭubh and Jagatī metres; because cohabitation represents cattle, and the Chandomās represent cattle; (this is done) in order to obtain cattle.

*Tat savitar vinīmahe* (5, 82, 1-3), *adya no deva Savitar* (5, 82, 3-5) are the beginning and sequel of the Vaiśvadeva Śastra in the Rathantara days, on the seventh day. *Abhi tvā deva Savitar* (1, 24, 3) is the (Nivid) hymn for Savitar, which contains instead of *pra* the word *abhi*, which is identical with *pra*, a characteristic of the seventh day.

*Pretām yajñasya* (2, 41, 19) is the (Nivid) hymn for Dyāvāprithivī, which contains the word *pra*. *Ayam devāya janmana* (1, 20) is the (Nivid) hymn for the Ribhus, which contains the word *jan*, to be born.

He repeats now the verses, consisting of two pādas, commencing *āyāhi ranaśā saha*, (10, 172, 1); for man has two feet, and animals have four; animals are represented by the Chandomās. (This is done) for obtaining cattle. If he repeats these verses which consist of two feet, then he places the sacrificer, who has two legs, among the four-footed cattle.\*

*Abhir agne duvo* (1, 14) is the (Nivid) hymn for the Viśvedevāḥ, which has the characteristic *ā* of the seventh day. It is in the Gāyatrī metre; for [350] the third libation is headed by the Gāyatrī during these three days.

*Viśvānaro ajājanat* is the beginning of the Agnimâruta Śastra, which contains the word *jan*, to be born. *Pra yad vas triṣṭubham* (8, 7) is the (Nivid) hymn for the Marutas, which has the word *pra*. *Jâtavedase sunavâma* (1, 99, 1) is the invariable Jâtavedâs verse. *Dîtam vo viśvavedasam* (4, 8) is the (Nivid) hymn for Jâtavedâs, where the name (Jâtavedâs) is not explicitly mentioned (only hinted at). All these are in the Gāyatrī metre; for the third libation on these three days is headed by the Gāyatrī.

---

\* He makes him obtain them.



## 18.

(The Characteristics of the Eighth day. The Śastras of the Morning and Midday Libations.)

Neither the words *ā* nor *pra*, but what is "standing" is the characteristic of the eighth day ; because the eighth is identical with the second. The characteristics are, *ūrdhva*, *prati*, *antar*, *vṛṣan*, *vṛidhan*, the mentioning of the deity in the middle pāda, an allusion to the airy region, twice the name Agni (in the same pāda), the words *mahad*, *vihūta punar*, the present tense.

*Agnim vo devam agnibhiḥ* (7, 3) is the Aja of the eighth day ; because it contains twice the word *agni*. It is in the Triṣṭubh metre ; for the Triṣṭubh is the leading metre at the morning libation during these three days. The Pra-uga Śastra is composed of the following verses : *Kurīd aṅga namasā* (7, 91, 1,) *pīvo annān* (7, 91, 3,) *uchhan uṣasaḥ* (7, 90, 4,) *uśantā dātā* (7, 91, 2,) *yāvat taras* (7, 91, 4-5,) *prati vām sūra udite* (7, 65, 1-3,) *dhenuḥ pratnasya* (3, 58, 1-3), *Brahmāna indropa* (7, 28, 1-3,) *ūrdhvo agniḥ sumatim* (7, 39, 1-3) *uta syā naḥ sarasvatī* (7, 95, 4-6). In these verses are the characteristics [351] *prati*, *antar*, *vihūta*, *urdhvai* contained ; they are in the Triṣṭubh metre, which is the leading metre at the morning libation on these three days.

The extension (of the Marutvatiya Śastra) consists of the following verses : *Viśvānarasya vaspatim* (8, 57, 4), *Indra it Somapā ekah* (8, 2, 4), *Indra nedīya ed ihi* (Vâl. 5, 5-6), *uttīṣṭha Brahmanaspate* (1, 40, 1-2), *agnir netā tvam Soma kratubhiḥ*, *pinvanty apo*, *brihad indrāya gāyata*. This Śastra is identical with that of the second day.

Now follow the *Mahadvat* hymns, i. e., such ones as contain the word *mahat*, great. (These are) *samsā mahām* (3, 49), *mahāścit tvam* (1, 169), *pibā somam abhi yam* (6, 17), in the words *ūrvam gavyam mahi*, *mahām indro nṛivat* (6, 19). This hymn is in the Triṣṭubh metre ; by means of its pādas which remain firm, the Hotar keeps the libation in its proper place, preventing it from falling down.

*Tam asya dyāvā prithivī* (10, 113) is a *mahadvat* hymn also ; for, in the second pāda of the first verse, the word *mahīmāno* occurs. It is in the Jagatī metre. The Jagatīs are the leading metres at the midday libation during the three last days (above-mentioned). Thence the Nivid is placed in it. These hymns represent cohabitation ; they are in the Triṣṭubh and Jagatī metres, for cattle is represented by cohabitation, and, for obtaining cattle, the *mahadvat* hymns are repeated. The air is *mahad* ; in order to obtain the airy region, five hymns (there are five, four in Triṣ-

ṭubh, and one in Jagatī) are required. For the Pañkti metre comprises five pādas, the sacrifice belongs to this metre, cattle belong to it; cattle is represented by the Chandomās.

*Abhi tvā sūra nonumāḥ*, and *abhi tvā pūrvaṇī* form the Rathantaram Priṣṭham of the eighth day. *Yad vāvāna* is the invariable Dhāyā. By *tvām iddhi havāmahe* all is brought back to the womb; [352] for this day is a Bāṛhata day according to its position. *Ubhayam sriṇavachcha* (8, 50, 1-2) is the Sāma Pragātha; the meaning of *ubhayam* i. e., both, in it is, what is to-day and what was yesterday. This is a characteristic of the eighth day, which is a Bṛihat day. *Tyam ā su vājinam* is the invariable Tārṣya.

### 19.

(The Mahadvat Hymns of the Niṣkevalya Śāstra.  
The Śāstras of the Evening Libation.)

The five Mahadvat hymns are, *apūrvyā purutāmāni* (6, 32), *tām su te kīrtim* (10, 54), *tvām mahān Indra yo ha* (1, 63), *tvām mahān indra tubhyam* (4, 17). These (four) hymns are in the Triṣṭubh metre; by means of its pādas which remain firm, the Hotar keeps the libation in its proper place, preventing it from falling down. The fifth is in the Jagatī metre, viz., *divaśchid asya varimā* (1, 55), which contains in the words, *indram na mahná*, the term *mahat*, great. For obtaining cattle these Mahadvat hymns are repeated. The air is *mahat*, and for obtaining the airy region two times five hymns must be repeated. Because a Pañkti (a collection of five hymns) has five feet, the Yajña consists of five parts, cattle consist of five parts. Twice five makes ten;° this decade is Virāt, Virāt is food, cattle are food, the Chandomās are cattle.

*Viśvo devasya netus* (5, 50, 1), *tat savitur varenyam ā vis vedevam sapta-*  
*tim* (5, 82, 7-8), are the beginning and sequel of the Vaiśvadeva Śāstra. *Hiranyapānim ūtaye* (1, 22, 5-7), which contains the word *ūrdhva*, is the (Nivid) hymn for Savitar. *Mahi dyāuḥ prithivī chana* (1, 22, 13-15) is the (Nivid) hymn for Dyāvāprithivī, which contains the word *mahat*. *Yuvānā* [353] *pitarā punar* (1, 20, 4-8) is the (Nivid) hymn for the Ribhus, which has the characteristic word "*punah*."

*Imā nu kam bhuvānā* (10, 157) is the hymn which contains only verses of two feet.<sup>1</sup> For man has two feet, whilst the animals have four, and by

\* Sāy —The five Mahadvat hymns of the Marutvatīya, and the five of the Niṣkevalya Śāstras are to be understood.

<sup>1</sup> It contains five verses, which are called Dvipadā Triṣṭubh. (Sāy, in his Commentary on the Saṁhitā.)

means of this hymn he places the two-footed sacrificer among the four-footed cattle. *Devānām id avo mahad* (8, 72, 1) is the (Nivid) hymn for the Viśvedevās, which contains the term *mahat*. These verses are in the Gâyatrī metre (except the Dvipāds), because the Gâyatrī is the leading metre at the evening libation during these three (last) days.

By *ritādvānam vaiśvānaram* (Áśv. Śr. S. 8, 10), commences the Agni-mâruta Śastra ; because in the word *agnir vaiśvānaro mâhôn*, there is the word *mahat* contained. *Krīlam vah śardho mârutam* (1, 37) is the (Nivid) hymn for the Marutas ; because it contains (in the fifth verse) the word *vavridhe*, which is a characteristic of the eighth day.

*Jâtavedase sunavāma* is the invariable Jâtavedās verse. *Agne mrīla mahân asi* (4, 9) is the (Nivid) hymn for Jâtavedās ; it contains the characteristic term *mahad*. All these verses are in the Gâyatrī metre, which is the (leading) metre at the evening libation during these three (last) days.

#### FOURTH CHAPTER.

(The Ninth and Tenth Days of the Dvâdasâha. Conclusion of this Sacrifice.)

##### 20.

(The Characteristics of the Ninth Day. The Śastras of the Morning and Midday Libations.)

What has the same refrain, is a characteristic of the ninth day. This day has the same characteristics as [354] the third, viz., *asva*, *anta*, *punarāvritam*, *punarninrittam*, *rata*, *paryasta*, the number three, *antarâpa*, the mentioning of the deity in the last pada, an allusion to that world, *śuchi* splendour, *satya* truth, *kṣeti* to reside, *gata* gone, *oka* house, the past tense.

*Aganma mahâ namaśâ* (7, 12, 1) is the Aija hymn of the ninth day, because it contains the word "gone" (in *aganma*, we went), it is in the Triṣṭubh metre.

The Pra-uga Śastra consists of the following verses : *pra víryâ* (7, 90, 1), *te te satyena manasâ* (7, 90, 5), *divi kṣayanta* (7, 64, 1), *â viśva vâra* (7, 70, 1-3), *ayam soma indra tubhyam sunva* (7, 29, 1-3), *pra Bráhmano* (7, 42, 1-3), *Sarasvatīm devayanto* (10, 17, 7-9), *â no divo brîhataḥ* (5, 43, 11-13), *Sarasvaty abhi no* (6, 61, 14-16). These verses have the characteristics, *śuchi* i.e., splendour ; *satya*, i.e., truth ; *kṣeti*, i.e., residence ; *gate*, i.e., gone ; *oka*, i.e., house. They are in the Triṣṭubh metre, which is the (leading) metre at the morning libation, during the three (last) days.

The extension (of the Marutvatiya Śastra) is the same as on the third day. The five hymns representing cohabitation which contain the characteristics of this day, and represent cattle, are, *Indra svâhâ pibatu* (3, 50); *svâhâ* here is an *anta*; *gâyat sâma nabhanyam* (1, 173), which contains an *anta* in the word *svar*; *tiṣṭhâ hari ratha* (335), which contains an *anta* in *sthâ*, to stand; *ima u tvâ purutam asya* (6, 21), which contains an *anta* in *rathestha*. These four are in the Triṣṭubh metre. The fifth is in the Jagatī metre, *pra mandine pitumat* (1, 101), whose verses have the same refrain. The Jagatīs being the leading metre on the three (last) days, the Nivid is to be put in them. These hymns in the Triṣṭubh and Jagatī metres are repeated as (representing) cohabitation. For cattle is cohabitation; the Chandomās are [355] cattle. (This is done) for obtaining cattle. Five (such) hymns are repeated. For the Pañkti consists of five pādas; the sacrifice has the nature of the Pañkti, and so have cattle (also); the Chandomāḥ are cattle; (this is done) for obtaining cattle.

*Tvām iddhi havâmahe* and *tvām hyehi cherave*, form the Bṛihat Pṛiṣṭha. *Yad vâvâna* is the invariable Dāyā. By *abhi tvâ sūra nonumo* all is brought to the womb, because the ninth day is a Rathantara day according to its position. *Indra tridhātu śaraṇam* (6, 46, 9-10) is the Sâma Pragâtha containing the characteristic "three." (The Târksya just as on the other days.)

## 21.

(The Remainder of the Niṣkeralya Śastra. The Śastras of the Evening Libation.)

There are five other pair-hymns enumerated, the four first are in the Triṣṭubh, the fifth in the Jagatī metre. These are, *sam cha tve jagmur* (6, 34), which contains the word "gone;" *kadâ bhuvan* (6, 35) which contains the word "*kṣi*" to reside, (in *kṣayani*), which is an *antarâpa*, "he resides as it were, gone to an end (having gained his object)," *â satyo yātu* (4, 16) which contains *satya* truth, *tat ta indriyam paramam* (1, 103), which contains an *anta* in the word "*paramam*," i. e., highest. *Aham bhuvam* (10, 48, 1), which contains an *anta* in *jayâmi*, I conquer<sup>1</sup>.

The commencement and sequel of the Vaiṣvadeva Śastra is, *tat Savitur vṛiṇîmahe*, and *adyâ no deva Savitar*. (The Nivid) hymn for Savitar is *doṣo âgât* (?). The (Nivid) hymn for Dyāvâprithivî is, *pravâm mahi dyavâ abhî* (4, 56, 5-7).

[356] *Indra iṣe dadātu naḥ* (8, 82, 34), *te no ratnâni* (1, 20, 7-8) form the (Nivid) hymn for the Ribhus, the words *trir â saptâni* (1, 20, 7) contain

<sup>1</sup> For the sentences here omitted in the translation (they are only repetitions) see 5, 19.

the characteristic "three." *Babhrur eko viṣṇuḥ* (8, 29) is the Dvipadâ. By repeating a Dvipâd, the Hotar puts the two-legged sacrificer among the four-legged animals. *Ye trimsati trayas para* (8, 28) is the (Nivid) hymn for the *viśvedevâh*, because it contains the term "three." *Vaiśvânaro na âtaye* (Aśv Sr. S. 8, 11) is the Pratipad of the Agnimâruta Śastra ; it contains the term *parāvataḥ*, which is an *anta*.

*Maruto [yasya hi kṣaya* (1, 86) is the (Nivid) hymn for the Marutas. It contains the term *kṣi*, to reside, which is an *antarûpam* ; for one resides, as it were, after having gone to a (certain) object.

The (Nivid) hymn for Jâtavedâs is, *prâgnaye râcham traya* (10, 187) (each verse of which ends with) *sa naḥ pārṣad ati dviṣaḥ*, i. e., may he (Agni) overcome our enemies, and bring (safely our ceremonies) to a conclusion. He repeats this refrain twice. For in this Navarâtra sacrifice (which is lasting for nine days), there are so many ceremonies, that the committal of a mistake is unavoidable. In order to make good (any such mistake, the pâda mentioned must be repeated twice). By doing so, the Hotar makes them (the priests and sacrificers) free from all guilt. These verses are in the Gâyatrî metre ; for the Gâyatrî is the (leading) metre at the evening libation during the three (last) days.

## 22.

(To What the Different Parts of the Dvâdasâha are to be likened. The Tenth Day.)

The six *Prîṣṭha* days (the six first in the Dvâdasâha) represent the mouth ; the *Chandomâḥ* days, from the seventh to the ninth, are then what is [357] in the mouth, as tongue, palate, and teeth ; but that by which one produces articulate sounds of speech, or by which one distinguishes the sweet and not sweet, this is the tenth day. Or the six *Prîṣṭha* days are comparable to the nostrils, and what is between them, to the *Chandomâḥ* days ; but that by which one discerns the different smells, this is the tenth day. Or the six *Prîṣṭha* days are comparable to the eye ; the *Chandomâḥ* are then the black in the eye, and the tenth day then is the pupil of the eye, by which one sees. Or the six *Prîṣṭha* days are comparable to the ear ; while the *Chandomâḥ* represent what is in the ear ; but by what one hears, that is the tenth day.

The tenth day is happiness ; those who enter on the tenth day, enter on happiness, therefore silence must be kept during the tenth day ; for

“ we shall not bespeak the (goddess of) fortune,” “because a happy thing is not to be spoken to.

Now the priests walk, clean themselves, and proceed to the place of the sacrificer's wife (*patnīśālā*).<sup>3</sup> That one of the priests, who should know this invocation offering (*âhuti*), shall say :

“ Hold one another ;” then he shall offer the oblation by repeating the mantra, “ here be thou happy, here be ye happy, here may be a hold, here may be a hold for all that is yours ;<sup>4</sup> may Agni carry it (the sacrifice) up ! Svâhâ !<sup>5</sup> may he take it up ! ”

When he says, “ be happy here,” then he makes happy (joyful) all those (sacrificers) who are in this [358] world. When he says, “ enjoy yourselves,” then he makes joyful their offspring in these worlds. When he says, “ here may be a hold, a hold for all that is yours,” then he provides the sacrificers with children, and speech (the power of speech). By the words “ may Agni carry it up ” (*vât*), the Rathantaram Sâman is to be understood, and by “ Svâhâ ! may he carry it up ! ” the Brihat Sâman is meant. For the Rathantaram and Brihat Sâman are the cohabitation of the gods ; by means of this cohabitation of the gods one obtains generation ; by means of this cohabitation of the gods generation is produced. (This is done) for production. He who has this knowledge, obtains children and cattle.

Now they all go and make ablution and proceed to the place of the Agnīdhra. That one who knows the invocation offering (*âhuti*) shall say “ hold now one another,” then he should bring the offering and recite, “ he who produced besides us this ground (our) mother, he, the preserver who feeds (us), may preserve in us wealth, vigour, health, and strength, Svâhâ ! ” Who knowing this, recites this formula, gains for himself, as well as for the sacrificers, wealth, vigour, health, and strength.

## 23.

*(The Chanting and Repeating of the Serpent Mantra. The Chaturhotri Mantra. Its effect. Who Ought to Repeat it.)*

All the other priests (except the Udgâtris) go from thence (the Agnīdhriya fire) and proceed to the *Sadas* (a place in the south-east of the Uta-

<sup>2</sup> This is a very common superstition spread in Europe ; not to speak, for instance, of finding some treasure in the earth. Sây. explains *avavad* by “ to blame ; ” but this is not required, and is not good sense.

<sup>3</sup> To make Homa.

<sup>4</sup> All that you have, all your possessions may be upheld and remain in the same prosperous state.

<sup>5</sup> The formula Svâhâ is personified, and taken as a deity.

rāvedi) all walking each in his own way, in this or that direction. But the Udgâtris walk together. They chant the verses (seen) by the Queen of the Serpents (*Sarpa-râjñî*) ; because the earth (*īyam*) is the Queen of the Serpents, for she is the queen of all that [359] moves (*sarpat*). She was in the beginning without hair, as it were (without trees, bushes, &c.) She then saw this mantra, which commences, *āyam gāuḥ priśnir akramât* (10, 189). In consequence of it, she obtained a motley appearance, she became variegated (being able to produce) any form she might like (such as) herbs, trees, and all (other) forms. Therefore the man who has such a knowledge obtains the faculty of assuming any form he might choose.

The three Udgâtris, Prastotar Udgâtar, and Pratibhartar, repeat their respective parts in their mind (*i. e.* they do not utter words), but the Hotar repeats (aloud) with his voice ; for *Vâch* (speech) and *Manas* (mind) are the cohabitation of the gods. By means of this cohabitation of the gods, he who has such a knowledge, obtains children and cattle.

The Hotar now sets forth the Chaturhotri mantras;<sup>6</sup> he repeats them as the Śāstra accompanying the Stotram (the chanting of the verses just mentioned) by the Udgâtris. The sacrificial name of the deities in the Chaturhotris was concealed. Therefore the Hotar now sets forth these names, and makes public the appropriate sacrificial name of the deities, and brings what has become public, to the public. He who has this knowledge, becomes public (*i. e.*, celebrated).

A Brahman who, after having completed his Vedic studies, should not attain to any fame, should go to a forest, string together the stalks of Dharba grass, with their ends standing upwards, and sitting on the right side of another Brahman, repeat with a loud voice, the Chaturhotri mantras. (Should he do so, he would attain to fame).

## 24.

[360] *When and How the Priests Break their Silence on the Tenth Day*)

All touch now the branch of an Udumbara tree (which is at the sacrificial compound behind the seat of the Udgâtar) with their hands, thinking "I touch food and juice ;" for the Udumbara tree represents juice<sup>7</sup> and food. At the time that the gods distributed (for the earth)

<sup>6</sup> This is generally done before the singing of a mantra by the Udgâtar ; but the Udgâtar not being allowed at this occasion to utter words, his office is taken by the Hotar.

<sup>7</sup> The sap of the Udumbara tree is to be understood. It grew out of the food scattered by the gods on the earth.—*Sây.* compare 7, 32.

food and juice, the Udumbara trees grew up; therefore it brings forth every year three times ripe fruits. If they take the Udumbara branches in their hands, they then take food and juice. They suppress speech, for the sacrifice is speech; in suppressing the sacrifice (by abstaining from it) they suppress the day; for the day is the heaven-world, and (consequently) they subdue the heaven-world. No speech is allowed during the day; if they would speak during the day, they would hand over the day to the enemy; if they would speak during the night, they would hand over the night to the enemy. Only at the time when the sun has half set, they should speak; for then they leave but this much space (as is between the conjunction of day and night) to the enemy. Or they should speak (only) after the sun has completely set. By doing so, they make their enemy and adversary share in the darkness. Walking round the Ahavaniya fire, they then speak; for the Ahavaniya fire is the sacrifice, and the heaven-world; for by means of the sacrifice, which is the gate of the heaven-world, they go to the heaven-world. By the words, "if we have failed, by omission, or improper application, or by excess, of [361] what is required, all that may go (be taken away) to (our) father, who is Prajâpati," they recommence speaking. For all creatures are born after Prajâpati (he being their creator). Prajâpati, therefore, is the shelter from (the evil consequences of) what is deficient, or in excess (in his creatures); and thence these two faults do no harm to the sacrificers. Therefore all that is deficient or in excess with them who have this knowledge, enters Prajâpati. Thence they should commence speaking by (repeating) this (mantra).

## 25.

*(The Chaturhotri Mantras. The Bodies of Prajâpati. The Brahmodyam. The Sacrificers take their Seats in Heaven.)*

When the Hotar is about to repeat the Chaturhotri mantra, he cries, "Adhvaryu!" This is the proper form of *âhâva* (at this occasion, and not *śomsâvôm*). The Adhvaryu then responds, "Om, Hotar! *tathâ* Hotar!" The Hotar (thereupon) repeats (the Chaturhotri mantras), stopping at each of the ten padas!

- (1) Their sacrificial spoon was intelligence!
- (2) Their offering was endowed with intellect!
- (3) Their altar was speech!
- (4) Their Barhis (seat) was thought!
- (5) Their Agni was understanding!
- (6) Their Agnîdhra was reasoning!



- (7) Their offering (*havis*) was breath !
- (8) Their Adhvaryu was the Sâman !
- (9) Their Hotar was Vâchaspati !
- (10) Their Maitrâvaruṇa (*upa-vaktâ*) was the mind !
- (11) They (sacrificers) took (with their mind) the Graha !
- (12) O ruler Vâchaspati, O giver, O name !
- (13) Let us put down thy name !
- (14) May'st thou put down our (names) ; with (our) [362] names go to heaven (announce our arrival in heaven) !
- (15) What success the gods who have Prajâpati for their master, gained, the same we shall gain !”<sup>a</sup>

The Hotar now reads the *Prajâpati tanu* (bodies) mantras, and the *Brahmodyam*.

- (1 & 2) *Eater of food, and mistress of food.* The eater of food is Agni ; the mistress of food is Âditya.
- (3 & 4) *The happy and fortunate.* By “happy” Soma, and by “fortunate” cattle are meant.
- (5 & 6) *The houseless and the dauntless.* “Houseless” is Vâyu, who never lives in a house, and “fearless” is Death, for all fear him.
- (7 & 8) *The not reached, and not to be reached.* “The not reached” is Earth, and “the not to be reached” is Heaven.
- (9 & 10) *The unconquerable, and the not to be stopped.* “The unconquerable” is Agni, and “the not to be stopped” is Âditya (sun).
- (11 & 12) *Who has no first (material) cause (apârvâ), nor is liable to destruction.* “Who has no first (material) cause” is the mind (*manas*) and “what is not liable to destruction” is the year.

These twelve bodies of Prajâpati make up the whole Prajâpati. On the tenth day, one reaches the whole Prajâpati.

They now repeat the *Brahmodyam*.<sup>a</sup> “Agni is [363] the house-father ; thus say some, for he is the master (house-father) of the world (earth). “Vâyu is the house-father, thus say others ; for he is the ruler of the airy region. That one (Âditya, the sun) is the house-father ; for he burns

8. Heaven-world. The gods ascended to heaven by sacrifice. The same is the object of the sacrificers. This is the *Graha mantra*, recited by the Hotar. Now follow the *Prajâpati tanu* mantras, and the *Brahmodyam*. There are twelve *Prajâpati tanu* mantras ; they are repeated by pairs, every time two.

9. That is, what Brahmans ought to repeat. It begins with the words, *Agnir grihapatiḥ*, and ends with *arâtsma*. This *Brahmodyam* is no proper mantra, but a kind of *Brâhmaṇam*, or theological exposition. However, the whole is repeated by the Hotar as a mantra. See the whole of it also in the *Aśv. Sr. S. 8, 13*.

“(with his rays). The Ritus are the houses. He who knows what  
 “god is their (the Ritu’s) house-father, becomes their house-father, and  
 “succeeds. Such sacrificers are successful (they become masters them-  
 “selves). House-father (master) becomes he who knows the god who  
 “destroys the evil consequences of sin (Âditya, the sun). This house-  
 “father destroys the evil consequences of sin and becomes (sole)  
 “master. These sacrificers destroy the evil consequences of their sin  
 “(and say), O Adhvaryu ! we have succeeded, we have succeeded.”

## FIFTH CHAPTER.

(*The Agnihotram. On the Duties of the Brahmā Priest.*)

### 26.

(*The Agnihotram.*<sup>1</sup> *When the Sacrificer has to Order his Priest to Bring Fire to the Ahavaniya. The Sixteen Parts of the Agnihotram.*)

The Agnihotri says to his Adhvaryu, “Take from ” (here the Gārhapatya fire) the Ahavaniya fire.” Thus he says at evening ; for what good he was doing during the day, all that is taken away (together with [364] the fire and brought) eastwards and put in safety. If he says at morning time, “Take from (here) the Ahavaniya,” then he takes with him all the good he was doing during the night (brings it) eastwards and puts it in safety. The Ahavaniya fire is the sacrifice (sacrificial fire) ; the Ahavaniya is the heaven-world. He who has this knowledge, places the heaven-world (the real heaven) in the heaven-world, which (is represented by) the sacrifice alone. Who knows the Agnihotram which belongs to all gods, which consists of sixteen parts, and is placed among cattle, is successful by means of it.

What in it (the offering of which the Agnihotram consists) is of the cow (such as milk) belongs to Rudra. What is joined to the calf, belongs to Vāyu. What is being milked, belongs to the Aśvins. What has been milked, belongs to Soma. What is put on the fire to boil, belongs to Varuṇa. What bubbles up (in boiling) belongs to Pūṣan. What is dripping down, belongs to the Maruts. What has bubbles, belongs to Viśvedevas. The cream (of the milk) gathered, belongs to Mitra. What

<sup>1</sup> The Agnihotram is a burnt offering of fresh milk, brought every day, twice during the whole term of life. Before a Brahman can take upon himself to bring the Agnihotram, he has to establish the three sacred fires, Gārhapatya, Dakṣiṇa and Ahavaniya. This ceremony is called *Agnyādhāna*. The performers of these daily oblations are called “Agnihotris”. They alone are entitled to bring the Iṣṭis and Soma sacrifices. There are, up to this day, Agnihotris in the Dekkhan, who may be regarded as the true followers of the ancient Vedic religion.

falls out (of the pot), belongs to Heaven and Earth. What turns up (in boiling), belongs to Savitar. What is seized (and placed in the vessel), belongs to Viṣṇu. What is placed (on the Vedi) belongs to Brihaspati. The first offering is Agni's, the latter portion is Prajâpati's, the offering itself (chief portion) belongs to Indra. This is the Agnihotram, belonging to all gods, which comprises sixteen parts.

## 27.

(How the priest has to make good certain casualties which may happen when the Agnihotram is offered.)

If the cow of an Agnihotrî \* which is joined to her calf, sits down during the time of being milked, what is the penance for it? He shall repeat over it this [365] mantra. "Why dost thou sit down out of fear? From this grant us safety! Protect all our cattle! Praise to Rudra the giver!" (By repeating the following mantra) he should raise her up. "The divine Aditi (cow) rose, and put long life in the sacrifice, she who provides Indra, Mitra and Varuṇa with their (respective) shares (in the sacrifice)." Or he may hold on her udder and mouth a vessel filled with water and give her (the cow) then to a Brahman. This is another Prâyaścitta (penance).

If the cow of an Agnihotrî, which is joined to her calf, cries during the time of being milked, how is this to be atoned for? If she cries out of hunger, to indicate to the sacrificer what she is in need of, then he shall give her more food in order to appease her. For food is appeasing. The mantra *sûyavasâd bhagavatî* (1, 164, 40) is to be repeated. This is the Prâyaścitta.

If the cow of an Agnihotrî which is joined to her calf moves during the time of being milked, what is the Prâyaścitta? Should she in moving spill (some milk) then he shall stroke her, and whisper (the following words), "What of the milk might have fallen to the ground to-day, what might have gone to the herbs, what to the waters,—may this milk be in 'my houses, (my) cow, (my) calves, and in me.'" He shall then bring a burnt offering with what has remained, if it be sufficient for making the burnt offering (Homa).

Should all in the vessel have been spilt (by the moving of the cow) then he shall call another cow, milk her and bring the burnt offering with that milk, and sacrifice it. It is to be offered alone in faith.\*

\* The cow herself is called Agnihotrî.

\* The meaning of the sentence : *आत्वेव अद्रायै होतव्यं* is : this (substitute) is to be offered (completely) even including the *śraddhâ*. This is the formula : *अहं अद्रा जुहोमि* (i.e.) "I offer (this) in faith (as a believing one)."

[366] This is the Prāyaścitta. He who with such a knowledge offers the Agnihotram, has (only) offerings in readiness (which are fit) and has (consequently) all (accepted by the gods).

- 28.

(On the Meaning of the Agnihotram, if Performed in Perfect Faith. It represents Dakṣiṇā. The Āsvina Śastra, Mahāvratā, and Agnichayana are hinted at in it.)

That Āditya (the sun) is his (the Agnihotri's) sacrificial post, the earth is his altar, the herbs are his Barhis (seat of grass), the trees are his fuel, the waters his sprinkling vessels, the directions the wooden sticks laid round about (the hearth). If anything belonging to the Agnihotri should be destroyed, or if he should die, or if he should be deprived of it, then he should receive all this in the other world, placed, as it were, on the Barhis (sacrificial litter). And the man who, having this knowledge, performs the Agnihotram, will actually obtain (all this).

He brings as Dakṣiṇā (donation) both gods and men mutually, and everything (the whole world). By his evening offering he presents men to the gods, and the whole world. For men, if being fast asleep without shelter, as it were, are offered as gifts to the gods. By the morning offering he presents the gods as gifts to men, and the whole world. The gods, after having understood the intention (of men that the gods should serve them) make efforts (to do it), saying "I will do it, I will go." What world a man, who has presented all this property to the gods, might gain, the same world gains he who, with this knowledge, performs the Agnihotram.

By offering the evening oblation to Agni, the Agnihotri commences the Āsvina Śastra (which [367] commences with a verse addressed to Agni). By using the term *vāch*, i. e., speech (when taking out the Agnihotram) he makes a (*pratigara*), i. e., response (just as is done at the repetition of a Śastra).

By (thus) repeating every day "Vāch," the Āsvina Śastra \* is recited by Agni at night, for him who, having this knowledge, brings the Agnihotram.

---

\* The Āsvina Śastra is required at the commencement of the Gavām ayanam, when making Atirātra. See 4, 17-11. The author of our Brāhmaṇa here tries to find out some resemblance between the performance of the evening Agnihotram and the Āsvina Śastra. He finds it in the circumstance, that this offering belongs to Agni, and the Āsvina Śastra commences with a verse addressed to Agni (4, 7). Having thus obtained the commencement of the Śastra, he must find out also the *pratigara* or response which belongs to every Śastra. This he discovers in the formula : *vāchā tuā hotre*, which the Agnihotri repeats as often as the offering is taken out for being sacrificed.

By offering the morning oblation to Âditya, he commences the Mahâ-vrata <sup>6</sup> ceremony. By using (a term equivalent to) *prâṇa*, i. e., life (when eating the remainder of the Agnihotram) he makes a *pratigara* (also). By (thus) repeating every day the word "food" (life), the Mahâvrata (Sas-tram) is recited by Âditya at day for him who, with this knowledge, performs the Agnihotram.

The Agnihotri has to perform during the year 720 evening offerings and also 720 morning offerings, just as many bricks (1440) marked by sacrificial formulas as are required at the Gavâm ayanam. He who with such a knowledge brings the Agnihotram, has the sacrifice performed with a Sattrâ [368] lasting all the year (and) with Agni Chitya <sup>6</sup> (the hearth constructed at the Chayana ceremony).

## 29,

*(Whether the Morning Oblation of the Agnihotrî is to be Offered Before or After Sunrise.*

*Vriṣaśuṣma*, the son of *Vatavata*, the son of *Jâtukarna*, said, "We shall tell this to the gods, that they perform now the Agnihotram, which was brought on both days (on the evening of the preceding, and the morning of the following, day) only every other day." And a girl, who was possessed by a Gandharva, spoke thus, "We shall tell it to the Pitaras (ancestors), that the Agnihotram which was performed on both days, is now performed every other day."

The Agnihotram performed every other day is performed at evening after sunset, and at morning before sunrise. The Agnihotram performed on both days is performed at evening after sunset, and at morning after sunrise. Therefore, the Agnihotram is to be offered after sunrise. For he who offers the Agnihotram before sunset, reaches in the twenty-fourth year the Gâyatrî world, but if he brings it after sunrise, in the

---

<sup>6</sup> This concludes the Gavâm ayanam. See the note to 4, 12. The resemblance between the Mahâvrata and the morning Agni-hotma is found by our author in the following points: The morning Agnihotram belongs to Âditya, and the Niṣkevalya Śâstra of the Mahâvrata commences with a mantra addressed to the same deity. The Pratigara he finds in the mantra, *annam payo reto smâsu*, which the Agnihotri repeats as often as he eats the remainder of his offering.

<sup>6</sup> At each Atirâtra of the Gavâm ayanam, the so-called *Chayana* ceremony takes place. This consists in the construction of the Uttarâ Vêdi (the northern altar) in the shape of an eagle. About 1440 bricks are required for this structure, each being consecrated with a separate Yajus mantra. This altar represents the universe. A tortoise is buried alive in it, and a living frog carried round it and afterwards turned out. The fire kindled on this new altar is the *Agni Chitya*. To him are the oblations of flesh and Soma to be given. The whole ceremony is performed by the Adhvaryu alone.

twelfth. When he brings the Agnihotram before sunrise during two years, then he has actually sacrificed during one year only. But if he sacrifices after sunrise, then he completes the yearly amount of offerings in one year. Therefore [369] the Agnihotram is to be brought after sunrise. He who sacrifices after sunset at evening, and after sunrise in the morning, brings the offering in the lustre of the day-night (Ahorâtra). For the night receives light from Agni, and the day from the sun (Âditya). By means of this light the day is illuminated. Therefore he who sacrifices after sunrise, performs the sacrifice only in the light of Ahorâtra (that is, he receives the light only once, instead of twice, the offering brought before sunrise belonging to the night, and being illuminated by Agni, not by Âditya).

## 30.

*(Several Stanzas Quoted Regarding the Necessity to bring the Agnihotram After Sunrise).*

Day and night are the two wheels of the year. By means of both, he passes the year. He who sacrifices before sunrise, goes by one wheel, as it were, only. But he who sacrifices after sunrise, is going through the year with both wheels, as it were, and reaches his destination soon. There is a sacrificial Gâthâ (stanza) which runs as follows :

“All that was, and will be, is connected with the two Sâmans, *Brihat* “and *Rathantaram*, and subsists through them. The wise man, after having “established the sacred hearths (the Agnihotri), shall bring a different “sacrifice at day, and a different one at night (i. e., devoted to different “deities).”

The night belongs to the *Rathantaram*, the day to the *Brihat*. *Agni* is the *Rathantaram*, *Âditya* the *Brihat*. Both these deities cause him to go to the heaven-world, to the place of splendour (*bradhna*), who with this knowledge sacrifices (the Agnihotram) after sunrise. Thence it is to be sacrificed after sunrise. Regarding this, there is a sacrificial Gâthâ chanted, which runs as follows :

“Just as a man who drives with one pack-horse [370] only without “purchasing another one, act all those men who bring the Agnihotram “before sunrise.”

For all beings whatever follow this deity (*Âditya*) when he stretches (the arms at sunrise and sunset). He who has this knowledge, is followed by this deity, after whom all follows, and he follows her. For this *Âditya*

is the "one guest" who lives among those who bring the sacrifice after sunrise. Concerning this there is a Gāthā (stanza, which runs as follows) :

"He who has stolen lotus fibres, and does not receive (even) one guest "on the evening, will charge with this guilt the not guilty, and take off the "guilt from the guilty."

This Âditya is the "one guest" (*ekâtithiḥ*) he is it "who lives among the sacrificers." The man who [371] thinking, it is enough of the Agnihotram, does not sacrifice, to this deity (Âditya), shuts him out from being his guest. Therefore this deity, if shut out, shuts such an Agnihotrî out from both this world and that one.

Therefore he who thinks, it is enough of the Agnihotram, may nevertheless bring sacrifices. Thence they say, a guest who comes at evening is not to be sent away. It happened that once a learned man, *Jânaśruteya*, a resident of a town (a *Nagarî*), said to an *Aikâdaśâkṣa*, a descendant of *Manutantu*, "we recognise from the children, whether one brings the Agnihotram with or without the proper knowledge." *Aikâdaśâkṣa* had as many children as are required to fill a kingdom. Just as many children will he obtain who brings the Agnihotram after sunrise.

### 31.

(*The Agnihotram is to be Offered After Sunrise*).

In rising, the sun joins his rays to the Ahavaniya fire. Who, therefore, sacrifices before sunrise, is like a female giving her breast to an unborn

---

<sup>7</sup> Sayana makes the following remarks on this rather obscure stanza :

पुरा कदाचित्सप्तर्षीणां संवादप्रसंगे कश्चित्पुरुषो बिसस्तैन्मूलक्षणमपवादं प्राप्य तत्परिहारार्थमृषी-  
शामग्रे शपथं चकार । तदीयशपथोक्तिरूपेयं गाथा बिसानि पद्ममूलानि तेषामपहर्ता प्रत्यवायपरंपरां  
प्राप्नोतु ॥ पापरहिते पुरुषे बिसविषयमपवादं कृतवतो यः प्रत्यवायः पापिनः पुरुषस्य संबंधी पापं  
स्वीकुर्वतो यः प्रत्यवायः सायंकाले गृहे समागच्छत एवातिथेर्वेदेशिकस्यापरोधने यः प्रत्यवायः सेयं  
प्रत्यवायपरंपरा बिसस्तैन्मे सति मम भूयादित्येवं शपथः । अक्षरार्थस्तु अप्रसिद्धो मादृशः पुरुष-  
स्तेनश्चोरो भूत्वा बिसान्यपजहार चेत् स पुमान् अनेनसं पापरहितं पुरुषं श्रोत्रियं एनसा अभिश-  
स्तात् पापेनाभिर्शंसनमपवादं कुर्यात् । तथैष स बिसापहारसायंकाले गृहे समागतं एकातिथिमपहृच्छद्दि  
भोजनमदत्त्वा निःसारयेत् ॥

The stealing of *bisāni*, i.e., lotus fibres, from a tank appears to have been a great offence in ancient times. Not to receive one guest (at least) on the evening was considered as equally wicked. The man who has committed such crimes will, in order to clear himself from all guilt, charge an innocent man with it. The forms *abhiśatāt* and *apaharāt* have evidently the sense of a future tense, as is the case in other instances also. The stanza in question appears to be very old, and was hardly intelligible even to the author of our *Brāhmanam*. He means by *ekâtithiḥ* "the one guest," the sun, which, according to the context, cannot have been the original sense.

child, or a cow giving her udder to an unborn calf. But he who sacrifices after sunrise is like a female giving her breast to a child which is born, or like a cow giving her udder to a calf which is born. The Agnihotram being thus offered to him (Sûrya), he (Sûrya) gives to the Agnihotrî in return, food in both worlds, in this one and that one. He who brings the Agnihotram before sunrise, is like such an one who throws food before a man or an elephant, who do not stretch forth their hands (not caring for it). But he who sacrifices after sunrise, is like such an one who throws food before a man or an elephant who stretch forth their hands. He who has this knowledge, and sacrifices after sunrise, lifts up with this hand (Âditya's hand) his sacrifice, and puts it down [372] in the heaven-world. Therefore the sacrifice is to be brought after sunrise.

When rising, the sun brings all beings into motion (*pranayati*). Therefore he is called *prâṇa* (breath). The offerings of him who, knowing this, sacrifices after sunrise, are well stored up in this *prâṇa* (Âditya). Therefore it is to be sacrificed after sunrise.

That man is speaking the truth, who in the evening after sunset, and in the morning after sunrise, brings his offering. He commences the evening sacrifice by the words, "*Bhûr, Bhuvah, Svar, Om! Agni is Light, Light is Agni;*" and the morning sacrifice by "*Bhûr, Bhuvah, Svar, Om! Sun is Light, Light is Sun.*" The truth-speaking man offers thus in truth, when he brings his sacrifice after sunrise. Therefore it must be sacrificed after sunrise. This is well expressed in a sacrificial stanza which is chanted.

"Those who sacrifice before sunrise tell every morning an untruth; for, if celebrating the Agnihotram at night which ought to be celebrated at day, they say, Sun is Light, but then they have no light (for the sun has not risen)."

### 32.

(On the Creation of the World. The Origin of the Vedas and the Sacred Words. The Penances for Mistakes committed at a Sacrifice.)

Prajâpati had the desire of creating beings and multiplying himself. He underwent (consequently) austerities. Having finished them, he created these worlds, viz., earth, air and heaven. He heated them (with the lustre of his mind, pursuing a course of austerities); three lights were produced: Agni from the earth, Vâyu from the air, and Âditya from heaven. He heated them again, in consequence of which the three Vedas were produced. The Rigveda came from Agni, the Yayurveda from



Vāyu, and the Sāmaveda from Âditya. He heated these Vedas, [373] in consequence of which three luminaries arose, viz., Bhûr came from the Rigveda, Bhuvah from the Yajurveda, and Svar from the Sāmaveda. He heated these luminaries again, and three sounds came out of them *â, u* and *m*. By putting them together, he made the syllable *om*. Therefore he (the priest) repeats "Om ! Om !," for Om is the heaven-world, and Om is that one who burns (Âditya).

Prajâpati spread the sacrifice\* (extending it), took it, and sacrificed with it. By means of the Rik (Rigveda), he performed the duties of the Hotar; by means of the Yajus, those of the Adhvaryu; and by means of the Sâman, those of the Udgâtar. Out of the splendour (seed) which is inherent in this three-fold knowledge (the three Vedas), he made the Brahma essence.

Prajâpati offered then the sacrifice to the gods. The gods spread it, took it, and sacrificed with it, and did just as Prajâpati had done (regarding the office of the Hotar, &c). The gods said to Prajâpati, "If a mistake has been committed in the Rik, or in the Yajus, or in the Sâman in our sacrifice, or in consequence of ignorance, or of a general misfortune, what is the atonement for it?" Prajâpati answered, "When you commit a mistake in the Rik, you shall sacrifice in the Gârhapatya, saying *Bhûh*. When you commit one in the Yajus, then you shall sacrifice in the Agnîdhriya fire<sup>9</sup> or (in the absence of it, as is the case) in the Havis offerings,<sup>10</sup> in the cooking fire (Dakṣiṇa Agni) saying, *Bhuvah*. When a mistake is committed in the Sâman, then it is to be sacrificed in the Ahavaniya fire by saying, *Svar*. When a mistake has been committed out of ignorance, or in consequence of a general [374] mishap, then you shall sacrifice in the Ahavaniya fire, reciting all three words, *Bhûh*, *Bhuvah*, *Svar*. These three "great words" (*vyâhṛiti*) are like nooses to tie together the Vedas. It is just like joining one thing to another, one link to another link, like the stringing of anything made of leather, or of any other thing, and connecting that which was disconnected, that one puts together by means of these great words all that was isolated in the sacrifice. These Vyâhṛitis are the general Prâyaścitta (penance); thence the penances (for mistakes) at a sacrifice are to be made with them.

---

\* It is regarded as a person.

<sup>9</sup> This is used only in the Soma sacrifices.

<sup>10</sup> Such as the Darśapūrṇamāsa iṣṭi, Châturmāsya iṣṭi, &c.

## 33.

(On the Office of the *Brahmâ Priest*. He ought to remain Silent during all the Principal Ceremonies.)

The great sages (*mahâvadaḥ*) ask, "When the duties of a Hotar are performed by the Rik, those of the Adhvaryus by the Yajus, and those of the Udgâtar by the Sâman, and the three-fold science is thus properly carried into effect by the several (priests employed), by what means then are the duties of the *Brahmâ* priest performed?" To this one should answer, "This is done just by means of this three-fold science."

He who blows (*Vâyu*) is the sacrifice. He has two roads, *viz.*, speech and mind. By their means (speech and mind), the sacrifice is performed. In the sacrifice there are both, speech and mind, required. By means of speech the three priests of the three-fold science perform one part (assigned to *Vâch*); but the *Brahmâ* priest performs his duty by the mind only. Some *Brahmâ* priests, after having muttered the *Stomabhâgas* <sup>11</sup> when all arrangements have been made for [375] the repetition of the *Prâtaranuvâka* (the morning prayer) sit down, and speak (without performing any of the ceremonies).

Respecting this (the silence on the part of the *Brahmâ* priests), a Brahman, who saw a *Brahmâ* priest at the *Prâtaranuvâka* talk, said (once) "they (the priests and the sacrificer) have made one-half of this sacrifice to disappear." Just as a man who walks with one foot only, or a carriage which has one wheel only, falls to the ground, in the same manner the sacrifice falls to the ground (*bhreṣan nyeti*), and if the sacrifice has fallen, the sacrificer falls after it too (if the *Brahmâ* priests talk during the time they ought to be silent). Therefore the *Brahmâ* priest should, after the order for repeating the *Prâtaranuvâka* has been given, refrain from speaking till the oblations from the *Upâṁśu* and *Antaryâma* (*Grahas*) are over. After the order for chanting the *Pavamâna Stotra* has been given (he ought also to refrain from speaking) till the last verse (of the *Stotra*) is done. And [376] again, he should during the chanting of the (other) *Stotras*, and the repeating of the *Śastras*, refrain from speaking, till the *Vaṣaṭkâra* (at the end of the *Yajyâ* verse of the *Śastra*) is pronounced. Likewise, as a man walking on both his legs,

<sup>11</sup> The *Stomabhâgas* are certain Yajus-like mantras which are to be found in the *Brâhmaṇas* of the *Sâma*veda only (not in the Yajus or *Rigveda*). Each of these mantras consists of four parts: (a) To what the Stoma is like, such as a cord, a joint, &c.; (b) To what it is devoted or joined; (c) An order to the Stoma to favour the object to

and a carriage going on both its wheels, does not suffer any injury ; in the same way such a sacrifice (if performed in this manner), does not suffer any injury, nor the sacrificer either, if the sacrifice be not injured.

### 34.

(On the Work done by the *Brahmâ*. He Permits the Chanters to Chant)

They say, When the sacrificer has the reward (*dakṣiṇâ*) given to the Adhvaryu, he thinks, "this priest has seized with his hands my Grahas (Soma cups), he has walked for me, he has sacrificed for me." And when he has the reward given to the Udgâtar, he thinks, "he has sung for me ;" and when he has the reward given to the Hotar, he thinks, "this priest has spoken for me the Anuvâkyâs, and the Yâjyâs, and repeated the Śastras." But on account of what work done is the *Brahmâ* priest to receive his reward ? Shall he receive <sup>12</sup> the reward, thinks the sacrificer, without having done any work whatever ? Yes, he receives it for his medical attendance upon the sacrifice, for the *Brahmâ* is the physician of the sacrifice (which is regarded as a man). Because of the *Brahmâ* priest performing his priestly function with the *Brahma*, which is the quintessence of the metres. He does one-half of the work, for he was at the head of the other priests, and the others (Adhvaryu, Hotar, Udgâtar) do the other half. (The *Brahmâ* priests tell if any mistake has been committed [377] in the sacrifice, and perform the *Prâyaścittas*, as described above.)<sup>13</sup>

which it is joined ; (d) An order to the chanters to chant the Stoma by the permission of Savitar in honour of Brihaspati. The last (fourth) part is in all the Stomabhâga mantras the same. I give here some of these mantras, which are all to be found in the *Tândya Brâhmaṇam* (1, 8-9). They commence :

- 1 (a) रश्मिरसि (b) ज्ञाय त्वा (c) ज्यं जित्वा (d) सवितृप्रसूता बृहस्पतये स्तुत
- 2 (a) प्रेतिरसि (b) धर्मणे त्वा (c) धर्मं जित्वा (d) सव०
- 3 (a) अन्तिरसि (b) दिवे त्वा (c) दिवं जित्वा (d) सव०
- 4 (a) सन्धिरसि (b) अन्तरिक्षाय त्वा (c) अन्तरिक्षं जित्वा (d) सव०
- 5 (a) विष्टम्बोऽसि (b) वृष्ट्यै त्वा (c) वृष्टिं जित्वा &c.

The proper meaning of the repetition of these and similar mantras by the *Brahmâ* priests is, to bring the chant (Stoma), which is about to be performed, into contact with the external world, with day, night, air, rain, the gods, and secure the favour of all these powers and beings.

<sup>12</sup> In the original, *haratâ*, which is to be taken in the sense of a future.

<sup>13</sup> I have not translated the passage regarding the *Prâyaścitta* to be performed by the *Brahmâ* priest if any mistake has been committed ; for it is only a repetition from 5, 32.

The Prastotar<sup>13</sup> says, after the order for chanting the Stotram has been given, "O Brahmâ, we shall now chant, our commander !" The Brahmâ then shall say at the morning libation, "Bhûr ! filled with the thought of Indra, ye may sing !" and at the evening libation, [378] he says, "Svar ! filled with the thought of Indra, ye may sing."

At the time of the Ukthya or Atirâtra sacrifice, all the three great words, *Bhûr Bhuvah Svar* are required. If the Brahmâ says, "Filled with the thought of Indra, ye may sing," this means, that the sacrifice is Indra's, for Indra is the deity of the sacrifice. By the words, "filled with the thought of Indra," the Brahmâ priest connects the Udgîtha (the principal part of the chant) with Indra. This saying of the Brahmâ means, "Do not leave Indra; filled with him, ye may sing." Thus he tells them.

---

<sup>13</sup> The announcement of the Prastotar, that the chanters are ready to perform their chant, as well as the orders to do so given by the Brahmâ and Maitrâvaruṇa, are contained in full in the Aśval. Śr. S. (5, 2), and in the Sâṅk. Śr. S. (6, 8). I here give the text from the Aśv. S. :—

ब्रह्मन् स्तोष्यामः प्रशास्तरिति स्तोत्रायातिसर्जितावतिसृजतो भूरिन्द्रवन्तः सवितृप्रसूता इति जपित्वा  
स्तुध्वमिति ब्रह्मा प्रातःसवने भुव इति माध्यन्दिने स्वरिति तृतीयसवने भूर्भुवः स्वरिन्द्रवन्तः सवितृप्र-  
सूता इत्यूर्ध्वमाग्निमास्तात् । स्तुतदेवेन सवित्रा प्रसूता ऋतं च सत्यं च वदत । आयुष्मत्य ऋचो मा  
गात तन् पातामन् ओ३मिति जपित्वा मैत्रावरुणः स्तुध्वमित्युच्चैः ॥

(When the Prastotar calls) "Brahmâ, we shall chant, O commander !" then the two priests (the Brahmâ and Maitrâvaruṇa) whose duty it is to allow (the chanters to sing) give their permission. The Brahmâ, after having first muttered the words "bhûr, be ye filled with Indra, created by Savitar (or permitted by Savitar)," at the morning libation, says, "chant;" at the midday libation he uses, instead of *bhûr, bhuvah*; and at the evening libation, *sva* (the remainder of the Japa being the same). Before all the Stotras which follow the Agnimâruta Śâstra (which concludes the Śâstras of the Agniṣṭoma), that is to say, at the Ukthya, Śolaśî, Atirâtra sacrifices, &c., the Brahmâ mutters all the three great words (*bhûr, bhuvah, sva* along with the remainder of the formula) at the same time. The Maitrâvaruṇa, after having muttered, "Speak what is right and true, ye who are created by Savitar, the god to whose honour praises are chanted, do not lose the sacred verses (chanted by you) which are life, may he protect both bodies of the Sâman (the verses and the tune) Om !" says aloud "chant!"

## [378] SIXTH BOOK.

### FIRST CHAPTER.

(On the Offices of the Grâvastut and Subrahmanyâ.)

#### 1

(On the Origin of the Office of the Grâvastut.<sup>1</sup> The Serpent  
Riṣi Arbuda.)

The gods held (once upon a time) a sacrificial session in Sarvacharu. They did not succeed in [380] destroying the consequences of guilt. Arbuda, the son of Kadru, the Serpent Riṣi, the framer of mantras, said to them, "You have overlooked one ceremony which is to be performed by the Hotar. I will perform it for you, then you will destroy the consequences of guilt." They said, "Well, let it be done." At every midday libation, he then came forth (from his hole), approached them, and repeated spells over the Soma, squeezing stones. Thence they repeat spells at every midday libation over the Soma squeezing stones, in imitation of him (the Serpent Riṣi). The way on which this Serpent Riṣi used to go when coming from (his hole) is now known by the name *Arbudodâ Sarpaṇî* (at the sacrificial compound).

---

<sup>1</sup>See also him about Aśv, Śr. S. 5, 12. His services are only required at the midday libation. He performs his function of repeating mantras over the Soma, squeezing stones before the so-called Dadhi Gharma ceremony. He enters through the eastern gate, and passes on to the two Havirdhânas (the two carts, on which the sacrificial offerings are put, and the two covered places, in which these two carts are). Having arrived north-east of the exterior front of the axe (*akṣasîras*) of the southern Havirdhâna, he throws off a stalk of grass held in his hand, which ceremony is called *nirasanam* (it is performed often by other priests also). He then faces the Soma shoots, assuming a peculiar posture. The Adhvaryu gives him a band (*uṣṇîṣa*), which he ties round his face. As soon as the Adhvaryu and his assistants take the Soma sprouts from below, the *adhiṣavâṇa* board (see the note to 7, 32), he ought to repeat the mantras over the Grâvâṇas, which are now being employed for extracting the Soma juice. He commences with verses containing the term *su*, to squeeze, or derivatives of it. The first is: *abhi tvā deva savitar* (1, 24, 3). After some more single verses follow, the three principal Grâvâṇa hymns, viz., *pruite vadantu* (10, 94), *ā va riṇjase* (10, 76), and *pra vo grâvâṇaḥ* (10, 175). The first and the last are said to have been seen by Arbuda, the Serpent Riṣi, the second by *Jarat karna*, one of the Serpent tribe also. These hymns very likely formed part of the so-called *Sarpaveda* or Serpent Veda (see the Gopatha Brâhmaṇam 1, 10, according to whose statement this Veda came from the east), and were originally foreign to the Rîgveda. They may be, nevertheless, very ancient. The two latter hymns are to be repeated before the last verse of the first, and are thus treated like a Nivid at the evening libation. Either in the midst, or before, or, after these two hymns, the Grâvastut must repeat the

The King (Soma) made the gods drunk. They then said, "A poisonous serpent (*asīviṣa*) looks at our King! Well, let us tie a band round his eyes." They then tied a band round his eyes. Therefore they recite the spells over the Soma squeezing stones, when having tied (round the eyes) a band in imitation (of what the gods did). The King (Soma) made them drunk. They said, "He (the Serpent Rishi) repeats his own mantra over the Soma squeezing stones. Well, let us mix with his mantra other verses." They then mixed with his mantra other verses, in consequence of which he (Soma) did not make them drunk.\* By mixing his mantra with other verses for effecting propitiation, they succeeded in destroying the consequences of guilt.

[381] In imitation of this feat achieved by the gods, the Serpents destroyed all consequences of their own guilt. Having in this state (being quite free from guilt and sin) left off the old skin torn, they obtain a new one. Who knows this, destroys the consequences of his own guilt.

---

2

*(How Many Verses are to be Repeated over the Grāvanas. How they ought to be Repeated. They are Required only at the Midday Libation. No Order for Repeating them Necessary.)*

They say, With how many mantras should he (the Grāvastut) pray over the Soma squeezing stones? The answer is, with a hundred; for the life of a man is a hundred years, he has a hundred powers, and a hundred bodily organs; by doing so, he makes man participate in age, strength, and bodily organs. (Others) say, He ought to repeat thirty-three verses, for he (the Serpent Rishi) destroyed the sins of thirty-three gods, for there are thirty-three gods. (Others) say, He ought to recite an unlimited number of such mantras. For Prajāpati is unlimited; and this recital of the mantras referring to the Soma squeezing stones belongs to Prajāpati, and in it all desires are comprised. Who does so, obtains all he desires. Thence he ought to repeat an unlimited number of such mantras.

Now they ask, In what way should he repeat these mantras (over the Soma squeezing stones)? Syllable by syllable, or should he take four syllables together, or pāda by pāda, or half verse by half verse, or

---

so-called Pāvamāni verses (Rigveda 9.) He has to continue his recitation as long as the squeezing of the juice lasts, or he may go on till it is filled in the Grahas (*ā vā graha grahaṇāt*); he then must conclude with the last verse of the first Grāvāna hymn. Besides this ritual for the Grāvastut, another one is given by Asvalāyana, which he traces to Gāṇagāri.

\* These mantras were the antidote.

verse by verse? With whole verses (repeated without stopping) one does not perform any ceremony, nor with stopping at every pāda. If the verses are repeated with stopping at every syllable, or every four syllables, then the metres become mutilated, for [382] many syllables (sounds) would thus be lost. Thence he ought to (repeat) these mantras one half verse by another. For man has two legs, and cattle are four-footed. By doing so, he places the two-legged sacrificer among the four-legged cattle. Thence he ought to repeat these mantras by half verses.

Since the Grāvastut repeats only at every midday libation mantras over the Soma squeezing stones, how do mantras become repeated over them at the two other (morning and evening) libations? By repeating verses in the Gâyatrî metre, he provides for the morning libation; for the Gâyatrî metre is appropriate to the morning libation; and by repeating verses in the Jagatî metre, he provides for the evening libation; for the Jagatî metre is appropriate to the evening libation. In this way he who, with this knowledge, repeats the mantras over the Soma squeezing stones only at the midday libation, supplies these praises for the morning and evening libations.

They say, What is the reason, that, whilst the Adhvaryu calls upon the other priests to do their respective duties, the Grāvastut repeats this mantra without being called upon (without receiving a *prâiṣa*)? The ceremony of repeating mantras over the Soma squeezing stones is of the same nature as the mind which is not called upon. Therefore the Grāvastut repeats his mantra without being called upon.

### 3

*(The Subrahmanyâ Formula. On its Nature. By whom it is to be Repeated. The Oblation from the Pâtnévata Graha. The Yâjyâ of the Agnîdhrâ.)*

The Subrahmanyâ \* is Vâch. Her son is the [383] king Soma. At the time of buying Soma, they call the Subrahmanyâ (thither), just as one calls a cow.

\* The Subrahmanyâ formula is contained in the Kâtyâyana Śrâuta Sûtras (1, 3), the Agniṣṭoma Sâma Prayoga, the Śatapatha Brâhm. (3, 3, 4, 17-20), and the Taittiriya Aranyaka (1, 12, 3-4). The peculiar pronunciation of this formula is noted by Pāṇini (1, 2, 37-38). The most complete information on its use being only to be found in the Sāmaveda Sûtras, I here give the passages from Kâtyâyana referring to it, along with the formula itself:—

आतिथ्यायां संस्थितायां दक्षिणस्य द्वारवाहोः पुरस्तात्तिष्ठन्तर्वेदिदेशेऽन्वारब्धे यजमाने पत्न्यां च सुब्रह्मण्योमिति शिखर्या निगदं ब्रूयात् । इन्द्रागच्छ हरिव आगच्छ मेधातिथेर्मेष वृषण्यस्य मेने यैरावस्कन्दिद्वहत्यायै जार कौशिके ब्राह्मण्य गौतम ब्रुवायैतावददे स्तुत्यामिति वावदहे स्यात् ।

[384] Through this son, the Subrahmanya priest milks\* (obtains) all desires for the sacrificer. For Vâch grants all desires of him who has this knowledge. They ask, What is the nature of this Subrahmanya?

After the Atithya Iṣṭi has been finished, he (the Subrahmanya) should stand in the front part of the enclosure made for the wife of the sacrificer inside the Vēdi, and when touching the sacrificer and his wife, after having called thrice "subrahmanyom," recite the following formula, "Come, Indra! come owner of the yellow horses!" "ram of Me-dhâtithi! Menâ of Vriṣaṇaśva! thou buffalo (gaura) who ascendest the female (avaskandin), lover of Ahalyâ! son of Kusika! Brâhmana! son of Gotama! (come) "thou who art called" (to appear) at the Soma feast in so and so many days how many there might intervene (between the day on which the Subrahmanya calls him, and that of the Soma festival at which his presence is requested). The Subrahmanya is required on the second, third, fourth and fifth day of the Agnistoma, and almost on every day of the other Soma sacrifices. On the second day, the terms, *tryahe sutyâm*, "three days hence," i.e., on the fifth; on the third day, *dyuāhe sutyâm*, i.e., two days hence; on the fourth, *śvas*, i.e., to-morrow; and on the fifth (the day of the Soma feast) *adya*, i.e. to-day, are used to mark the time when the Soma banquet, to which Indra is by this formula solemnly invited, is to come off. As far as *ब्रुवाय* which is followed by the mentioning of the time appointed *न्यहे, द्व्यहे, &c.*, there is no difference anywhere observable. But the few sentences which follow, and which conclude the formula, differ according to different schools. Some were (according to Kâtyâyana) of opinion, that only *आगच्छ* "come hither" is to follow; others recommended *आगच्छ मघवन्*, "come hither, O Maghavan." Others, such as Gautama, were of opinion, that either is to be omitted, and the concluding formula, *देवा ब्रह्माय आगच्छतागच्छतामच्छत* "come, ye divine Brahmâ priests, come, come." has to follow immediately upon *सुत्यां*,

The name of the tune (Sâman), according to which it is chanted (or rather recited) is *Brahmasrî*, the metre is called *Sampât*, the Rîṣi is Âditya, and Indra is the deity.

At the so-called Agnistôta sacrifices, which open the Chaturdaśarâtra Sattras (sacrificial sessions lasting for a fortnight), (Aśv. Śr. 8, 11, 2), the Subrahmanya calls Agni instead of Indra (Kâtyây. 1, 4), according to Gautama, by the following formula:

**अग्न आगच्छ रोहिताम्यां बृहद्मानो धूमकेतो जातवेदो विचर्यं आंगिरस ब्राह्मणांगिरस ब्रुवाय ।**

i. e., "Come, O Agni, with (thy) two red ones (horses), thou brightly shining, thou blazing in smoke, Jâtavedâs, thou wise! Ângiras! Brâhmana, (come) called," &c. In the concluding formula *देवा ब्रह्म०, अग्नय* fires, is used instead of *देवा* According to Dhânasijay the Subrahmanya formula for Agni runs as follows: *अग्न आगच्छ रोहितव आयच्छ*

*भरद्वाजस्याज सहसः सुनो वारावस्कन्दिनुषसो जारांगिरस*, (the remainder as above), i.e., "Come, Agni! master of the red horses, goat of Bhardvâja, son of power, thou who ascendest (the female); lover of Uṣas," &c. The latter formula is just like that one addressed to Indra. Agni, as well as Indra, are in both these formulas, which must be very ancient, invoked as family deities, the first pre-eminently worshipped by the Ângirasa, the latter by the Kusikas. Both gods are here called "Brâhmans." In later books, Indra appears as a Kṣatriya, and as a model of a king.

On the so-called Agnistômiya day, of all sacrifices (in the Agnistoma, it is the fourth and precedes the Soma day), on which day the animal for Agni and Soma is slain and sacrificed, an extension of the Subrahmanya formula takes place. The Subrahmanya priest has on this day to announce to the gods, that such and such one (the name of the sacrificer must be mentioned), the son of such and such one, the grandson of such and such one, offers, as a Dikṣita, (as initiated into the sacrificial rites) a sacrifice (*दीक्षितो यजते*) The term, 'Dikṣita,' forms then henceforth part of the name of the sacrificer, and his descendants down to the seventh degree. In this part of India, there are many Brâhmans distinguished by this honorary epithet, which always indicates that, either the bearer of it or his immediate ancestors have performed a Soma sacrifice, and have been proclaimed *dikṣita* by the Subrahmanya in all due form.

\* *Duḥe* must be a 3rd person singular, as Śây. explains it.



[385] One should answer, She is Vâch. For Vâch is Brahma, and Subrahma (good Brahma).

They ask, Why does one call him (the Subrahmanyâ priest) who is a male, a female? (They answer) Subrahmanyâ represents Vâch (which is in the feminine gender).

They further ask, When all the other priests are to perform their respective duties within the Vedi, and the Subrahmanyâ outside the Vedi, how is it that the duty of the Subrahmanyâ (in this particular case) becomes performed inside the Vedi? One should answer, The Vedi has an outlet where things (which are no more required) are thrown; if the Subrahmanyâ priest calls (the Subrahmanyâ) when standing in this outlet, then, in this way (his duty is performed within the bounds of the Vedi). They ask, Why does he, standing in the outlet, repeat the Subrahmanyâ? On this, they tell the following story.)

The Rîşis held once a sacrificial session. They said to the most aged man among them, "Call the Subrahmanyâ. Thou shalt call the gods standing among us (on account of thy age), as it were, nearest to them." In consequence of this, the gods make him (the Subrahmanyâ) very aged. In this way, he pleases the whole Vedi.

They ask, Why do they present to him (the Subrahmanyâ) a bull as a reward for his services? (The answer is) The bull is a male (*vrişâ*), the Subrahmanyâ is a female, both making thus a couple. This is done for producing offspring from this pair.

The Agnidhra repeats the Yâjyâ mantra for the Pâtnîvata Graha (a Soma vessel), with a low voice. For the Pâtnîvata is the semen virile, and the effusion of the semen virile passing on without noise, as it were, he does not make the Anuvaşatkâra. For [386] the Anuvaşatkâra is a stop. Thinking, I will not stop the effusion of the semen, he does not make the Anuvaşatkâra, for the semen which is not disturbed in its effusion, bears fruit. Sitting near the Neştar, he then eats, for the Neştar is in the room of women. Agni (Agnidhra) pours semen in women, to produce children. He who has this knowledge, provides through Agni his females with semen, and is blessed with children and cattle.

The Subrahmanyâ ends after the distribution of the Dakşinâ,<sup>6</sup> for she is Vâch. The Dakşinâ is food; thus they place finally the sacrifice in food, which is Speech.

<sup>6</sup> He represents Agni.

<sup>6</sup> The Dakşinâ is distributed at the midday libation.

## SECOND CHAPTER.

*(On the Śastras of the Minor Hotṛi-priests at the Sattras.)*

## 4.

*(On the Śastras of Minor Hotṛi-priests at the Morning and Evening Libations.)*

The Devas spread the sacrifice. When doing so, the Asuras approached them, thinking, let us obstruct their sacrifice. They attacked them from the right side, thinking this to be the weak point. The Devas awoke, and posted two of their number, Mitra and Varuṇa, on the right side. Through the assistance of these two, the Devas drove the Asuras and Rakṣasas away from the morning libation. And thus the sacrificers drive them away (if they have the Maitrāvaruṇa Śastra repeated); thence the Maitrāvaruṇa priest repeats the Maitrāvaruṇa Śastra [387] at the morning libation. The Asuras, defeated on the right side, attacked the centre of the sacrifice. The Devas awoke, posted then Indra, and defeated through his assistance the enemies. Therefore the Brāhmaṇachchhamṣi repeats at the morning libation the Indra Shastra.

The Asuras, thus defeated, attacked the sacrifice on the northern side. The Devas posted on this side Indrāgnî, and defeated thus the Asuras. Therefore the Achhāvāka repeats the Aindrāgna Śastra at the morning libation. For, by means of Indrāgni, the Devas drove the Asuras and Rakṣasas away from the northern side.

The Asuras, defeated on the northern side, marched, arrayed in battle lines towards the eastern part. The Devas awoke and posted Agni eastwards at the morning libation. Through Agni, the Devas drove the Asuras and Rakṣasas away from the eastern front. In the same way, the sacrificers drive away from the eastern front the Asuras and Rakṣasas. Thence the morning libation is Agni's. He who has such a knowledge, destroys the evil consequences of his sin.

The Asuras, when defeated eastwards, went westwards. The Devas awoke and posted the Viśve Devāḥ themselves (westwards) at the third libation, who thus drove the Asuras and Rakṣasas away from the western direction at the third libation. Likewise, the sacrificers drive through the Viśve Devāḥ themselves at the third libation the Asuras and Rakṣas away. Thence the evening libation belongs to the Viśve Devāḥ. He who has such a knowledge, destroys the consequences of his sin.

In this manner, the Devas drove the Asuras out of the whole sacrifice. Thence the Devas became masters of the Asuras. He who has this know-

ledge becomes therefore through himself (alone) master of his adversary and enemy, and destroys the consequences [388] of his sin. The Devas drove away the Asuras and destroyed the consequences of sin by means of the sacrifice arranged in such a way, and conquered the heaven-world. He who has this knowledge, and he who, knowing this, prepares (these) libation required in the said manner, drives away his enemy and hater, destroys the consequences of his guilt, and gains the heaven-world.

## 5.

*(The Stotriya of the Following Day is made the Anurûpa of the Preceding Day in the Śastras of the Minor Hotri-priests at Soma Sacrifices lasting for Several Days.)*

They use at the morning libation the Stotriya (triplet) (of the following day) as Anurûpas<sup>1</sup> (of the preceding day). They make in this way the following day the Anurûpa (corresponding to the preceding day). Thus they commence the performance of the preceding day with a view to that of the following. But this is not done at the midday libation ; for the Priṣṭhas<sup>2</sup> (used then) are happiness (they are independent) ; they have at this (the midday libation) not that position (which the verses have at the morning libation) that they could use the Stotriya (of the following day) as Anurûpa (of the preceding day). Likewise they do not use at the third libation, the Stotriya (of the following day) as Anurûpa (of the preceding day).

## 6.

**[389]** *(The Opening Verses of the Śastras of the Minor Hotri-priests at the Ahargana Soma Sacrifice, i.e., such ones as last for a Series of Days.)*

Now follow the opening verses (of these Śastras after the Stotriyas have been repeated). *Rijunîti no Varuṇa* (1, 90, 1) is that of the Maitrâvaruṇa Śastra ; for in its second pāda is said, "Mitra, the wise, may lead !" for the Maitrâvaruṇa is the leader of the Hotri-priests. Therefore is this the leading verse.

By *Indram vo visvatas pari* (1, 7, 10) commences the Brāhmaṇa-chchhamṣi ; for by the words "we call him (Indra) to the people" they call

<sup>1</sup> See on the meaning of the terms *stotriya* and *anurûpa*, note 41 on page 199. The first contains always those verses which the Sâma singers chant, the latter follows its form, and is a kind of supplement.

<sup>2</sup> The Sâmans of the midday libation are called Priṣṭhas ; and the Stotriyas and Anurûpas which accompany them, go by the same name.

Indra every day. When the Brāhmaṇāchehhaṁsi, with this knowledge, recites this verse every day, then no other sacrificer, notwithstanding he (Indra) might be called by different parties (at the same time), can get Indra away.

*Yat soma â sute nara* (7, 94, 10) is the verse of the Achchhâvâka. By its words "they called hither Indrâgni," every called Indrâgni every day. When the Achchhâvâka is doing this every day, no other one can wrest (from them) Indrâgni. These verses (*rijunîti* &c.) are the boats which lead to the shores of the heavenly world. By their means the sacrificers cross (the sea) and reach the heavenly world.

## 7.

(The concluding verses of the same Śāstras at the *Ahargana*  
Soma sacrifices.)

Now follow the concluding verses of these Śāstras: *Te syâma deva varuna* (7, 66, 9) is that of the Maitrâvaruṇa Śāstra. For by its words, "we contemplate food (*iṣam*) and light (*svar*)," they get [390] hold of both worlds; for "food" is this world, and "light" is that world.

By the triplet *vyantarikṣam atirad* (8, 14, 7-9), which has the characteristic *vi*, i.e. asunder, the Brāhmaṇāchehhaṁsi opens the gates of the heavenly world. The words, "Indra, inebriated by Soma, cleft the hole and made appear the lights" (8, 14, 7), refer to the passionate desire of those who are initiated into the sacrificial art (for heaven); thence it is called the *Balavati* verse.\* The words, "He drove out the cows, and revealed them which were hidden, to the Aṅgiras, and flung away Balas," contain the expression of a gift to them (the Aṅgiras). By the words, "*indreṇa rochanâ divi* (verse 9) the heaven-world is alluded to." By the words, "The fixed lights (stars) of heaven have been fastened by Indra, the fixed ones he does not fling away," the sacrificers approach every day heaven and walk there.

*Aham sarasvatîvator* (8, 38, 10), is the verse of the Achchhâvâka. For Sarasvatî is the voice; (the dual is used) for this day belongs to the "two who have the voice." (As to who they are is expressed by the words) "I choose the tone of Indrâgni." For the voice is the beloved residence of Indrâgni. Through this residence one makes both successful. Who has this knowledge, will be successful in his own residence (his own way).

\* There is the word *vala* hole, in it, which may be regarded as a proper name of an Asura also.

## 8.

(On the *Ahina* and *Aikâhika* concluding verses of the *Śastras* of the minor *Hotri*-priests.)

The concluding verses of the *Hotri*-priests (*Maitrâvaruṇa*, *Brâhmaṇâchchhamṣi*, and *Achchhâvâka*) are, at [391] the morning and midday libations of two kinds, *viz.* *âhîna* (which are proper for Soma sacrifices, which last for several days successively) and *aikâhika* (which are proper for Soma sacrifices which last for one day only). The *Maitrâvaruṇa* uses the *aikâhikas* preventing (thus) the sacrificer from falling out of this world. The *Achchhâvâka* uses the *âhînas* for making (the sacrificer obtain heaven). The *Brâhmaṇâchchhamṣi* uses both ; for thus he holds both worlds (with his hands) and walks in them. In this way he (the *Brâhmaṇâchchhamṣi*) walks holding both, the *Maitrâvaruṇa* and the *Achchhâvâka*, the *Ahina* and *Ekâha*, and (farther) the sacrificial session lasting all the year round (such as the *Gavâm ayanam*) and the *Agniṣṭoma* (the model of all *Aikihikas*).

The *Hotri*-priests require at the third libation *Ekâhas* only for concluding. For the *Ekâha* is the footing, and thus they place the sacrifice at the end on a footing.\*

At the morning libation he must read the *Yājyâ* verses without stopping (*anavânam*). The *Hotar* shall not recite one or two additional verses (*atiśamsanam*) for the *Stoma*. It is just the same case as if one who asks for food and drink must be speedily supplied. Thinking, I will quickly supply the gods their food, he speedily gets a footing in this world. He should make the *Śastram* at the two latter libations with an unlimited number of verses ; for the heaven-world is unlimited. (This is done) for obtaining the heaven-world. The *Hotar* may, if he like, recite those verses which the minor *Hotri*-priests used to repeat on a previous day. Or the *Hotri*-priests (may, if they like, repeat those verses) which the *Hotar* (used to repeat on the previous day) (For *Hotar* as well as the *Hotri*-priests form parts of one [392] body only). For the *Hotar* is the breath, and the *Hotri*-priests are the limbs. This breath goes equally through the limbs. Thence the *Hotar* should, if he like, recite those verses which the minor *Hotri*-priests used to recite on the previous day. Or the *Hotri*-priest (may, if they like, repeat those verses) which the *Hotar* (used to repeat on the previous day). The last verses of the hymns with which the *Hotar* concludes, are the same with the concluding verses of the minor *Hotri*-priests at the evening

---

\*For the *Ekâha* sacrifices are the models of the others.

libation. For the hotar is the soul, and the Hotṛi-priests are the limbs ; the ends of the limbs are equal, therefore the (three) Hotṛi-priests use, at the evening libation, the same concluding verses.

### THIRD CHAPTER.

*(The hymns for lifting the Chamasa (Soma cups). The Praṣṭhita Yājyās of the seven Hotars concluding this ceremony. The two different kinds of Hotars. Explanation of some apparent anomalies in the performances of the minor Hotṛis. The Jagatī hymns for Indra. The concluding verses of the minor Hotṛi-priests. On a peculiarity in the Śastras of the Achchhāvāka.)*

#### 9

*(The number of verses which the Hotar has to repeat at the time of the Soma cups being lifted at the three libations.)*

When at the morning libation the Soma cups are lifted and filled he (the Maitrāvaruṇa) recites the hymn *ā tva vahantu harayāḥ* (1, 116.) the several verses of which contain the words *vrīṣan* (male), *pīta* (drunk), *suta* (squeezed), *mad* (drunk), are complete in their form and are addressed to Indra, for [393] the sacrifice is Indra's. He repeats Gāyatrī; for Gāyatrī is the metre of the morning libation. At the morning libation he recites nine verses only ; one less (than ten). For the semen is poured in to a place made narrow (*nyāna*). At the midday libation he repeats ten verses<sup>1</sup>; for the semen which was poured in a narrow place grows very large, after having reached the centre of the woman's body. At the evening libation he repeats nine<sup>2</sup> verses, one less (than ten) ; for from a narrow place (represented by the third libation) men are born. If he recites these hymns complete, than he makes the sacrificer bring forth the embryo of his (spiritual body) begotten in the sacrifice, which is the womb of the gods.

Some recite every time only seven verses at the morning, midday and evening libations, asserting that there must be as many Puroṇuvākyās as there are Yājyās. Seven (Hotṛi priests) having their faces turned (towards the fire) recite the Yājyās, and pronounce Vauṣat! Now they assert that those (seven verses) are the Puroṇuvākyās of these (seven

<sup>1</sup> They are the hymn, *asāvi devam gorichikam* (7, 21).

<sup>2</sup> They are the hymn, *ihopayāta śayaso* (4, 35).

Yâjyâs); but the Hotar ought not to do so (to recite only seven verses.) For in this way they spoil the semen of the sacrificer, and consequently the sacrificer himself.

The Maitrâvaruṇa carries in this way the sacrificer, for the sacrificer is the hymn, by means of nine verses from this world to the airy region; but by means of ten he carries him further on to that (heaven) world; for the airy region is the oldest; from that world he takes him by means of nine verses up to the celestial world. Those who recite [395] only seven verses, do not wish to raise the sacrificer to heaven. Therefore the hymns are to be recited complete only<sup>3</sup>.

## 10.

(On the Prasthita Yâjyâs of the Hotars at the morning libation.)

Some one (a theologian) has asked, When the sacrifice is Indra's, why do only two, the Hotar and Brâhmaṇâchchhamṣi, at the morning libation, for the Soma drops which are in readiness, repeat Yâjyâs where Indra's very name is mentioned, the Yâjyâ of the Hotar being *idam te somyam madhu* (8, 54, 8), that of the Brâhmaṇâchchhamṣi, *indra tva vṛiṣabham vayam* (3, 40, 1)?

When the other (priests) repeat verses addressed to different deities, how do they concern Indra? For the Yâjyâ of the Maitrâvaruṇa is *mitram vayam havâmahe* (1, 23, 4), "we invoke Mitra;" but in its words *varuṇam somapîtaye* i.e. "we call Varuṇa to the Soma beverage;" there is an allusion to Indra; for whatever word refers to "drinking", hints at Indra, and pleases him.

The Yâjyâ of the Potar is, *Maruto yasa hi kṣaye* (1, 86, 1); its words *sa sugopâtamo janaḥ* i.e. "he is the best protector," allude to Indra; for Indra is the *gopâ*, which is a characteristic of Indra. Thus he pleases Indra.

The Yâjyâ of the Neṣṭar is, *agne patnîr iḥâ vahâ* (1, 22, 9); in its words, *trastîram somapîtaye*, [395] there is an allusion to Indra;

<sup>3</sup> The hymns mentioned for the morning and evening libations contain each nine, that mentioned for the midday libation ten verses.

<sup>4</sup> These Yâjyâs are at each libation seven in number, and repeated successively by the so called 'seven Hotars' (Hotar, Maitrâvaruṇa, Brâhmaṇâchchhamṣi, Potar, Neṣṭar Agnidhra, and Aechhâvâka) when the Chamasa Adhvaryu or cup-bearers, are holding up the cups filled with Soma. As often as one of them has repeated his Yâjyâ, libations from seven cups are thrown at the same time in the fire. The rest is to be drunk by them.

for Indra is *Tvaṣṭar*, which is a characteristic of Indra. Thus he pleases him.

The *Yājyâ* of the *Agnīdhra* is, *Ukṣānnāya* (8, 43, 11); in its words *Soma priṣṭhāya vedhase*, there is an allusion to Indra; for Indra is *Vedhās* (striker, beater) which is a characteristic of Indra. Thus he pleases him.

The verse of the *Achchhāvāka*, which is directly addressed to Indra, is complete, *viz* : *prātaryāvabhir* (8, 38, 7), (for in the last part of it there is the term *Indrāgnī*). Thus all these verses refer to Indra. Though there are different deities mentioned (in them) (such as *Mitra*, *Varuṇa*, &c.) the sacrificer does not satisfy other deities (alone). The verses being in the *Gāyatrī* metre, and this being sacred to *Agni*, sacrificer gains, by means of these verses, the favour of three deities, *i. e.* *Indra*, the *nānādevatās* or different deities, and *Agni*.

#### 11.

(The hymn to be repeated over the *Soma* cups being lifted, and the *Pras-thita Yājyās* at the midday libation.)

At the midday libation, when the *Soma* cups are being lifted, the *Hotar* repeats, *Asāvi devam gorichīkam* (7, 21. 1.). This hymn contains the words, *vriṣan*, *pita*, *suta*, *mad*; its verses are complete in form and addressed to *Indra*. For the sacrifice belongs to *Indra*. The verses are in the *Triṣṭubh* metre; for this metre is appropriate to the midday libation. They say, if the term *mad* "to be drunk" is only appropriate to the third libation, why do they recite such verses (containing this term) at the midday libation as *Anuvākyās* and *Yājyās*? The gods get drunk, as it were, at the midday libation, and are then consequently at the third libation in a state of [396] complete drunkenness. Thence he repeats verses containing the term *mad* as *Anuvākyās* and *Yājyās* at the midday libation.

At the midday libation all the priests repeat *Yājyās* addressed to *Indra* by his very name (for the *Soma* drops) which are in readiness. Some (the *Hotar*, *Maitravaruṇa*, and *Brāhmaṇachchhamṣi*) make the *Yājyās* with verses containing (besides the name of *Indra*) the words, *abhi trid*. So the *Hotar* repeats, *piḍā somam abhi yam ugra tarda* (6, 17, 1); the *Maitravaruṇa*, *sa im pāhi ya rījishi* (6, 17, 2); and the *Brāhmaṇachchhamṣi*, *evā pāhi pratnathā* (6, 17, 3).

The *Yājyâ* of the *Potar* is, *arvāṅg ehi somakāmam* (1, 104, 9). The *Yājyâ* of the *Neṣṭar* is, *tavā yam somas tvam* (3, 35, 6). The *Yājyâ* of the *Achchhāvāka* is, *indrāya somaḥ pra divo vidānā* (3, 36, 2). The *Yājyâ* of the *Agnīdhra* is, *āpūrnô asya kalāsaḥ svāhā* (3, 32, 15).

\* These three verses contain forms of the verb *trid* (Lat. *trudero*) "to injure, to kill," with the preposition *abhi*.



Among these verses there are those containing the words *abhi trid*. For Indra once did conquer at the morning libation; but by means of these verses he broke down the barriers and made himself master (*abhi triṇat*) of the midday libation. Thence these verses.

## 12.

(*The hymn and the Prasthita Yâjyâs at the evening libation.*)

At the third libation the Hotar repeats at the time when the Soma cups are being lifted, the hymn *ihopayâta śavasô napâtaḥ* (4, 35, 1). Its verses which are complete in form, are addressed to Indra, and belong to the Ribhus, contain the words *vriṣan*, *pîta*, [397] *suta mad*. They ask, Why is the Pavamâna Stotra at the evening libation called Arbhava, though they do not sing Ribhu verses? (The answer is) Prajâpati, the father, when transforming the Ribhus who were mortals, into immortals, gave them a share in the evening libation. Thence they do not sing Ribhu verses, but they call the Pavamâna Stotra Arbhava.

One (great Rîṣi) asked about the application of metres, *viz.* for what reason does he use the Triṣṭubh metre at the third libation, whilst the appropriate metre for this libation is Jagatî, as well as the Gâyatrî that for the morning, and the Triṣṭubh for the midday libation? One ought to say (in reply), At the third libation the Soma juice is done; but if they use a sparkling (*śukriyam*) metre as the Triṣṭubh, the juice of which is not done, then they provide the (third) libation with juice (liquor). Then he makes Indra participate in this libation also. One says, Why, since the third libation belongs to Indra and the Ribhus, and the Hotar alone makes the Yâjyâs for the Soma which are in readiness (*prasthita*) with an Indra-Ribhu verse, at the third libation, do the other Hotri-priests use verses addressed to various other deities for their Yâjyâs? In the Yâjyâ of the Hotar, *ribhubhir vajadbhiḥ samukṣitam* (not in the Rigveda) the Ribhus are mentioned, but in the Yâjyâs of the other priests they are only hinted at.

The Maitrâvaruṇa repeats, *indrâvaruṇa sutapâvimam sutam* (6, 68, 10); in the words, *yuvo ratho adhvaram devavîtaye*, there is a plurality (in the words *devavîtaye* = *devâṇâm vîtaye*, *i.e.* for the enjoyment of the gods) which is a characteristic of the Ribhus.

The Brâhmanâchchhamṣi repeats the verse, *indraścha somam pibatam* (4, 50, 10); in its words, *viśantu indavaḥ*, *i. e.* "may the drops come," a [398] plurality is expressed, which is a characteristic of the Ribhus.

The Yājyâ of the Potar is, *â vo vahantu saptayo* (1, 85, 6); in its words, *raghu atvānaḥ prajigāta bāhubhir* there is a plurality (these three words are in the plural) expressed, which is the characteristic of the Ribhus.

The Yājyâ of the Neṣṭar is, *ameva naḥ suhāvâ* (2, 36, 3), in it the word *gantana* "go ye!" expresses a plurality.

The Yājyâ of the Achchhāvāka is, *indrāviṣṇu pibatam madhvo* (6, 69, 7); its words, *â vām amdhāmsi madirānī* expresses a plurality.

The Yājyâ of the Agnīdhra is, *imam stomam arhate* (1, 94, 1); in its words *ratham iva saṁmahemâ* (this is first person plural) there is a plurality expressed.

In this way all these verses become Aindra—Arbhavah. By repeating verses being (apparently) addressed to various deities, he pleases other deities (also), save Indra and the Ribhus. They are the conquerors of the *jagat i. e.* world; therefore the Jagatī metre is required for the evening libation, to make it successful.

### 13.

(On the relationship of those Hotars who have to repeat a Śastra to those who have none. How the Śastras of the minor Hotri-priests are supplied at the evening libation.)

Some one asks, Some of the duties of the Hotri-priests being performed without Śastra,<sup>6</sup> some with Śastra, how are then all these ceremonies (as it [399] should be) provided with their respective Śastras, and consequently equal and complete? (The answer is) They call the performance (*i. e.* the repetition of Yājyās) of those (Hotris) who like the Potar, Neṣṭar, and Agnīdhra, have no Śastra (to repeat) *Hotrâ* (also), on account of their reciting their (respective) verses along with (the other Hotri-priests, such as the Hotar, Maitrāvaruṇa &c. who repeat proper Śastras). In this way they are equal. But in the fact that some Hotri-priests perform their duties with Śastras, others without Śastras, lies their inequality. Thus (both kinds of Hotri performances) become provided with Śastras, equalised and successful (for the Yājyās of all seven Hotri-priests are repeated one after the other).

---

<sup>6</sup> Besides the Hotar only the Maitrāvaruṇa, Brāhmaṇachhāmsi, and Achhāvāka repeat Śastras; the others, such as the Potar, &c. do not do it. But the former repeat them at the Agnishtoma, only at the morning and midday libations.

Now the Hotṛi-priests (Maitrâvaruṇa, Brâhmaṇâchchhamṣi, Achchhâvâka) repeat Śastras at the morning and midday libations only, in what way is this duty performed at the third libation? One ought to answer, in this way, that they (these three priests just mentioned) repeat at the mid-day libation two hymns each. Some one may ask, In what way do the Hotṛi-priests (who properly speaking repeat one Śastra only) repeat two Śastras, as many as the (chief) Hotar<sup>7</sup> does? One ought to answer, Their Yâjyâs are addressed to two deities.

## 14.

**[400]** (*How the Śastras of the Agnîdhra, Potar and Neṣtar are supplied. On the two Praiṣas to the Potar and Neṣtar. On the additional verse of the Achchhâvâka. How the Praiṣa formula, hotâ yakṣat, is applicable to the Potar, Neṣtar, and Agnidhra. The Praiṣa for the chanters. The Praiṣa for the Achchhâvâka. On the inequality of the the deities of the Śastras and Stotriyas of the evening libation.*)

Some one asks further. If there are the performances of three Hotṛi-priests only provided with a Śastra, how are these Śastras supplied for the performances of the others (the three remaining Hotṛi-priests)? (The answer is) The Ajyam is the Śastra for the Yâjyâ repeated by the Agnîdhra; the Marutvatiya that one for the Potar's Yâjyâ; the Vaiśvadevam that one for the Neṣtar's. These Yâjyâs have the characteristic sign of the respective Śastra.<sup>7</sup>

Some one asks further, If the other Hotṛi-priests are requested only once (to repeat their Śastras), why are the Potar and Neṣtar requested twice?

(Regarding this the following story is reported). At the time when the Gâyatri having assumed the shape of an eagle, abstracted the Soma (from heaven), Indra (out of anger) cut off from these (three) Hotṛi-priests (Agnidhra, Potar and Neṣtar) their Śastras, and transferred them to the Hotar, saying, "Do not call me, you are quite ignorant of it." The gods said, "Let us give more strength to the performances of these two Hotṛi-priests (Potar and Neṣtar) through Speech (by requesting them once

<sup>7</sup> The Agnîdhra addresses the Yâjyâ to Agni, to whom the Ajya Śastra belongs; the Potar to the Marutas, to whom the Marutvatiya Śastra belongs, and the Neṣtar to the Viśvedevas, to whom the Vaiśvadeva Śastra belongs.

<sup>7</sup> The Hotar repeats at the morning libation the Ajya and Pra-uga Śastra, at the midday libation the Marutvatiya and Niṣkevalya Śastra, and at the third libation the Vaiśvadeva and Agnimâruta Śastra.

The Agnidhra addresses the Yâjyâ to Agni, to whom the Ajya Śastra belongs; the Potar to the Marutas, to whom the Marutvatiya Śastra belongs, and the Neṣtar to the Viśvedevas, to whom the Vaiśvadeva Śastra belongs.

**[401]** more than the others). Thence come the two requests (for Neṣṭar and Potar). The performance of the Agnīdhra was strengthened by one additional verse to his Yājyā; therefore his Yājyās are supernumerary by one verse.

Some one asks, When the Maitrāvaruṇa calls upon the Hotar by the words, “may the Hotar repeat the Yājyā! may the Hotar repeat the Yājyā!” why does he call upon those who are no Hotras, but only the repeaters of Hotṛi verses, by the same words, “may the Hotar repeat the Yājyā?” (The answer is) The Hotar is life, and all the (other) sacrificial priests are life also. The meaning (of the formula “may the Hotar repeat his Yājyā,” is) “may the life repeat the Yājyā, may the life repeat the Yājyā!”

If some one asks further, Are there requests for the Udgātṛi priests (to chant)? One should answer, Yes, there are. For if all (the priests) are ordered to do their respective duties, then the Maitrāvaruṇa, after having muttered with a low voice (a mantra), says, “praise ye!”<sup>9</sup> These are the summons for the Udgātṛi priests.

Some one asks, Has the Achchhāvāka any preference (to the other priests)?<sup>9</sup> The answer is, Yes, he has; for the Adhvaryu says to him, “Achchhāvāka, speak what you have to speak (and no more)!”

Some one asks, Why are at the evening libation the Stotriya and Anurūpa verses addressed to Agni, whilst the Maitrāvaruṇa at that time repeats an Indra-Varuṇa Śastra? (The answer is) The Devas turned the Asuras out of the Śastras by means of Agni as their mouth. Therefore the Stotriya and Anurūpa are addressed to Agni.

**[402]** Some one asks, Why are both the Stotriya and Anurūpa of the singers devoted to Indra at the evening libation, whilst the Śastram repeated by the Brāhmaṇachchhamṣi is addressed to Indra and Bṛihaspati, and that of the Achchhāvāka to Indra and Viṣṇu? (The answer is) Indra turned the Asuras out from the Śastras (of which they had got hold) and defeated them. He said to the Devas, “Which (from among you) follows me?,” They said, “I, I,<sup>10</sup> (we will follow),” and thus the Devas followed. But on account of Indra having first defeated (the Asuras) the Stotriya and Anurūpa of the singers (they precede the Shastram) are addressed to Indra. And on account of the other deities having said, “I, I, (will follow)” and (actually) followed, both the Brāhmaṇachchhamṣi and Achchhāvāka repeated hymns addressed to several deities.

<sup>9</sup> See note to 5, 34.

<sup>9</sup> That is, is there anything exceptional to be seen in the performance of his duties? This refers to the peculiar praiṣa given to him, which is mentioned in the context. See also Aśv. Śr. S. 5, 7.

<sup>10</sup> Viṣṇu and Bṛihaspati.

## 15.

(On the *Jagatî* hymns addressed to Indra at the evening libation. On the hymn of the *Achchhâvâka*. The concluding verses of the *Maitrâvaruṇa Brâhmaṇachchhamṣi*, and *Achchhâvâka*. The last four syllables of the last *Śastra* of the Soma day to be repeated twice.)

Some one asks further, For what reason do they repeat at the commencement of the evening libation hymns addressed to Indra, and composed in the *Jagatî* metre, whereas the evening libation belongs to the *Viśvedevas*? (The answer is) Having got hold of Indra (*ārabhya* having commenced with him) by means of these (hymns), they proceed to act, being sure of success). The *Jagatî* metre is used because the evening libation belongs to the *Jagatî*, implying a desire for this world (*Jagat*); and any metre [403] which is used after (this commencement) becomes related to the *Jagatî* (*jagat*) if, at the beginning of the evening libation, hymns in the *Jagatî* metre are repeated which are addressed to Indra.

At the end (of the *Śastra*) the *Achchhâvâka* repeats a hymn in the *Triṣṭubh* metre, *saṁvâm karmanâ* (6, 69, 1.) The word *karma* (ceremony) alludes only to the praise of drinking (the Soma).<sup>11</sup> In the words *saṁ iṣâ* the word *iṣâ* means food; it (serves) for obtaining food (by means of this mantra.) (By the words of the last *pâda*) "both (Indra and *Viṣṇu*) carry us through on safe paths," he pronounces every day<sup>12</sup> something relating to welfare.

Some one asks, Why do they conclude the evening libation by *Triṣṭubhs*, if properly the *Jagatî* metre should be used at it? *Triṣṭubh* is strength; (by repeating at the end *Triṣṭubhs*) the priests (who are at the *Sattras* the sacrificers themselves) get finally possessed of strength.

The concluding verses of the *Maitrâvaruṇa* is, *iyam Indram Varuṇam* (7, 84, 5.) That of the *Brâhmaṇachchhamṣi* is, *Bṛihaspatir na paripâtu* (10, 42, 11.) That of the *Achchhâvâka* is, *ubhâ jigyathur* (6, 69, 8.) For "both (Indra and *Viṣṇu*) had been victorious *jigyathur*, i. e., they had not sustained any defeat, neither of them was defeated"<sup>13</sup>

<sup>11</sup> The word alluded to is, *panîtya*, which is traced to a root *pan*=*pan* to praise; but it hardly can mean "praising" in general. It refers, as *Sâyana* justly remarks, to the "drinking of the Soma juice." In the fifth verse of the hymn in question, we have the word *panuyîtya*, which is the same as *panîtya*, where the words *indraviṣṇuḥ tat panuyîtyam vâm* evidently mean, "this is your praise for having drunk the Soma."

<sup>12</sup> The hymn is to be repeated every day on the Soma sacrifices which last for several days.

<sup>13</sup> This is a paraphrase by the author of the *Brâhmaṇam* of the first half of the verse 6, 69, 8 (*ubhâ jigyathur*.) It differs little from the original, and retains most of the terms

[404] In the words *indraś cha Viṣṇo yaś apaspridhethām*<sup>14</sup> (there is hinted) that Indra and Viṣṇu fought with the Asuras. After they had defeated them, they said to them, "Let us divide!" The Asuras accepted the offer. Indra then said, "All through which Viṣṇu makes his three steps is ours, the other part is yours." Then Indra stepped through these (three worlds), then over the Vedas, and (lastly) over Vâch.

They ask, What is meant by the "*sahasram*,"<sup>15</sup> a thousand? One should say in reply, these worlds, the Vedas, and Vâch. The Achhhâvâka repeats twice the (last) word *airayethâm*, i.e., "you both (Indra and Viṣṇu) strode," at the Ukthya sacrifice; for the part (repeated) by the Achhhâvâka, is the last in it; whereas at the Agniṣṭoma and Atirâtra the Hotar (repeats twice the four last syllables of his Śastra); for (the part recited by him) is in these [405] sacrifices, the last. At the Śoṣaśi there it is questionable whether or not (the last four syllables) are to be repeated twice. They say, He ought to repeat them twice, for why should he repeat them twice on the other days, and not on this one? Therefore he should repeat them twice (also at the Śoṣaśi.)

## 16.

*(Why the Achhhâvâka at the end of his Śilpa-Śastra does not recite verses addressed to Narâśaṃsa.)*

Some one further asks, Why does the Achhhâvâka at the end, in his Śilpas, recite verses not addressed to Narâśaṃsa at the third libation, although this libation belongs to Narâśaṃsa? The Narâśaṃsa part represents the change (of the semen into the human form); for the semen becomes by and by somewhat changed; that which then has undergone the

of the verse without giving any substitute for them. This shows, that many verses and turns of speech in the mantras were perfectly intelligible to the author of the Brâhmaṇas. The only difference of the paraphrase from the original is the substitution of *tayoḥ* for *enoḥ*, which is an uncommon dual form (gen.) of a demonstrative form; one ought to expect *enayoḥ*.

<sup>14</sup> This is the second half of the last verse of 6, 69, 8, which concludes the hymn repeated by the Achhhâvâka. The author of the Brâhmaṇam explains it also by reporting a story to which he thinks the contents of this latter half allude. However he does not quite overlook the meaning of several terms; *apaspridhetâm* he explains by *yuyudhâte*, "they two have fought," and *vayirayethâm* by *vichakrame*, "he stepped through." The meaning of these words is certainly correct; but the grammatical structure is misunderstood by our author; *airayethâm* is taken by him as a singular, though it is a dual, for it refers to both Indra and Viṣṇu, and not to Viṣṇu alone.

<sup>15</sup> In the last pada of the last verse *ubhâ jigyathur*. There the words *tredhâ sahasram vi tad airayethâm* mean "ye both strode thrice through this thousand." The "thousand" refers to the booty they made in the battle, or perhaps to the "thousand cows" given as reward at great sacrifices.

change becomes the *prajâtam* (the proper form.)<sup>16</sup> Or the *Narâsâm* is a soft and loose metre, as it were ; and the *Achchhâvâka* is the last reciter ; therefore (it cannot be used), for (the priests think) We must put the end in a firm place for obtaining stability. Therefore the *Achhâvâka* does not repeat at the end, in his *Śilpas*, verses referring to *Narâsâmsa*.<sup>17</sup>

[406]

## FOURTH CHAPTER.

(*The Sâmpâtâ hymns. The Vâ lakhilyas. The Dûrohaṇam.*)

## 17.

(See 6, 5.)

When they make at Soma sacrifices, which require several days for their performance (*ahînas*) in order to make them continuous, at the morning libation, the singing verse (*Stotriya*) of the following day, the *Anurûpa* of the preceding day, it is just the same as with the performance of a Soma sacrifice which lasts for one day only (*ekâha*.) For just as the (three) libations of the one day's Soma sacrifice are connected with each other, in the same way are the days of a Soma sacrifice which lasts for several days connected with one another. The reason that they make at the morning libation, the singing verse (*Stotriya*) of the following day, the *Anurûpa* of the preceding day, is to make the days during which the sacrifice lasts one continuous series. Thus they make the days of the *Ahîna* sacrifices one continuous whole.

The Gods and *Riṣis* considered. Let us make the sacrifice continuous by equalising (its several days.) They then saw this equality (of the several parts) of the sacrifice, *viz.* the same *Pragâthas*, the same *Pratipads* (beginning triplets), the same hymns. For *Indra* walks in the sacrifice on the first as well as on the following day, just as one who has occupied a house. (The Soma days are thus equalised) in order to have (always) *Indra* (present.)

---

" Sây. says, "For seven nights after the coition the semen has the form of a bubble a fortnight after it is changed into a ball, which, if the change has been completed, assumes the proper (human or animal) form." The *Narâsâmsam* is the state of transition for the semen from the bubble into the ball form. Therefore in order not to disturb and stop the course of this change, no verses, referring to the imperfect state, can be repeated.

<sup>17</sup> See on them 6, 32.

## 18.

*On the Sāmpāta hymn. The counter-Sāmpāta hymns. On a peculiarity in the use of the hymn of the Achchhāvāka.*

Viśvāmitra saw for the first time (the so-called) [407] Sāmpāta hymns; but Vāmadeva made those seen by Viśvāmitra known to the public (*āsrijata*). These are the following: *evā tvām indra* (4, 19); *yanna indro* (4, 22); *kathā mahām avridhat* (4, 23). He went at once after them (*samapatat*) and taught them his disciples.<sup>1</sup> Thence they are called *Sāmpātas*.

Viśvāmitra then looked after them, saying, "The Sāmpāta hymns which I saw, have been made public\* by Vāmadeva; I will counteract these Sāmpātas by the publication of other hymns which are like them. Thus he made known as counterparts the following hymns: *sadyô ha jāto vṛṣabhaḥ* (3, 48); *indrah pūrbhid ātirad* (3, 34); *imāmā śu prabhṛitim* (3, 36); *ichhanti tvā somyāsaḥ sakhāyaḥ* (3, 30); *śāsad vahnir duhitur* (3, 31); *abhi taṣṭeva didhayô manīṣām* (3, 38); (Other Sāmpāta hymns are), the hymn of Bharadvāja, *ya eka id dhavyas* (6, 22); those of Vasiṣṭha, *yas tigmaśṛṅgo vṛṣabho na bhîma* (7, 19), *ud u brahmânairata* (7, 23); and that of Nodhâs *asmâ id u pratavase* (1, 61).

These Hotri-priests (Maitrāvaruṇa, Brahmanâchhamsi, and Achchhāvāka) after having recited at the morning libation of the six days' sacrifice the Stotriya verses, repeat at the midday libation the hymns or the several days' sacrifices (*ahîna*). These hymns are *â satyo yātu maghavan* (4, 16); for the Maitrāvaruṇa (by whom it is to be repeated) is endowed with *satya*, i. e. truth. The Brāhmanâchhamsi repeats, *asma id u pratavase* (1, 61); for in this hymn there occur the words *indrâya brahmânâ râtatama* (in the fourth pada of the first verse), and *Indra brahmâni Gotamâso ak-rann* (verse 16), i. e. the Gotamas have made the prayers, Indra! in which the word "brahma" is mentioned. The Achchhāvāka [408] repeats *śāsad vahnir* (3, 31), in which the words *janayanta vahnim* (verse 2) occur; for he is the *Vahni* (guide).

Some one asks, Why does the Achchhāvāka repeat in both kinds of days\* (of the Gavâm ayanam sacrifice) this Vahni hymn in those days which stand by themselves (*parāñchi*) as well as those which form

<sup>1</sup> This is the meaning of the expression *samapatat*.

<sup>2</sup> The term is *sri* to emit.

<sup>3</sup> This refers to two classes of days of which a great Sattrâ consists, i. e. single days, which only once occur in the course of the session, and regular periods of the same length which follow one another. See page 279.



regular periods (of six days) one following the other (*abhyâvartî*)? The answer is, the Bahvîcha (Rigveda) priest (*i.e.* one of the Hotris) is endowed with power, and the Vahni hymn leads (*vahati*); for the Vahni (guide horse) draws the beams to which he is yoked. Therefore the Achchhâvâka repeats the Vahni hymns in both classes of days.

These Ahîna<sup>4</sup> hymns are required during the five days (in the Gavâm ayanam), *viz.* on the Chaturviṃśa, Abhijit, Viṣuvat, Viśvajit and Mahâvrata days; for these (five) days (though the performance of each lasts for one day only) are *ahînas*, for nothing is left out (*na-hîyate*)<sup>5</sup> in them; they (further) "stand aloof" and do not re-occur in the other turn (as is the case with the Śaḷahas). Thence the Hotri-priests repeat on these (five) days the Ahîna Sûktas. When they repeat them, then they think, "may we obtain the heaven-worlds undiminished, in their full forms and integrity." When they repeat them, they call hither Indra by them, just as one calls a bullock to a cow. They repeat them for making uninterrupted the series of sacrificial days. Thus they make them uninterrupted.

#### [409] 19.

(On what days, in what order, and by whom the Sâmpâta hymns are to be repeated. The Avapana hymns.)

Thereupon the Maitriâvaruṇa repeats on every day (of the Śaḷaha, but not on those five days mentioned) one of the three Sâmpâtas, inverting their order<sup>6</sup> (in the second three days' performance of the Śaḷaha). On the first day he repeats *evâ tvâm indra*; on the second, *yanna indro jujuse*; and on the third, *kathâ mahâm avridhat*.

The Brâhmaṇâchchhamṣi repeats three Sâmpâta hymns, every day one, inverting their order (in the second three days performance), *viz.* *pârbbhid âtirad* on the first day; *eka id dhavyas* on the second; and *yas tigmas-rimgo*, on the third day.

In the same manner the Achchhâvâka repeat three Sâmpâtas, every day one, *viz.* *imâm â su prabhritim* on the first day, *ichhanti tvâ somyâsaḥ* on the second day, and *śâsad vahni* on the third day.

These three (for there are every day three to be repeated) and nine (nine is the number of all taken together) hymns, to be recited day after day, make twelve in all. For the year consists of twelve months, Prajâpati is

<sup>4</sup> The Sâmpâtas which are mentioned here are meant.

<sup>5</sup> They are here called *ahînas* from a purely etymological reason. Strictly speaking, they are *aikahikas*.

<sup>6</sup> This is the real meaning of the term *viparyâsam*. In the second Tryaha of the Śaḷaha, the hymn which was the first in the first Tryaha is made the last, and the last the first.

the year, the sacrifice is Prajâpati. They obtained thus this sacrifice, which is Prajâpati, who is the year, and they place thus every day's performance in the sacrifice, in Prajapati, and in the year.

Between these hymns they ought to insert the Virâj verses by Vimada, to be recited without Nyûnkha on the fourth, the Pañkti verses on the fifth, and the Paruchhepa verses on the sixth day. Then on the [410] days when the Mahâstomas are required (the Chhandomâ days) the Maitrâvaruṇa inserts *ko adya naryo devakâma* (4, 25, 1), the Brahmanâchchhaṁsi, *vanena vâyo nyadhâyi* (10, 29, 1), and the Achchhâvâka, *âyâhy arvâṅg upa* (3, 43, 1). These are the Avapana hymns (intercalary hymns), by means of which the Gods and Rîṣis conquered the heaven-world, and by means of which the sacrificers conquer heaven (also).

## 20.

(On the hymns repeated by the Maitrâvaruṇa, &c. which precede the Sampâtas).

Before the (Ahîna) hymns are repeated, the Maitrâvaruṇa repeats every day, *sadyo ha jîto vriṣabhah* (3, 48). This hymn leads to heaven ; for by means of this hymn the Gods conquered the heavenly world, and the Rîṣis did the same ; by means of it the sacrificers also conquer the heavenly world. This is a Viśvâmitra hymn, for Viśvâmitra (all-friend) was the friend of all ; therefore all will be friendly towards him who has this knowledge, if the Maitrâvaruṇa knowing this repeats (this hymn) every day before the Ahîna Sûktas. This hymn (*sadyo ha*) contains the word "bull," and is therefore *apaśumat* (having cattle), serving for obtaining cattle. It consists of five verses ; five-hood comprises five feet, and five-hood is food for obtaining (which this hymn is useful). The Brâhmanâchchhaṁsi repeats every day the Brahmâ hymn, which is complete, *ud u brahmâṇy airata* (7, 23).

This hymn leads to heaven ; by means of it the Gods conquered the heavenly world, and the Rîṣis did the same ; by means of it the sacrificers conquered the heavenly world. It is a Vasiṣṭha hymn ; by means of it Vasiṣṭha obtained Indra's favour, and conquered the highest world. He who has such a [411] knowledge, obtains Indra's favour, and conquers the highest world. It consists of six verses ; for there are six seasons ; in order to gain the seasons (*ṛitus*), he repeats it after the Sampâtas. For the sacrificers have thus a firm footing in this world, in order to reach the heavenly world (after death).

The Achchhâvâka repeats every day, *abhi taṣṭeva dîdhayâ* (3, 38). This hymn contains the characteristic *abhi* (towards) in order to establish a connection (with the other world). Its words "*abhi priyâni marmṛisat parâni*," mean that the other days (those in the other world) are lovely, and that they are seizing them (securing them). Beyond (*para*) this world is the heaven-world, to which he thus alludes.

When repeating the words, *kavimrichchhâmi samdrise sumedhâ*, i. e. "I wish to see the wise prophets," he means by *kavis* the departed Rîṣis. This hymn (*abhi taṣṭeva*) is a Viśvâmitra hymn, for Viśvâmitra was friend to all; every one will be friendly to him who has this knowledge.

He repeats this hymn which belongs to Prajâpati, though his name is not expressly mentioned (*aniruktam* only hinted at) in it. For Prajâpati cannot be expressed in words. (This is done) in order to obtain (communion with) him. In this hymn the name "Indra" is once mentioned<sup>7</sup>; but this is only for the purpose of preserving the Indra form of the sacrifice (to Indra chiefly belongs the sacrifice). It consist of ten verses. For the Virâj consists of ten syllables, and the Virâj is food; it serves for obtaining food. As regards the number ten (of these) verses, it is to be remarked that there are ten vital airs. The sacrificers thus obtain the vital airs, and connect them with one another.

[412] The Achchhâvâka repeats this hymn after the Sâmpâtas in order to secure the heavenly world (for the sacrificers), whilst the sacrificers move in this world.

## 21.

(*The Kadvat hymns.*<sup>8</sup> *The Triṣṭubhs*).

The beginning Pragâthas of every day are the *kadvantas* (containing the interrogative pronoun *kas* who?) viz. *kas tam Indra* (7, 32, 14-15), *kannvayo* (8, 3, 13-14), *kad â nu asya* (8, 55, 9-10). By *kas* i. e., who? Prajâpati is meant; these Kadvantaḥ Pragâthas are suitable for obtaining

<sup>7</sup> In the last verse (3, 38, 10); but several times alluded to by the name "*vriṣabha*," i. e. bull.

<sup>8</sup> The Śāstras of the minor Hotri-priests being at the Dvâdasâha and Sattras rather complicated, I here give some hints as to the order of their several parts. At the midday libation, after the Hotar has finished his two Śāstras, the Maitrâvaruṇa, Brâhmaṇâchhamṣi, and Achchhâvâka repeat one after the other the several parts of their Śāstras in the following order: (1) Stotriya and Anûrupa. (2) One of the three Triṣṭubh verses as introductory to the Ahina hymns and the Kadvantaḥ Pragâthas. (3) The Ahina hymns, of which each has to repeat two, viz. the Maitrâvaruṇa *sadyo ha jâta*, the Brâhmaṇâchhamṣi *asmâ id u pra tavase*, and the Achchhâvâka *śâsad vahnir*; and further, the

Prajapati. *Kam* (old neuter form of *kas*) signifies food ; the *kadvantas* therefore serve for obtaining food. For the sacrificers are every day joined to the *Ahina* hymns, which become (by containing the term *kam* i. e. happy) propitiated. They make by means of the *kadvad* *Pragâthas* propitiation (for the sacrificers). When thus propitiated, these (*Ahina* hymns) become (a source of) happiness for them (the sacrificers) and thus carry them up to the celestial world.

[413] They ought to repeat the *Triṣṭubhs* as the beginning of the (*Ahina*) hymns. Some repeat them before these *Pragâthas*, calling them (these *Triṣṭubhs*) *Dhâyyâs*. But in this way one should not proceed. For the *Hotar* is the ruler, and the performances of the minor *Hotri*-priests are the subjects. In this way (by repeating *Dhâyyâs* which ought to be repeated by the *Hotar* alone) they would make the subject revolt against his ruler, which would be a breach of the oath of allegiance.<sup>9</sup>

(The repetition of these *Triṣṭubhs* by the minor *Hotri*-priests is, however, necessary). He ought to know, "these *Triṣṭubhs* are the helm (*pratipad*) of my hymns," just as (one requires a helm) if crossing the sea. For those who perform a session lasting for a year or the *Dvâdaśâha*, are floating like those who cross the sea. Just as those who wish to land on the shore enter a ship having plenty of provisions,<sup>10</sup> in the same manner the sacrificers should enter (i.e., begin with) these *Triṣṭubhs*. For if this metre, which is the strongest, has made the sacrificer go to heaven, he does not return (to the earth). But he does not repeat (at the beginning) of the several *Triṣṭubhs* the call *soṃśaroms*; for the metre must run in one and the same strain (without any interruption, through the call *soṃśarom*, in order to be successful).

The *Hotar* further ought to think, I will not make the *Dhâyyâs*, if they recite those (*Triṣṭubhs*), and further, let us use as a conveyance the hymns with their well known introductory verses (the *Triṣṭubhs*). If they then repeat these verses (*Triṣṭubhs*), they [214] call hither by them *Indra*, just as a bullock is called to the cow. If they repeat them,

---

*Maitrâvaruna a satya yâtu*, the *Brâhmanâchhamṣi*, *u du brahmanî*, and the *Achchhāvâka abhi taṣṭeva* (see the reference in 6, 18) (4) The three *Kadvantah* *Pragâtha*, of which each has to repeat one. (5) The *Śampâta* hymns, see 6, 19. The principal parts of the *Sastras* of the minor *Hotri*-priests are only the two latter, the hymns and verses which precede being regarded only as intercalary (*āvapana*) ; thence the *Kadvantah* *Pragâthas* are here called *drambhaṇiya*, i. e. beginning *Pragâthas*. See on the whole *Asval. Śr.* 8, 7, 4.

<sup>9</sup> This is the translation of *pāpa vasyasam*.

<sup>10</sup> Thus *Sây.* explains, *Sairarati*, tracing it to *ira=annam*. But I doubt the correctness of this explanation ; very likely the front of the ship which might have had the form of a plough (*sira*) is to be understood.

it is for making\* the sacrificial days continuous. Thus they make the sacrificial days continuous.

## 22.

(The *Trīṣṭubhs* of the minor *Hotris*.)

The *Maitrāvaruṇa* repeats every day before the hymns (the *Trīṣṭubh*) *apa prācha Indra* (10, 131, 1), in which the idea of safety is expressed ; in the words, "Drive away from round about us all enemies : drive them away, O conqueror ! May they be in the south or north, prostrate (all) O hero ! that we may enjoy thy far-extended shelter !" For he (the *Maitrāvaruṇa*) wishes to be in safety (thence he has to repeat this verse).

The *Brāhmanāchchhamṣi* repeats every day *Brahmāna te brahmayujā* (3, 35, 4). By the word *yunajmi*, "I join," the idea of "joining" is intimated ; for the sacrificial days are joined, which is the characteristic of (all) sacrifices which last for a series of days (the *Ahīnas*).

The *Achchhāvāka* repeats every day, *urum nō lokam anuneshi* (6. 47, 8). For the term *anu* "after," implies the idea of going (after), as it were, which is a characteristic of the *Ahina* sacrifices (for one day follows the other) ; whereas *neṣi* is a characteristic of a six monthly period of a sacrificial session.

These verses are recited every day, as well as the concluding<sup>11</sup> verses, which are every day the same.

*Indra* is the occupant of their (of the sacrificer's) house, he is at their sacrifice. Just as the bull goes [415] to the cow, and the cow to her well-known stable, so does *Indra* go to the sacrifice. He ought not to conclude the *Ahina* with the verse *śunam havema* (3, 30, 22) ; for the king loses his kingdom if he calls him who becomes his enemy (rival).

## 23.

*How to join and disconnect the Ahīnas.*

There is a joining as well as a disconnecting of the *Ahina* sacrifice. By the mantra *vy antarikṣam atirad* (8, 14, 7-9) the *Brāhmanāchchhamṣi* joins the *Ahīnas* (at the morning libation) ; by *eved Indra* (7. 23, 6) he dissolves them (at the midday libation).

<sup>11</sup> These are according to Say., *nu śrūta indra* (4, 16, 21) repeated by the *Maitrāvaruṇa* ; *eved indram* (7, 23, 6) repeated by the *Brāhmanāchchhamṣi* ; and *nūnam sād te* (2, 11 22) repeated by the *Achchhāvāka*.

By the mantra *â ham sarasvativator* (8, 38, 10) the Achchhâvâka joins them, and by *nânam sâ te* (2, 11, 22) (he dissolves them).

By *te syâma deva Varuṇa* (7, 66, 9) the Maitrâvaruṇa (joins them), and by *nu ṣṭuta* (4, 16, 21) he dissolves them.<sup>12</sup>

He who knows how to join (at the morning libation) and to disconnect (at the midday libation) is enabled to spread the thread of the sacrificial days (Ahinas). Their (general) junction consists in their being joined on the Chaturviṃśa day; and their (general) disconnection in disconnecting them before the concluding Atirâtra (on the Mahâvrata) day. When the Hotri-priests would conclude on the Chaturviṃśa day with verses appropriate to the *Ekâhas*, then they would bring the sacrifice to a close, without performing the ceremonies referring to the Ahinas. When they would conclude with the concluding verses of the Ahina days, then the sacrificers [416] would be cut off, just as (a bullock) who is tired must be cut off, (from the rope, for he does not move). They ought to conclude with both the *Ekâha* and *Ahina* verses, just as a man setting out on a long journey takes from station to station fresh animals. Thence their sacrifice becomes connected, and they themselves (the sacrificers) find relaxation.

He ought not to overpraise the stoma (*i. e.* not to repeat more verses than the singers chant) at the two (first) libations by (more than) one or two verses. When the Stoma is overpraised with many verses, (*i. e.* more than two) then they become for the Hotar like extensive forests (through which he has to pass without a resting place). At the third libation (he ought to overpraise the stoma) with an unlimited number of verses. For the heavenly world has no limits. (This serves) for obtaining the celestial world. The Ahina sacrifice of him who with such a knowledge extends it, remains, if once commenced, undisturbed.

(*The nature of the Vâḷakhilya Śastra.* <sup>13</sup> *How to repeat it.*)

<sup>12</sup> The verbs *vimuñchati* as well as *yuñkte* are here used in an elliptical sense (उपलक्षनार्थे). To the former, *yuñkte*, and to the latter, *vimuñchati* is to be supplied, each thus implying its contrariety.

<sup>13</sup> The way of repeating the so called Vâḷakhilya Śastra, the text of which consists of the Vâḷakhilya verses, now arranged in eight hymns, is very artificial, and considered as the most difficult task to be achieved by a Hotri-priest. It is repeated in a manner similar to the repetition of the *Solasî Śastra* (see page 258). The most general term for the peculiar way of repeating both the Vâḷakhilya and *Solasî Śastras* is *vihâra*, that is, the dissecting of a verse by joining to each of its pādas, a pāda taken from another verse, and reciting then both parts in such a way as if they were forming only one verse. The way in which the Vâḷakhilyas are repeated is a modification of the *vihâra*. It is called *vyatimarśa*. This consists in a mutual transposition of the several pādas or half verses, or whole verses of the first and second Vâḷakhilya hymns, which are repeated in sets, always two being taken together. The first two are to be repeated pāda by

## 24.

The gods after having perceived the cows to be in the cavern,<sup>14</sup> wished to obtain them by means of a sacrifice. They obtained them by means of the sixth day.<sup>15</sup> They bored at the morning libation the cavern with the bore mantra (*nabhāka*). After having succeeded in making an opening, they loosened (the stones), and then, at the third libation, broke up the cavern by means of the Vālakhilya verses, with the Ekapadā as *vāchaḥ kūṭa*, which served as a weapon and drove the cows out. In this way the sacrificers bore the cavern at the morning libation by means of the Nabhāka, and make, by boring, its structure loose. Hence the Hotri-priests repeat at the morning libation the Nabhāka triplet. The Maitrāvaruṇa repeats, *yaḥ kakubho nidhāraya* (8, 41, 4-6); the Brāhmanāchchhamṣi, *pūrvīṣṭa indra* (8, 40, 9-11); the Achchhāvāka, *tā hi madhyam bharānām* (8, 40, 3-5).

pāda; the third and fourth by half verses; the fifth and sixth by whole verses (Āśv, Śr. S. 8. 2). The general rule for this transposition is expressed by Āśval पूर्वस्य प्रथमा-मुत्तरस्य द्वितीयोत्तरस्य प्रथमां पूर्वस्य द्वितीया i. e. he must join the first verse (or half verse or pāda, as the case may be) of the first hymn with the second verse of the following hymn, and then the first of the following hymn with the second of the first. Two such verses form then one Pragātha.

In order to better illustrate the way of transposition, I here subjoin an instance. The first verse of the first Vālakhilya hymn is as follows :

*Abhi pra vah surādhasam indram archa yathā vide-  
Yo jaritribhyo maghavā purīvasuḥ sahasreṇeva śikṣati*

The second verse of the second hymn is :

*Śatanika hetaya asya duṣṭarā indrasya samīṣo mahiḥ.  
Girir na bhujmā maghavastu pinvate yadiṁ suta amandiṣuḥ.*

If the several pādas of these two verses are to be mutually transposed, it is then done in the following way :

- (1) *Abhi pra vaḥ surādhasam indrasya samīṣo mahiḥ.  
Śatanika hetayo asya duṣṭarā indram archā yathā vidom.*
- (2) *Yo jaritribhyo maghavā purīvasar yadiṁ suta amandiṣuḥ.  
Girir na bhujmā maghavatsu pinvate sahasreṇa śikṣatom.*

At the end of the five first Pragātha verses an Ekapadā or verse containing one pāda only is added. Four of them belong to the performance of the tenth day. These are according to Āśval. (8, 2) : (1) *indra viśvasya gopatiḥ*; (2) *indra viśvasya bhūpatiḥ*; (3) *indra viśvasya chetati*; (4) *indra viśvasya rājati*. The fifth is from the Mahāvratā day, *sānvendro viśvam virajati*. These five Ekapadās are not joined to the Pragātha without a stop after the latter. (प्रगाथतिसु चानुपसंतान ऋगावानमेकपदः संसेत Āśv. 8, 2.)

The Pragātha with the Ekapadā belonging to it is the *vāchaḥ kūṭa*, i. e. the point of speech, according to Sāyaṇa. But this appears not to be quite correct. According to an unmistakable indication in Ait. Br. 6, 24 (*upāpto vāchaḥ kūṭa ekapadāyām*) it can mean only the Ekapadā which is added to the Pragātha.

<sup>14</sup> This story is frequently alluded to in the Saṁhitā of the Rigveda.

<sup>15</sup> See page 335.

At the third libation they break up the cavern with the Vāḷakhilya verses, and the one footed *Vāchaḥ kûṭa* which served as a weapon, and obtain the cows. There are six Vāḷakhilya hymns. He repeats them in three terms; for the first time he repeats them foot by foot, dissecting the verse by insertion; for the second time half verse by half verse; and for the third time verse by verse. When he repeats them foot by foot, dissecting the verse by insertion, then he ought to put in every Pragātha verse (of which each hymn is composed) one additional foot (*ekapadā*), which is the *Vāchaḥ kûṭaḥ*, i.e. the point of the Vāch. There are five such Ekapadās, four of them being taken from the tenth day and one from the Mahāvratā sacrifice.

He ought (if the two verses joined should fall short of a proper Pragātha by eight syllables) to supply the eight syllables from the Mahānāmniś<sup>16</sup> as often as they might be wanting; for the other pādas (of the Mahānāmniś which he does not require for filling up the deficiency in the Pragātha) he ought not to care.

When reciting the Vāḷakhilyas half verse by half verse, he ought to repeat those Ekapadās; and the [419] pādas from the Mahānāmniś which consist of eight syllables. When repeating the Vāḷakhilyas verse by verse, he ought (also) to repeat those Ekapadās, and the pādas of eight syllables which are taken from the Mahānāmniś. When he repeats, for the first time, the six Vāḷakhilya hymns, then he mixes (*viharati*) breath and speech by it. When he repeats them for the second time, then he mixes the eye and mind by it. When he repeats them for the third time, then he mixes the ear and the soul by it. Thus every desire regarding the mixing (of the verses) becomes fulfilled, and all desires regarding the Vāḷakhilyas, which serve as a weapon, the *Vāchaḥ kûṭa* in the form of an Ekapadā and the formation of life will be fulfilled (also).

He repeats the (Vāḷakhilya) Pragāthas for the fourth time without mixing the verses of two hymns. For the Pragāthas are cattle. (It serves) for obtaining cattle. He ought not to insert (this time) an Ekapadā in it. Were he to do so, then he would cut off cattle from the sacrificer by slaying them. (If one should observe a Hotri-priest doing so) one ought to tell him at this occasion, thou hast cut off cattle from the sacrificer by slaying them with the point of speech (*vāchaḥ kûṭa*) thou hast deprived him of cattle (altogether). And thus it always happens. Thence one ought never to insert the Ekapadās at this occasion.

<sup>16</sup> See page 281.



The two last Vāḷakhilya hymns (the seventh and eighth<sup>17</sup>) he adds as a setting (cover). Both are mixed. In such a way, *Sarpī*, the son of *Vatsa*, repeated them for a sacrificer, *Subala* by name. He said, "I have now grasped for the sacrificer the largest number of cattle, the best ones (as a reward for my skill) will come to me." He then gave [420] him (*Sarpī*) as much *Dakṣiṇā*<sup>18</sup> as to the great priests (*Hotar*, *Adhvaryu*, *Udgātar*, *Brahmā*). This Śāstra procures cattle and heaven. Thence one repeats it

## 25.

(What kind of hymn ought to be chosen for the *Dûrohaṇam*.)

He recites a hymn in the *Dûrohaṇa* way, about which a *Brāhmaṇam* has been already told (4, 20). If the sacrificer aspires to cattle, then an *Indra* hymn is required for this purpose. For cattle belong to *Indra*; it should be in the *Jagati* metre, for cattle have the nature of *Jagati*, they are (movable); it should be a great hymn (a *mahāsukta*);<sup>19</sup> for then he places, by it, the sacrificer among the largest number of cattle. He may choose for making *Dûrohaṇam* the *Baru* hymn (seen by the *Riṣi Baru*), which is a large hymn and in the *Jagati* metre.<sup>20</sup>

For one who aspires after a firm footing, an *Indra-Varuṇa* hymn is required; for this performance of the *Maitravaruṇa* (his *hotrâ*) belongs to this deity; (and) the *Indra-Varuṇa*<sup>21</sup> (*Yājyâ*) is the conclusion of it. It is the *Dakṣiṇâ* of the great priests.

[421] This (*Dûrohaṇa* repetition) puts (the reciter) finally in his own place (keeps him in his position). As regards the *Indra-Varuṇa* hymn, it is at this occasion (when performing the *Dûrohaṇam*) a *Nivid* (i.e. like it). By means of the *Nivid* all desires become gratified. When he should use an *Indra-Varuṇa* hymn for the *Dûrohaṇam*, then he ought to choose a hymn by *Suparṇa*. Thus a desire regarding *Indra-Varuṇa* and one regarding *Suparṇa*<sup>22</sup> become gratified (at the same time).

<sup>17</sup> The order of both is only inverted, the eighth *Sukta* is first to be repeated, and then follows the seventh.

<sup>18</sup> The term is only *nināya*, to which *dakṣiṇā* "on the right side" is to be supplied. Cows, horses, &c. which are given as a sacrificial reward, are actually carried to the right side of the recipient. The word *dakṣiṇā* itself is only an abbreviation of *dakṣiṇā nīta*, "what has been carried to the right side." Very soon the word was used as a feminine substantive. The noun to be supplied is *dis*, direction. The repeater of the *Vāḷakhilya Śāstra* is the *Maitravaruṇa*, who as one of the minor *Hotri*-priests, obtains generally only half the *Dakṣiṇâ* of the great priests.

<sup>19</sup> Hymns which exceed the number of ten verses are called by this name. Those which fall short of this number, are the *kṣudra sūktas* (small hymns). *Sây.*

<sup>20</sup> It commences *pra te mahe* (10, 96).

<sup>21</sup> This is, *indravaruṇâ madhumattamasya* (6, 68, 11).

<sup>22</sup> The hymn is, *imāni rūm bhāyādheyaṇi* (*Vālak.* 11). It is addressed to *Indra-Varuṇa*.

(Whether or not the *Maitrâvaruṇa* should repeat the *Ahîna* and *Ekâha* hymns along with the *Dûrohaṇam*.)

They (the interpreters of *Brahmâ*) ask, Shall he recite together (with these *Durohaṇas* the *Ahîna* hymns which are required on the sixth day) or shall he not do so? To this question they answer, he shall recite them; for why should he recite them on all other days, and not do so on this day? But (others) say he ought not to recite them together with these hymns; <sup>23</sup> for the sixth day represents the heavenly world; the heaven-world is not accessible to every one (*asamâyî*); for only a certain one (by performing properly the sacrifices) meets there (the previous occupants). Therefore, when the other hymns are repeated together with the *Dûrohaṇas*, then he (the priest) would make all equal (make all those who sacrifice and those who do not sacrifice go to heaven). Not to repeat these other hymns along with the *Dûrohaṇas* is a characteristic of the heaven-world (the celestial world being accessible to but few). Therefore, one ought not to repeat them.

[422] That is the reason that he does not repeat them. (Should he do so, he would destroy the sacrificer); for the singing verse (*Stotriya*) is his soul, and the *Vâ lakhilyas* are his breath. When he repeats (the *Ahîna* hymns) along (with the *Dûrohaṇa*) then he takes away the life of the sacrificer through those two deities (*Indra-Varuṇa*, to whom the *Dûrohaṇa* belongs.) (If one should observe a *Hotṛi*-priest doing so), one ought to tell the priest that he has deprived the sacrificer of his vital airs through those two deities (who get angry at it), and that he will lose his life. And thus it always happens. Thence he ought not to repeat (them).

If the *Maitrâvaruṇa* should think, "I have repeated the *Vâ lakhilyas* (which was a very arduous task), well, I will now repeat before the *Dûrohaṇa* the *Ekâha* hymns," <sup>24</sup> he should not entertain such a thought (for it is useless). But, however, should he pride himself too much of his skill, that he would be able to repeat after the *Dûrohaṇa* (the repetition of which is very difficult) is over, many hundred mantras, he may do so for gratifying that desire alone which is (to be gratified by repeating many mantras). He then obtains what he was wishing to obtain by repeating many mantras. He would, however, do better not to recite them. For the *Vâ lakhilyas*

<sup>23</sup> Śāstram of the *Maitrâvaruṇa* is to be understood.

<sup>24</sup> These are, *charṣanîdhritam* (3, 51), and *â vâm rājânâu* (7, 84).

belong to Indra ; in them there are pādas of twelve feet<sup>25</sup> and every wish to be gratified by an Indra hymn in the Jagatī metre, is contained therein (therefore no other Indra hymn is required).

**[423]** (Another reason that he had better not recite them) is the Indra-Varuṇa hymn (of the Dūrohaṇa), and the Indra-Varuṇa (Yājyā) which concludes (for these represent a firm footing, of which the sacrificer might be deprived, when repeating hymns which serve for connecting the several days).

They say, The Śastra must always correspond with the Stotra. Now the Vāḷakhilyas being repeated by mixing verses of two hymns (vibhīta) are then the Stotras to be treated in the same way or not ? The answer is, There is such a mixing in (the Stotra), a pāda of twelve syllables being joined to one of eight.\*

They say, The Yājyā must correspond with the Śastra. If in (the Śastra) there are three deities, viz. Agni, Indra, and Varuṇa mentioned, how does he make the Yājyā with a verse addressed to Indra-Varuṇa alone, and omit Agni ? (The answer is) Agni and Varuṇa are one and the same being. So said a Rishi in the mantra, "Thou Agni ! art born as Varuṇa" (5, 3, 1). If he therefore makes his Yājyā with an Indra-Varuṇa mantra, then Agni is not left out.

## FIFTH CHAPTER.

(The so-called Śilpas, viz. the Nābhānediṣṭha, Narāsaṃsa, Vāḷakhilya, Sukīrti, Vriṣākapī, and Evayāmarut hymns. The Kuntāpa Śastra.)

### 27.

(The Nābhānediṣṭha and Narāsaṃsa hymns repeated by the Hotar)

They repeat the Śilpas (hymns for producing [424] wonderful pieces of art). There are such wonder-works of the gods, and the arts in this world are to be understood as an imitation thereof. The gilded cloth spread over an elephant, the carriage to which a mule is yoked, are such a wonder-work. This work is understood in this world by him, who has such a knowledge. The Śilpas make ready the soul, and imbue it with the knowledge of the sacred hymns. By means of them the Hotri-priest prepares the soul for the sacrificer.

\* Some of the Vāḷakhilyas are in the Pragātha metro, which consists of two strophes, called Brihati and Satobrihati. In the first the third pāda comprises twelve syllables, and in the second the first and third contain as many. Twelve syllables four times taken constitute the Jagatī metre. Thence the author supposes the Jagatī metre to be contained in the Vāḷakhilyas.

\* The Stotra alluded to is, *agne tvam no antamah* (5, 24, 1) which is a Dvipadā, the first pāda comprising eight, the second twelve feet.

He repeats the Nābhānediṣṭha hymn (one of the Śilpas). For Nābhānediṣṭha is the sperm. In such a way he (the priest) effuses the sperm. He praises him (Nābhānediṣṭha) without mentioning his name. For the semen is like something unspeakable secretly poured forth into the womb. The sperm becomes blended. For when Prajāpati had carnal intercourse with his daughter, his sperm was poured forth upon the earth (and was mixed up with it).<sup>1</sup> This was done for making the sperm produce fruit.

He then repeats the Narāśamsa,<sup>2</sup> for *naraḥ* means "offspring," and *śamsaḥ* "speech." In this way he (the priest) places speech into children (when they are born.) Thence children are born endowed with the faculty of speech.

Some repeat the Narāśamsa before (the Nābhānediṣṭha,) saying, Speech has its place in the front (of the body; others repeat it after (the Nābhānediṣṭha), saying, Speech has its place behind (in the hinder part of the head). He shall recite it in the middle; for speech has its place in the middle (of [425] the body). But speech being always, as it were, nearer to the latter part (of the Nābhānediṣṭha hymn), the Narāśamsa must be repeated before the Nābhānediṣṭha is finished)<sup>3</sup>

The Hotar having effused the sacrificer in the shape of sperm (symbolically), gives him up to the Maitrāvaruṇa, saying, "form his breaths."

## 28.

*(The Vālakhilyas repeated by the Maitrāvâruṇa.)*

He (the Maitrāvaruṇa) now repeats the Vālakhilyas. For the Vālakhilyas are the breaths. In this way he forms the breaths of the sacrificer. He repeats them by mixing two verses together. For these breaths are mutually mixed together,<sup>4</sup> with the Prāṇa the Apāna, and with the Apāna the Vyāna. The two first hymns are repeated pāda by pāda; the second set (third and fourth) half verse by half verse, and the third set (fifth and sixth) verse by verse. By repeating the first set, he makes the breath and speech. By repeating the second set, he makes the eye and mind. By repeating the third set, he makes the ear and soul. Some take,

<sup>1</sup> This is mentioned in the fifth verse of the Nābhānediṣṭha hymn (10, 61). Prajāpati's intercourse with his daughter is alluded to in this hymn.

<sup>2</sup> This is called the second Nābhānediṣṭha hymn (10, 62), beginning *ye yajñena*. There the birth of the Aṅgiras is spoken of.

<sup>3</sup> The Nābhānediṣṭha hymn, *idam itihā roṣṭram* (10, 61) consists of twenty-seven verses; after the twenty-fifth verse is finished, the following Narāśamsa hymn is repeated. Repeater of both the Nābhānediṣṭha and Narāśamsa hymns is the Hotar.

<sup>4</sup> The six first Vālakhilya hymns are repeated in three sets, each comprising two hymns, see page 419.

when repeating these Vāḷakhilya Pragāthas, always two Bṛihatīś, and two Satobṛihatīś together. Though the wish obtainable by mixing the verses is obtained by this way of recital, yet no Pragāthas<sup>5</sup> are thus formed.

[426] He must repeat them by inserting an additional pāda;<sup>6</sup> then thus are the Pragāthas formed. The Vāḷakhilya verses are the Pragāthas. Therefore he must repeat them by inserting a pāda (in order to obtain the Pragātha metre). The Bṛihatī of the Pragātha is the soul, the Satobṛihatī the life. If he has repeated the Bṛihatī, then the soul, (is made); and if he has repeated the Satobṛihatī, the vital airs (are made). By thus repeating the Bṛihatī and the Satobṛihatī, he surrounds the soul with the vital airs. Therefore he must repeat the Vāḷakhilyas in such a way as to obtain the Pragātha metre. The Bṛihatī is the soul, and the Satobṛihatī cattle. If he has repeated the Bṛihatī, then the soul (is made); and if he has repeated the Satobṛihatī, then cattle (is made). By repeating both he surrounds the soul with cattle. The two last hymns are repeated in an inverted order (first the eighth and then the seventh.)

The Maitrāvaruṇa after having made in this way the vital airs of the sacrificer, hands him over to the Brāhmaṇāchchhamśī, saying, "create him now (in the human form)."

## 29

(The Sukīrti and Vṛiṣākapi hymns repeated by the Brāhmaṇāchchhamśī.)

The Brāhmaṇāchchchhamśī repeats the Sukīrti hymn;<sup>7</sup> for the Sukīrti is the womb of the gods. He thus causes the sacrificer to be born out of the sacrifice, which is the womb of the gods.

He repeats the Vṛiṣākapi hymn.<sup>8</sup> For Vṛiṣākapi is the soul. In this way he makes the soul of [427] the sacrificer. He repeats it with Nyūṅkha.<sup>9</sup> The Nyūṅkha is food. In this way he provides him when born with food, just as (a mother) gives the breast to her child. That hymn is in the Pañkti i.e. five-hood) metre; for man consists of five parts, viz. hair, skin, flesh, bones and marrow. He prepares the sacrificer just in the same way, as man (in general) is prepared.

The Brāhmaṇāchchchhamśī, after having created the sacrificer, hands him over to the Achchhāvaka, saying, "make a footing for him."

<sup>5</sup> The form required for the Pragātha metre is the combination of the Bṛihatī with the Satobṛihatī. If two Bṛihatīś are taken together, no Pragātha is formed, nor if two Satobṛihatīś are joined.

<sup>6</sup> See above page 419. This is called Atimarsā.

<sup>7</sup> This is the hymn, *apa prācha* (10, 131). It is repeated by the Brāhmaṇāchchchhamśī.

<sup>8</sup> This is the hymn *vīhi sotoṛ* (10, 86.)

<sup>9</sup> This Nyūṅkha differs somewhat from the usual way of making it. The sound is uttered sixteen times, three times with three moras, and thirteen times with half moras See Aśval. Sr. S. 8, 3.

(*The Evayāmarut repeated by the Achchhāvāka. Story of Bulila*)

The Achchhāvāka now repeats the Evayāmarut hymn.<sup>10</sup> This hymn is the footing ; by repeating it the Achchhāvāka makes a footing to the sacrificer. He repeats it with Nyûtkha. The Nyûtkha is food. Thus he provides the sacrificer with food. In this hymn there is the Jagatî and Atijagatî metre, which metres comprise the whole universe what falls in the sphere of movable things as well as what falls beyond it. It is addressed to the Marutas. The Marutas are the waters ; and water is food which is to be filled (in the sacrificer like water in a pot). In this way he provides the sacrificer with food.

The Nābhānediṣṭha, Vālakhīlyas, Vīṣākapi, and Evayāmaruta are called "auxiliary hymns." The priest ought to recite them (all) along with (the other hymns); (if he does not like that) he ought not to repeat any (of them along with the other hymns).

[428] But if he should repeat them on different (days or occasions) it is just as if one would separate a man from his sperm. Thence he ought either to repeat them along with (the other hymns) or omit them entirely.

That (famous) *Bulila*, the son of *Āśvātara*, the son of *Āśva*, being once Hotar at the Viśvajit sacrifice, speculated about this matter, that is to say, these Śilpas (these auxiliary hymns). He thought, "There having been added two Śastras (that of the Maitrāvaruṇa and that of the Brāhmaṇachchhamṣi) to the midday libation in the Viśvajit of the sacrificial sessions for a year, I thus (in further addition) will repeat the Evayāmaruta." Thus he recited it. Whilst he was repeating it *Gauśla* came near him, and said, "Hotar ! Why does thy Śastra proceed without wheels ? How has it come (that thou art acting in such a way) ?" The Evayāmaruta is repeated by the Achchhāvāka standing north from the Hotar. He further said, "The midday libation belongs to Indra. Why dost thou wish to turn out Indra from it ?" He answered, "I do not wish to turn out Indra from the midday libation." He said, (Yes, you do), for this particular metre being the Jagatî and Atijagatî is not fit for the midday libation,<sup>11</sup> and the hymn is besides addressed to the Marutas (not to Indra, as it should be) ; therefore one should not repeat it now. *Bulila* then said, "Stop, Achhāvāka, I wish to carry out *Gauśla*'s order." *Gauśla* then said, "He shall repeat an Indra hymn, in which

<sup>10</sup> *Pravo mahe malayah* (5, 87).

<sup>11</sup> The proper metre for the midday libation is the Triṣṭubh, whilst the Jagatî is used at the evening libation.

the mark of Viṣṇu is impressed.<sup>12</sup> Thence thou, Hotar, shalt leave [429] out from thy Śastra this Evayāmaruta, which was recited after the Rudra Dhāryā, and before the Maruta Śastra." He did so, and so they proceed now.

## 31

(*Queries on some particulars of the application of these auxiliary hymns. Their meaning*).

They ask, Why do they not repeat the Nābhānediṣṭha in the Viśvajit, Atirātra, and on the sixth day of the Śaḥa, when they make the sacrifice complete and reproduce the sacrificer (in a mystical way), although the Maitrāvaruṇa repeats the Vākhilyas which represent the breaths, but not the sperm (as the Nābhānediṣṭha does), whilst the sperm must precede the breaths (in the act of generation)? In the same way why does the Brāhmaṇāchchhamṣi repeat the Vṛṣākapi when the Nābhānediṣṭha is not repeated? For the Vṛṣākapi is the soul, whilst the sperm represented by the Nābhānediṣṭha hymn precedes the making of the soul. How then can the sacrificer be reproduced in this way? How can that be effected, if his life is not formed (by the act of generation)? For the priests produce the sacrificer (make him anew) by means of the sacrificial process. Therefore the whole being of the sacrificer cannot be made at once at the beginning, but just as an embryo which, lying in the womb, developes itself (grows gradually). If he has all limbs (only then he is entire). The priests should make them all on the same day. If thus the sacrifice is made ready, then the reproduction of the sacrificer is effected.

The Hotar repeats the Evayāmarut at the third libation. For this is the sacrificer's footing on which the Hotar places him at the end.

## 32

(*On the origin and nature of the so-called Kuntapa<sup>13</sup> hymns, Atharvaveda 20, 127-136. The Narasamṣi, Raibhī and Pārikṣiti, Viśām kṛipti and Janakalpa verses; the Indra-gāthās.*)

[430] The juice of the metres which were all done by the sixth day (at the Śaḥa) was running (over the brim). Prajāpati got afraid lest the

<sup>12</sup> Instead of the Evayāmarut, the Achchhāvāka is to repeat, *dyaur naya* (6, 20,) which is an Indra hymn. Viṣṇu is mentioned in the fourth pāda of the second verse by the words, *v śnuni sachānaḥ*.

<sup>13</sup> The so-called Kuntāpa hymns are to be repeated by the Brāhmaṇāchchhamṣi after he has finished the Vṛṣākapi. Their repetition has several peculiarities regarding the response, which all are noted by Aśval. Śr. S. (8, 3). The response for the first 14 verses beginning with *idam janā upa śruta* is at the end of each verse only, it is simply *othāmo datvām*. The verses which immediately follow up to *etā asvī āplavanta* have two

juice of the metres might go away and run over the worlds. Therefore he kept it down by means of metres placed on another part (above them). With the *Narāsaṃsi* he kept down (the juice) of the *Gāyatrī*, with the *Raibhī* that of the *Triṣṭubh*, with the *Pārikṣitī* that of the *Jagatis*, with the *Kāravṃyā* that of the *Anuṣ* [431] *ṭubhs*. Thus he provided again the metres with good juice. The sacrifice of him who has this knowledge becomes performed with metres keeping their juice, and he spreads it with metres keeping their juice, (i.e., the essence of the sacrifice is not lost).

The priest now repeats *Narāsaṃsi* verses.<sup>14</sup> For *naraḥ* (men) means children and *saṃsaḥ* speech. He thus places speech in children. Therefore children of him who has this knowledge are born with the faculty of speaking. The Gods and Rishis having gained the heavenly world by repeating the *Narāsaṃsa* verses, the sacrificers who repeat them go to the heavenly world also. The priest stops when repeating these verses, after each of the two or three first *pādas*, and after the two or three last taken together,<sup>15</sup> just as he does when repeating the *Vṛiṣākapi*. For what is of the same nature as the *Vṛiṣākapi* (as the *Narāsaṃsis* are

responses each, after every half verse. The seventy *pādas* commencing with *etā āsvā* have each a response. The six verses commencing with *vitatāu kīraṇāu* have each a peculiar response after the first half verse. So the response to *vitatāu* is *duṇḍubhim ahananūbhyām jaritar othāmo daiva*; that to the second is *koṣabile jaritar*, &c. They are all given in the *Atharvaveda Sāṃhitā* (20, 133) along with the text of which they form, however, no part. For the response (*pratigara*) is repeated by the *Adhvaryu*. Similar responses occur in all verses which follow as far as the *devanītham*, *ādityāha jaritar*; they all are given in the *Atharvaveda*, such as *pīlīlakāvataḥ*, *śvā*, *parṇasadaḥ*, &c., which all are followed by *jaritar othāmo daivom*. In the *Devanītha* (*Athar.* 20, 135, 6-10) the response is in the first *pāda* of each verse; it is *om ha jaritar othāmo daiva*. These *Kuntāpa* songs do not bear a strictly religious character: they are praise songs, principally referring to *Dakṣiṇā* and belong to that class of ancient poetry which bears the name *nārāsaṃsi*. This may be clearly seen from the commencement of the whole collection, *idam jana upaśruta nārāsaṃsaḥ*, *taviṣyate*, i. e., hearken ye people to this; *Narāsaṃsaḥ* will be praised with chants. The recitation of these pieces is accompanied with musical instruments, such as *duṇḍubhī*, *karkarī*, &c. The repeater must have been originally the chanter; for in the response he is always addressed by "*jaritar*," i. e., singer.

<sup>14</sup> *Idam jana upa śruta nārāsaṃsa* A. V. 20, 127, 1-3.

<sup>15</sup> This is a translation of the term *pragrāha*. Several of the verses are in the *Pañkti* metre; then the three last *pādas* are taken together. As far as this goes, they are just recited as the *Vṛiṣākapi* hymn. Only the *Nyūṇhka* is not made, but instead of it the *Ninarda*, which is a substitute for it. This peculiar pronunciation of the vowel takes place in the second syllable of the third, and the fourth of the fourth *pāda*. The *Pratigara* is *madethama daivom othāmo daivom*.



supposed to be) follows the same rule. In repeating them, he shall not make Nyûnkha,<sup>16</sup> but pronounce them with a kind of [432] Ninarda,<sup>17</sup> for this is the Nyûnkha of the Narâśamsis verses.

The priest repeats the *Raibhi* verses.<sup>18</sup> For the Gods and Rîşis went by making a great noise (*rebhantaḥ*) to the celestial world; in the same way, therefore, the sacrificers go to the celestial world. (The recital is just the same as that of the Narâśamsis, and subject to the same rules.)

He repeats the *Pârikṣiti* verses.<sup>19</sup> For Agni is the dweller round about (*parikṣit*); he lives round the people, and the people live round (*parikṣi*) him. He who has such a knowledge, obtains union with Agni, and shares the same character and abode with him. As to these *Pârikṣiti* verses (they may have another meaning too. For the year is *Parikṣit* (dwelling round about); for it dwells round about men, and men dwell round about the year. Therefore he who has this knowledge, obtains union with the year (*samvatsara*) and shares its character and abode. (The *Pârikṣiti* verses are repeated in the same way as the Narâśamsiḥ.)

He repeats the *Kâavyâ* verses.<sup>20</sup> For any work of the gods crowned with success was performed by means of the *Kâavyâs*; and the same is then the case with the sacrificers. (The recital is the same as that of the Narâśamsiḥ.)

The priest now repeats the "directions forming verses" (*disâm kṛiptis*). For in this way he [433] forms the directions. He repeats five such verses; for there are five directions, *viz.*, the four points (east, west, south and north)

<sup>16</sup> In repeating the *Vṛṣâkapi* hymn, both the Nyûnkha and Ninarda are used. The Nyûnkha takes place at the second syllable of the third pada, which is the proper place for the Ninarda also. (On the Nyûnkha see page 322). The Ninarda is described by Aśval. Śr. 8. 7, 11, as follows: *okâraś chaturninarda udâttau prathamottamâv anudâtta-vitasâ uttaro snudâtattaraḥ plutaḥ prathamô makârânta uttamah*, i. e., the vowel *o* has four times the Ninarda sound; the first and last times it has the *udâtta* accent, the two others the *anudâtta*; the latter of which has even the *anudâtattara* (lowest *anudâtta*); the first (and last) is pronounced with three moras. There is another way of making the Ninarda by pronouncing the *o* successively first with the *udâtta*, then with the *anudâtta*, then with the *svârîta*, and lastly with the *udâtta* accent again.

<sup>17</sup> *Nivîva* is to be parsed *ni vi iva*, the *ni* and *vi* belonging to the verb *nardet*. The whole means, literally, he ought to make a peculiar species of the Ninarda, as it were.

<sup>18</sup> *Vachyasva rebha*, A. V. 20, 127, 4.

<sup>19</sup> *Râjño viśvajanyasya*, A. V. 20, 127, 7-10. In every verse the word *pârikṣit*, i. e., dwelling round about (said of Agni) occurs.

<sup>20</sup> *Indraḥ kârū abubudhat*, A. V. 20, 127, 11-14. Because of the word *kârū*, i. e., singer, praiser, occurring in the first verse, they are called *kâavyâs*.

<sup>21</sup> These are, *yaḥ sahbeyo vidathya*, A. V. 20, 128, 1-5.

and one direction above crossing (them all). He ought not to repeat (these verses) with Nyûnkha, nor make the Ninarda in the same way as above. Thinking, I will not mutilate (*nyûnkhayâni*)<sup>22</sup> these directions, he repeats these verses, half verse by half verse.

For making a footing, he then repeats the *Janakalpa* verses.<sup>23</sup> For children are *janakalpa* (production of men). Having made the directions in the above manner, he places people in them. He shall not repeat these verses with Nyûnkha, nor with the Ninarda, but just in the same way and for the same reasons as the *disâm klrpti*.

He repeats the *Indra-gâthâs*.<sup>24</sup> For by means of the Indra songs, the Devas sang the Asuras down and defeated them. In the same way, the sacrificers put down their enemies by these songs. They are repeated, half verse by half verse, to obtain a footing for the sacrificer.

### 33.

(*Aitasa-pralâpa. The Pravahlikâ, Ajiñâsenya Pratirâdha, and Atirâda Verses.*)

The priest (Brâhmapâchhamsi) repeats the *Aitasa-pralâpa*. Aitasa was a Muni. He saw the mantras, called "the life of Agni" (*agner âyuh*), which should remove all defects from the sacrifice, as some say. He said to his sons, "O my dear sons, I saw 'the life of Agni'; I will talk about it; but pray do not scorn at me for anything I might speak. He then commenced to repeat, *etâ âsivâ âplavante, pratîpam* [434] *prâti sutranam* (A. V. 20, 129, 1 *et seq.*).<sup>25</sup> Then one of his family, *Abhyagni* by name, went to him at an improper time (before Aitasa had finished his talk) and stopped his mouth by putting his hand on it, saying, "Our father has become mad." Then his father said to him, "Go away, become infected with leprosy, thou who hast murdered my speech. I would be able to prolong the life of a cow to a hundred, and that of a man to a thousand years (if thou wouldst not have stopped my mouth), but thou, my son, who hast overpowered me (in such an improper way), I curse: thy progeny shall come into the condition of the lowest among the most wicked." Therefore they say, that among the Aitasaâyanas the Abhyagnis are most burdened with sins, in the whole Aurva-Gotra (to which they belong). Some priests lengthen this Aitasa-pralâpa (repeating eighteen

<sup>22</sup> From *ukh*, *unkh*, to move, go.

<sup>23</sup> Yo *nâktâkṣo anabhyakto*, A. V. 20, 128, 6-11.

<sup>24</sup> *Yad indrâdo dasurâjñe*, A. V. 20, 128, 12-16.

<sup>25</sup> According to Sâyana, the Aitasa-pralâpa consists of 70 pâdas.

more pādas). (If they choose to do so) one should not prevent them ; but say, "repeat as long as you like. For the Aitaśa-pralāpa is life." Therefore, he who has this knowledge, prolongs in this way the life of the sacrificer.

As to the Aitaśa-pralāpa, there is another meaning in it. For it is the essence (juice) of the metres ; by repeating it, the reciter puts speech in the metres. He who has this knowledge, will keep the essence in the metres, when the sacrifice is performed, and will spread the sacrifice with the essence in the metres.

But there is still another meaning in the Aitaśa-pralāpa ; it is fit for removing defects in the sacrifice, and for restoring its entirety. For the Aitaśa-pralāpa is imperishableness. (Therefore when it is recited, the sacrificer wishes) "May my sacrifice be lasting and all its defects be removed." He repeats [435] this Aitaśa-pralāpa, stopping after every pāda, just as the Nivid is repeated ; at the last pāda he, pronounces "om," just as it is done in the Nivid.

He repeats the *Prāvahlika* verses.<sup>26</sup> For the gods made the Asuras benumbed (*pravahlyā*) by means of the Pravahlikās, and, consequently, defeated them. In the same way, the sacrificers benumb and defeat their enemies by repeating these verses. They are repeated, half verse by half verse for obtaining a footing.

He repeats the *Ajijñāsanya* verses.<sup>27</sup> For, by means of these verses, the Devas recognised (*Ājñāya*) the Asuras and defeated them. In the same way, the sacrificers recognise and defeat their enemies. They are repeated half verse by half verse.

He now repeats the *Pratirādha*.<sup>28</sup> For, by means of it, the Devas frustrated (*prati-rādhi*) the efforts of the Asuras, and consequently defeated them. The same effect is produced by the sacrificers who have repeated it.

He repeats the *Ativāda*.<sup>29</sup> For, by means of it, the Devas abused (*ativad*) the Asuras so much as to defeat them. The same effect is produced by the sacrificers who repeat it. They are repeated, half verse by half verse, for obtaining a footing.

<sup>26</sup> *Vitatāu kirayāu dvāu*, A. V. 20, 133, 1-6.

<sup>27</sup> *Iha itthā prāg apyā udak*, A. V. 20, 134, 1-4

<sup>28</sup> *Bhugiti abhigataḥ*, A. V. 20, 135, 1-3.

<sup>29</sup> *Vime devā akran*, A. V. 20, 135, 4.

(*Story of the Sacrifices of the Âdityas and Âṅgirasas for reaching Heaven.*)

He repeats the *Devanîtham*.<sup>90</sup> (About this, the following story is reported.) The Âdityas and Âṅgirasas [436] were contending with one another as to who should gain first the heavenly world. The Âṅgirasas had seen (in their mind) that, by dint of the Soma sacrifice they were about to bring on the next day, they would be raised to heaven first. They therefore despatched one from among themselves, Agni by name, instructing him thus: "Go to the Âdityas and announce to them that we shall, by dint of our to-morrow's Soma sacrifice, go to heaven." As soon as the Âdityas got sight of Agni, they at once saw (in their minds) the Soma sacrifice by which they would reach heaven. Having come near them, Agni said, "We inform you of our bringing to-morrow that Soma sacrifice, by means of which we shall reach heaven." They answered, "And we announce to you that we are just now contemplating to bring that Soma sacrifice, by means of which we shall reach heaven; but thou (Agni) must serve as our Hotar, then we shall go to heaven. He said, "Yes," (and went back to the Âṅgiras). After having told (the Âṅgiras the message of the Âdityas) and received their reply, he went back to the Âdityas). They asked him, "Hast thou told our message?" He said, "Yes, I have told it (to the Âṅgiras); and they answered, and asked, 'Did'st thou not promise us thy assistance (as a Hotar),' and I said, 'Yes, I have promised.' (But I could not decline the offer of the Âdityas). For he who engages in performing the duty of a sacrificial priest, obtains fame; and any one Who prevents the sacrifice from being performed, excludes himself from his fame. Therefore I did not prevent (by declining the offer)." If one wishes to decline serving as a sacrificial priest, then this refusal is only justified on account of oneself being engaged in a sacrifice, or because of being legally prohibited to perform the sacrificial duties.

## 35

[437] (*On the Dakṣiṇâ given by the Âdityas to the Âṅgirasas. The Devanîtha Hymn.*)

The Âṅgirasas, therefore, assisted the Âdityas in their sacrifice. For this service, the Âdityas gave them the earth filled with presents (*dakṣiṇâ*) as reward. But when they had accepted her, she burnt them. Therefore they flung her away. She then became a lioness, and, opening her

<sup>90</sup> *Aditya ha jaritar aṅgîrobhyo*, A. V. 20, 135, 6 et seq. 17 verses, according to Sâya.

mouth, attacked people. From this burning state of the earth came those ruptures (which are now visible on her), whereas she had been previously quite even.<sup>31</sup> Thence one shall not retake a sacrificial reward which one has once refused to accept. (For he must think) the Dakṣiṇā being penetrated by a flame, shall not penetrate me with it. But should he take it back, then he may give it to his adversary and enemy, who will be defeated, for it burns him.

That (Āditya, the sun) then assuming the shape of a white horse with bridle and harness, presented himself to the other Ādityas, who said, "Let us carry this gift to you (the Aṅgirasas)." Therefore this Devanītha, i.e., what is carried by the gods, is to be recited.

(Now follows the Devanītha, with Explanatory Remarks.)

"The Ādityas, O singer! brought the Aṅgirasas their reward. The Aṅgirasas, O singer, did not go near," i.e., they did not go near to that first gift (the earth).

"But, O singer! (afterwards) they went near it," i.e., they went near the other gift (the white horse).

[438] "They did not accept it, O singer," i.e., they did not accept this earth. "But they accepted it," i.e., they accepted that white horse.

"He (Āditya, the sun), being carried away,"<sup>32</sup> the days disappeared;" for he (the sun) makes the days visible.

"He being carried away, the wise men were without a leader (*purogava*)." For the reward (Dakṣiṇā) is the leader in the sacrifices. Just as a carriage without having a bullock as a leader yoked to it, becomes damaged, a sacrifice at which no reward (Dakṣiṇā) is given, becomes damaged also. Therefore, the sacrificial reward must be given (to the performers of a sacrifice), and even if it should be but very little (on account of the poverty of the sacrificer).

"And, further, this horse is white, with quickly running feet, the swiftest (of all). He quickly discharges the duties incumbent on him. The Ādityas, Rudras and Vasavas praise (him). Accept, therefore, this gift, O Aṅgiras!" They now intended accepting this gift.

<sup>31</sup> Here we have an attempt to explain the unevenness of the earth. It is interesting to see the theories of modern geology foreshadowed in this certainly ancient myth.

<sup>32</sup> Instead of *netā sann*, which reading is to be found here, as well as in the *Atharvaveda*, *netāh sann* must be read; *neath*, then, is an irregular form of the past part. of *nī*, to carry, standing for *nita*.

"This gift is large and splendid. This present which the gods have given, shall be your illuminator. It shall be with you every day. Thence consent to accept it!" (After having heard these words) the Aṅgiras accepted the reward.

In reciting this Devanītha, the priest stops at every pāda, just as is done when the Nivid is repeated, and pronounces "om" at the last pāda, just as is the case with the Nivid.

## 36.

[439] (*Bhūte-chhad, Ahanasya, Dadhikrāvan, Pāvamānya, and the Indra Brihaspati Verses.*)

He now repeats the *Bhūte-chhad*<sup>33</sup> (dazzling power) verses. By means of these verses, the Devas approached the Asuras by fighting and cunning. For, by means of them, they dazzled the power of the Asuras, and consequently overcame them. In the same way, the sacrificer who repeats these verses, overcomes his enemy. They are repeated half verse by half verse, to obtain a footing.

He now repeats the *Ahanasya*<sup>34</sup> verses. For the sperm is poured forth from the Ahanasya (penis); and from the sperm creatures are born. In this way, the priest makes offspring (to the sacrificer). These verses are ten in number; for the Virāj has ten syllables, and the Virāj is food; from food the sperm (is produced) and can (consequently) be poured forth, and from sperm creatures are produced. He repeats them with Nyūṅkha; for this is food.

He now repeats the *Dadhikrāvan* verse, *dadhikrāvāno akārsiham* (Atharv. V. 20, 137, 3). For the Dadhikra is the purifier of the gods. For he (the priest) spoke such (words<sup>35</sup>) as are to be regarded as the speech containing the most excellent semen.<sup>36</sup> By means of this purifier of the gods, he purifies speech (*vāch*). The verse is in the Anuṣṭubh metre; for Vāch is Anuṣṭubh, and thus she becomes purified by her own metre.

He now repeats the *Pāvamānya* verses, *sulāso madhumatamā* (9, 101, 4); for the Pāvamānyas (purification verses) are the purification of the gods. For he spoke such (words) as are to be regarded as the speech containing the most excellent semen. By means of this purifier of the gods, he purifies speech. They are Anuṣṭubhs; for the Vāch is Anuṣṭubh, and thus she becomes purified by her own metre.

<sup>33</sup> *Toam indra Śarma pīṇa*, A. V. 20, 135, 11-13.

<sup>34</sup> Lit., penis; for *āhanas*, *āhana*, means penis, derived just as *jaghanyā*, i.e., from the root *han*, to strike. Śāy. explains it by "*maithunam*," i.e., cohabitation.

<sup>35</sup> *Yad asya anhubhedyāh*, A. V. 20, 136, 1-10.

<sup>36</sup> The repetition of the Ahanasya verses is to be understood,

**[440]** He now repeats the *Indra-Brihaspati* triplet of verses commencing, *avā drapsō amśumatīm* (8, 85, 13-15). At the end of it (verse 15) there is said, "Indra, assisted by Brihaspati, conquered the tribes of the despisers of the Devas when they encountered (the Devas on the battle-field)." For the Asura nation, when they had marched out to fight against the Devas, was everywhere subjugated by Indra with the assistance of Brihaspati, and driven away. Therefore the sacrificers subdue and drive away by means of Indra and Brihaspati the nation of the Asuras (*asurya varṇa*).<sup>37</sup>

They ask, Should the Hotri-priest, on the sixth day, repeat (the hymns) along (with the additional Śastras?). See 6, 26.

He concludes with a Brihaspati verse; thence he ought not to repeat (the hymns) along (with the additional Śastras).

---

<sup>37</sup> That these are the Zoroastrians, is beyond any doubt. See my *Essays on the Sacred Language, Writings, &c., of the Parsis*, page 226-30.

## [441] SEVENTH BOOK.

### FIRST CHAPTER.

(The Distribution of the Different Parts of the Sacrificial Animal among the Priests.)

#### 1

Now follows the division of the different parts of the sacrificial animal (among the priests). We shall describe it<sup>1</sup>. The two jawbones with the tongue are to be given to the Prastotar; the breast in the form of an eagle to the Udgâtar; the throat with the palate to the Pratibartar; the lower part of the right loins the Hotar; the left to the Brahmâ; the right thigh to the Maitrâvaruṇa; the left to the Brahmanâchhamṣi; the right side with the shoulder to the Adhvaryu; the left side to those who accompany the chants; <sup>2</sup> the left shoulder to the Pratipasthâtar; the lower part of the right arm to the Neṣṭar; the lower part of the left arm to the Potar; the upper part of the right thigh to the Achhâvâka; the left to the Agnidhra; the upper part of the right arm to Atreya<sup>3</sup>; the left to the Sadasya; the back bone [442] and the urinal bladder to the Gṛihapati (sacrificer); the right feet to the Gṛihapati who gives a feasting; the left feet to the wife of that Gṛihapati who gives a feasting; the upper lip is common to both (the Gṛihapati and his wife), which is to be divided by the Gṛihapati. They offer the tail of the animal to wives, but they should give it to a Brâhmaṇa; the fleshy processes (*manikāḥ*) on the neck and three gristles (*kâkasāḥ*) to the Grâvastut; three

<sup>1</sup> The same piece is found in Aśv. Śr. S. 12, 9.

<sup>2</sup> The Upagâtris accompany the chant of the Sâma singers with certain syllables which correspond to the Pratigâra of the Adhvaryu. This accompaniment is called *upagânam*. It differs according to the different Sâmans. At the Bahiṣ-pavamâna Stotra at the morning libation, the *upagânam* of the Upagâtris is *ho*. Besides, the sacrificer has to make an *upagânam* also. This is *om* at the Bahiṣ-pavamâna Stotra.

<sup>3</sup> The Atreya who is here mentioned as a receiver of a share in the sacrificial animal, is no officiating priest. But the circumstance that he receives gold for his *Dakṣiṇâ*, and that it is given to him before the other priests (save the Agnidhra), as we learn from the Kâṭiya Śrânta Sūtras 10, 2, 21 shows, that he had a certain right to a principal share in all sacrificial donations. Atreya, meaning only a descendant of the Atri-gotri, the right appears to have been hereditary in the family of the ancient Rîṣi Atri.



other gristles and one-half of the fleshy part on the back (*caikaritta* <sup>4</sup>) to the Unnetar; the other half of the fleshy part on the neck and the left lobe (*kloma* <sup>5</sup>) to the slaughterer, who should present it to a Brâhmaṇa, if he himself would not happen to be a Brâhmaṇa. The head is to be given to the Subrahmaṇyâ, the skin belongs to him (the Subrahmaṇyâ), who spoke, *śvaḥ sutyâm* (to-morrow at the Soma sacrifice); <sup>6</sup> that part of the sacrificial animal at a Soma sacrifice which belongs to Iḷâ (sacrificial food) is common to all the priests; only for the Hotar it is optional.

All these portions of the sacrificial animal amount to thirty-six single pieces, each of which represents the pāda (foot) of a verse by which the sacrifice is carried up. The Bṛihati metre consists of thirty-six syllables; and the heavenly worlds are of the Bṛihati nature. In this way (by dividing the animal into thirty-six parts), they gain life (in this world) and the heavens, and having become established in both (this and that world), they walk there.

[443] To those who divide the sacrificial animal in the way mentioned, it becomes the guide to heaven. But those who make the division otherwise, are like scoundrels and miscreants who kill an animal merely (for gratifying their lust after flesh).

This division of the sacrificial animal was invented by the Rishi Devabhāga, a son of Śruta.<sup>7</sup> When he was departing from this life, he did not entrust (the secret to any one). But a supernatural being communicated it to Girija, the son of Babhru. Since his time, men study it.

## SECOND CHAPTER.

*The Penances for Mishaps to the Performer of the Agnihotram).*

### 2.

*(What Penances are required when an Agnihotri Dies)*

They ask, If a man who has already established a sacred fire (an Agnihotri) should die on the day previous to a sacrifice (*uparasatha*), what is to become of his sacrifice (to which all preparations had been made) ?

<sup>4</sup> A large piece of flesh.—*Sây.*

<sup>5</sup> The piece of flesh which is on the side of the heart.—*Sây.*

<sup>6</sup> See the note to 6, 3.

<sup>7</sup> Thus Sây., but the translation, a Śrotriya, i.e., sacrificial priest (acquainted with the Śruti) would suit better,

One should not have it brought; thus say some; for he (the owner) himself has no share in the sacrifice.

They ask, If an Agnihotri should die after having placed the intended fire offering, be it the *Sānnāyya*<sup>1</sup> or (other) offerings (on the fire), how is [444] this to be atoned for? One shall put all these things one after the other round the fire (like sticks, *paridhas*) and burn them all together. This is the penance.

They ask, If an Agnihotri should die after having placed the sacrificial offerings (ready made) on the Vedi,<sup>2</sup> what is the atonement? One ought to sacrifice them all in the Abavaniya fire, with the formula *Svāhā*, to all those deities for whom they were intended (by the deceased Agnihotri).

They ask, If an Agnihotri should die when abroad, what is to become of his burnt offering (*agnihotram*)? (There are two ways.) Either one shall then sacrifice the milk of a cow to which another (as its own) calf had been brought (to rear it up), for the milk of such a cow is as different as the oblation brought in the name of an Agnihotri deceased. Or, they may offer the milk of any other cow. But they mention another way besides. (The relatives of the deceased Agnihotri) should keep burning the (three) constantly blazing fires (Abavaniya, &c.) without giving them any offering till the ashes of the deceased shall have been collected. Should they not be forthcoming, then they should take three hundred and sixty footstalks of Palāśa leaves and form of them a human figure, and perform in it all the funeral ceremonies required (*āryt*). After having brought the members of this artificial corpse into contact with the three sacred fires, they shall remove (extinguish) them. They shall make this human [445] figure in the following way: one hundred and fifty footstalks are to represent the trunk of the corpse, one hundred and forty both the thighs, and fifty both the loins, and the rest are instead of the head, and are therefore to be placed accordingly. This is the penance.

<sup>1</sup> *Sānnāyya* is the technical term for a certain offering of the Agnihotris. It is prepared in the following way: The Adhvaryu takes the milk from three cows, called *Gāṅgā*, *Yamunā* and *Sarasvatī*, on the morning and evening, and gives it to the Agnidhra. Half the milk is first drawn from the udder of each of the three cows under the recital of mantras; then the same is done silently (*tiṣṇim*). The milk is taken from these cows on the evening of the New Moon day, and on the morning of the following day, the so-called Pratipad (the first day of the month). The milk drawn on the evening is made hot, and lime-juice poured over it, to make it sour, whereupon it is hung up. The fresh milk of the following morning is then mixed with it, and both are sacrificed along with the Purodāsa. Only he who has already performed the Agniṣṭoma, is allowed to sacrifice the *Sānnāyya* at the Darśapūrṇimā *istī*. (Oral information.)

<sup>2</sup> The place for all the offerings.

## 3.

*(This Paragraph is identical with 5, 27.)*

## 4.

*(On the Penances in the case of the Sānnâyya being Spoiled.)*

They ask, If the Sānnâyya which was milked on the evening becomes spoiled or is lost (during the night), what is the penance for it? (The answer is) The Agnihotṛi shall divide the milk of the morning into two parts, and after having curdled one part of it, he may offer it. This is the penance.

They ask, If the Sānnâyya which was milked on the morning becomes spoiled or is lost, what is the penance? (The answer is) He must prepare a Puroḍāśa, for Indra and Mahendra, divide it instead of the milk, into the parts required, and then sacrifice it. This is the penance.

They ask, If all the milk (of the morning and evening) of the Sānnâyya becomes spoiled or is lost, what is the penance for it? The penance is made in the same way by offering the Indra or Mahendra Puroḍāśa (as in the preceding case).

They ask, If all the offerings (Puroḍāśa, curds, milk) become spoiled or are lost, what is the penance for it? He ought to prepare all these offerings with melted butter, and, having apportioned to the several gods their respective parts, should sacrifice this Ajyahavis (offerings with melted butter) as an Iṣṭi. [446] Then he ought to prepare another Iṣṭi all smooth and even. This sacrifice performed (in the regular way) is the penance for the first which had been spoiled.

## 5.

*(The Penance required when Anything of the Agnihotram is Spilt, or the Spoon is Broken, or the Gârhapatya Fire Extinguished.)*

They ask, If anything improper for being offered should fall into the fire offering when placed (over the fire to make it ready), what is the penance for it? The Agnihoti then ought to pour all this into a Sruçh (sacrificial spoon), go eastwards and place the usual fuel (*samidh*) into the Ahavaniya fire. After having taken some hot ashes from the northern part of the Ahavaniya fire, he shall sacrifice it by repeating either in his mind (the usual Agnihotra mantra), or the Prajāpati verse.<sup>3</sup> In this

<sup>3</sup> Prajāpate na tvad etāni (10, 121, 10).

way (by means of the hot ashes), the offering becomes sacrificed and is not sacrificed.<sup>4</sup> (It is of no consequence) whether only one or two turns of the oblation (become spoiled); the penance for it is always performed in the way described. Should the Agnihotri be able to remove thus (the unclean things fallen into the offering) by pouring out all that is spoiled, and pour in what is unspoiled, then he ought to sacrifice it just as its turn<sup>5</sup> is. This is the penance.

They ask, If the fire offering when placed over the fire (for being made ready) is spilt or runs over (by boiling), what is then the penance for it? He [447] shall touch what fell down with water for appeasing (arresting the evil consequences); for water serves for this purpose. Then moving with his right hand over what fell out, he mutters the mantra, "May a third go to heaven to the gods as a sacrifice; might I obtain thence wealth! May a third go to the air, to the Pitaras, as a sacrifice; might I obtain thence wealth! May a third go to the earth, to men; might I obtain thence wealth!" Then he mutters the Viṣṇu-Varuṇa verse, *yayor ojasâ skabhitâ rajâmsi* (A. V. 7, 25, 1).<sup>6</sup> For Viṣṇu watches over what is performed badly in the sacrifice, and Varuṇa over what is performed well. To appease both of them, this penance (is appropriate).

They ask, When the fire offering, after having been made ready, at the time when the Adhvaryu takes it eastward to the Ahvaniya fire (to sacrifice it), runs over or is spilt altogether, what is the penance for it? (The Adhvaryu is not allowed to turn back his face). If he would turn his face backward, then he would turn the sacrificer from heaven. Therefore (some other men) must gather up for him when he is seated (having turned the face eastward) the remainder of the offering, which he then sacrifices just in its turn.<sup>7</sup> This is the penance for it.

They ask, If the sacrificial spoon (*sruch*) should be broken, what is the penance for it? He ought to take another *Sruch* and sacrifice with it. Then he shall throw the broken *Sruch* into the Ahavaniya fire, the stick being in the front, and its cavity behind. This is the penance for it.

They ask, If the fire in the Ahavaniya only is burning, but that in the Gârhapatya is extinguished, what is the penance for it? When he

<sup>4</sup> It is only burnt by the ashes, but not sacrificed in the proper way.

<sup>5</sup> *Unmiff.* Sâya. understands by it the placing of the offering into the Agnihotrâ-havani, which is a kind of large spoon.

<sup>6</sup> See 3, 28.

<sup>7</sup> Four times a portion is to be poured into the Agnihotrâ-havani.

takes off the [448] eastern portion of the Ahavaniya (for the Gârhapatya), then he might lose his place; if he takes off the western portion, then he would spread the sacrifice in the way the Asuras do; if he kindles (a new fire) by friction, then he might produce an enemy to the sacrificer; if he extinguishes it, then the vital breath would leave the sacrificer. Thence he must take the whole (Ahavaniya fire) and, mixing it with its ashes, place it in the Gârhapatya, and then take off the eastern part as Ahavaniya. This is the penance for it.

### 6.

(The Penances for a Firebrand taken from a Sacred Fire, for Mingling the Sacred Fires with one another, or with Profane Fires.)

They ask, If they take fire from that belonging to an Agnihotri,\* what is the penance for it? Should another Agni be at hand, then he should put him in the place of the former which has been taken. Were this not the case, then he ought to portion out to *Agni Agnivat* a Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces (kapālas). The Anuvākya and Yājyā required for this purpose are, *agninā agniḥ samidhyate* (fire is kindled by fire, 1, 12, 6); *tvām hy āgne āgninā* (8, 43, 14). Or, he may omit the Anuvākya and Yājyā verses and (simply) throw (melted butter) into the Ahavaniya, under the recital of the words, *to Agni Agnivat Svāhā!* This is the penance for it.

They ask, When some one's Ahavaniya and Gârhapatya fires should become mutually mingled together, what is the penance for it? One must portion out to *Agni viti* a Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces, under the recital of the following [449] Anuvākya and Yājyā verses: *agna āyāhi vitaye* 6, 16, 10; *yo agnim devavitaye* (1, 12, 9). Or, he may (simply) sacrifice (melted butter), under the recital of, *to Agni viti Svāhā!* in the Ahavaniya fire. This is the penance for it.

They ask, When all the (three) fires of an Agnihotri should become mutually mingled together, what is the penance for it? One must portion out to *Agni Virichi* (Agni, the separator) a Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces, and repeat the following Anuvākya and Yājyā verses: *svaṇa vastor uṣasām arochi* (7, 10, 2); *tvām agne mānuṣir ite viśaḥ* (5, 8, 3). Or, he may (simply) offer (melted butter), under the recital of, *to Agni Virichi Svāhā!* in the Ahavaniya fire. This is the penance for it.

---

\*Sāy. understands the fire which is taken from the Ahavaniya and placed in the Gârhapatya.

They ask, When some one's fires are mingled together with other fires, what is the penance for it? One must portion out to *Agni kṣmāvat* a Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces, under the recital of the following Anuvākyā and Yājyā: *akrandad agnis tanayan* (10, 45, 4); *adhā yathā naḥ pitaraḥ parāsaḥ* (4, 2, 16). Or, he may (simply) sacrifice (melted butter), under the recital of, *Agni kṣmāvat Svāhā!* in the Ahavaniya fire. This is the penance for it.

### 7.

(The Penance for a Sacred Fire becoming Mixed with those of a Conflagration in a Village, or in a Wood, or with Lightning, or with those Burning a Corpse.)

They ask, When the fires of an Agnihotri should burn together with the fire of a general conflagration in the village, what is the penance for it? He ought to portion out a Puroḍāśa consisting of eight pieces to *Agni Samvarga* (Agni, the mingler), under the recital of the following Anuvākyā and Yājyā: *kuit su no gaviṣṭaye* (8, 64, 11), *mā no asmin mahādhe* (8, 64, [450] 12). Or, he may (simply) sacrifice (melted butter) under the recital of, *to Agni Samvarga Svāhā!* in the Ahavaniya fire. This is the penance for it.

They ask, When the fires of an Agnihotri (have been struck) by lightning, and become mingled with it, what is the penance for it? He must offer to *Agni apsumat* (water Agni) a Puroḍāśa consisting of eight pieces, under the recital of the following Anuvākyā and Yājyā: *Apsv agne* (8, 43, 9); *mayô dadhe* (3, 1, 3). Or, he may (simply) sacrifice (melted butter), under the recital of, *to Agni apsumat Svāhā!* in the Ahavaniya fire. This is the penance for it.

They ask, When the fires of an Agnihotri should become mingled with the fire which burns a corpse, what is the penance for it? He must offer to *Agni śuchi* a Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces, under the recital of the following Anuvākyā and Yājyā: *Agniḥ śuchi vratatamaḥ* (8, 44, 21); *ud agne śuchayas tara* (8, 14, 17). Or, he may (simply) sacrifice (melted butter), under the recital of, *to Agni śuchi Svāhā!* in the Ahavaniya fire. This is the penance for it.

They ask, When the fires of an Agnihotri should burn together with those of a forest conflagration, what is the penance for it? He shall catch the fires with the *Araṇis* (the two wooden sticks used for producing fire), or (if this be impossible) he should save a firebrand from either the

Ahavanīya or Gārhapatya. Where this is impossible, then he must offer to *Agni Samvarga* (Agni, the mixer) a Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces, under the recital of the abovementioned Anuvākya and Yājyā (which belong to the Agni Samvarga). Or, he may (simply) sacrifice (melted butter), under the recital of, *to Agni Samvarga Svāhā* in the Ahavanīya fire. This is the penance for it.

## 8.

**[451]** (*The Penances when the Agnihotri Sheds Tears, or Breaks his Vow, or Neglects the Performance of the Darśapūrṇima Iṣṭi, or when he allows his Fires to go out.*)

They ask, When an Agnihotri on the day previous to the sacrifice should shed tears, by which the Puroḍāśa might be sullied, what is the penance for it? He must offer to *Agni Vratabhṛt* (Agni, the bearer of vows) a Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces, under the recital of the following Anuvākya and Yājyā: *tvam agne vratabhṛt śuchir* (Aśv. Śr. S. 3, 11) *vratāni bibhrad vratapā* (Aśv. Śr. S. 3, 11).<sup>9</sup> Or, he may sacrifice (melted butter), under the recital of, *to Agni vratabhṛt Svāhā!* in the Ahavanīya fire. This is the penance for it.

They ask, When an Agnihotri should do something contrary to his vow (religion) on the day previous to the sacrifice, what is the penance for it? He must offer a Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces to *Agni vratapati* (Agni, the lord of vows), under the recital of the following Anuvākya and Yājyā: *tvam agne vratapā asi* (8, 11, 1); *yad vo vāyam pramināma* (10, 2, 4). Or, he may sacrifice (melted butter), under the recital of, *to Agni vratapati Svāhā!* in the Ahavanīya fire. This is the penance for it.

They ask, When an Agnihotri should neglect the celebration of the New Moon or Full Moon sacrifices, **[452]** what is the penance for it? He must offer to *Agni pathikṛt* (paver of ways) a Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces, under the recital of the following Anuvākya and Yājyā:

The Anuvākya is according to Aśval:

स्वमग्ने व्रतभृच्छुचिरग्ने देवानिहावह ।

उप यज्ञं हविश्च नः ॥

The Yājyā is:

व्रतानि बिभ्रद्व्रतपा अदग्धो यज्ञानो देवानजरः सुवीरः ।

दधद्रानानि सुमृलीको अग्ने गोपाय नो जीवसे ज्ञातवेदः ॥

*vettha hi redho adhvana* (6, 16, 3); *â devânâm api* (10, 2, 3). Or, he may sacrifice (melted butter), under the recital of, *to Agni Pathikṛit Srâhâ!* in the Ahavaniya fire. This is the penance for it.

They ask, When all (three) fires of an Agnihotri should go out, what is the penance for it? He must offer to *Agni tapasvat, janadvat* and *pâkavat*, a Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces, under the recital of the following Anuvākya and Yājyâ: *dyâhi tapasâ janeṣu* (Aśv. Śr. S. 3, 11); *â no yâhi tapasâ* (Aśv. Śr. S. 3, 11).<sup>10</sup> Or, he may sacrifice (melted butter) in the Ahavaniya fire, under the recital of, *to Agni tapasvat, janadvat pâkavat, Srâhâ!* This is the penance for it.

### 9.

(Pencances for an Agnihotri when he Eats New Corn without bringing the Sacrifice prescribed. and for Various Mishaps and Neglect when sacrific-  
sing.)

They ask, When an Agnihotri eats new corn without having offered the Agrayana <sup>11</sup> iṣṭi, what is the penance for it? He must offer to *Agni Vaiśvânara* a Puroḍāśa, consisting of twelve pieces, under the [453] recital of the following Anuvākya and Yājyâ: *Vaiśvânaro ajījanat* (?); *prīṣṭo divi prīṣṭo* (1, 98, 2). Or, he may offer to *Agni Vaiśvânara* (melted butter) in the Ahavaniya fire, under the recital of, *to Agni vaiśvânara Srâhâ!* This is the penance for it.

They ask, When one of the potsherds (*kapālas*) containing the Puroḍāśa should be destroyed, what is the penance for it? He must offer a Puroḍāśa, consisting of two pieces, to the Aśvins, under the recital of the following Anuvākya and Yājyâ: *āśvinâ vartir* (1, 92, 16); *â gomâtâ nasatya* (7, 72, 1). Or, he may sacrifice (melted butter) in the Ahavaniya fire under the recital of, *to the Aśvins Srâhâ!* This is the penance for it.

<sup>10</sup> The Anuvākya is :

आयाहि तपसा जनेष्वग्ने पावको अचिरा ।

उपेमां सुष्टुतिं मम ॥

The Yājyâ is :

आ नो याहि तपसा जनेष्वग्ने पावक दीद्यत् ।

इव्या देवेषु नो दद्यत् ॥

<sup>11</sup> This Iṣṭi is prescribed to be performed before the Agnihotri is allowed to eat new corn.



They ask, When the stalks of kuśa grass (*pavitra*) (on which the offering is placed) should be destroyed, what is the penance for it? He must offer to *Agni pavitravat* a Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces, under the recital of the following Anuvākyā and Yājyā : *pavitram te vitatam* (9, 83, 1) ; *tapoṣ pavitram* (9, 83, 2). Or, he may offer (melted butter) in the Ahavaniya fire under the recital of, to *Agni pavitravat Svāhā!* This is the penance for it.

They ask, When the gold of an Agnihotri should be destroyed, what is the penance for it? He must offer to *Agni hiranyavat* Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces, under the recital of the following Anuvākyā and Yājyā : *hiranyākeśo rajaso visūra* (1, 79, 1); *ā te suparṇā aminantam* (1, 79, 2). Or, he may offer (melted butter) in the Ahavaniya fire, under the recital of, to *Agni hiranyavat Svāhā!* This is the penance for it.

They ask, When an Agnihotri offers the fire oblation without having performed in the morning the usual ablution, what is the penance for it? He must offer to *Agni Varuṇa* a Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces, under the recital of the following [454] Anuvākyā and Yājyā : *tram no agne varuṇaṣa* (4, 1, 4); *sa tram no agne aramo* (4, 1, 5). Or, he may offer (melted butter) in the Ahavaniya fire, under the recital of, to *Agni Varuṇa Svāhā!* This is the penance for it.

They ask, When an Agnihotri eats food prepared by a woman who is confined (*sītaka*), what is the penance for it? He must offer to *Agni tantumat* a Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces, under the recital of the following Anuvākyā and Yājyā : *tantum tanvan rajaso* (10, 53, 6); *akṣīnaho nahy tanota* (10, 53, 7). Or, he may sacrifice (melted butter) in the Ahavaniya fire, under the recital of, to *Agni tantumat Svāhā!* This is the penance for it.

They ask, When an Agnihotri hears, when living, any one, an enemy, say, that he (the Agnihotri) is dead, what is the penance for it? He must offer to *Agni surabhimat* a Puroḍāśa, consisting of eight pieces, under the recital of the following Anuvākyā and Yājyā : *Agnir hotā nyasīdad* (5, 1, 6); *sādhvim akar dera vītim* (10, 53, 3). Or, he may sacrifice (melted butter) in the Ahavaniya fire, under the recital of, to *Agnir surabhimat Svāhā!* This is the penance for it.

They ask, When the wife or the cow of an Agnihotri give birth to twins, what is the penance for it? He must offer to *Agni marutvat* a Puroḍāśa, consisting of thirteen pieces, under the recital of the

following Anuvākya and Yājñyā : *maruto yasya hi kṣye* (1, 86, 1) ; *arā ived* (5, 58, 5). Or, he may sacrifice (melted butter) in the Ahavaniya fire, under the recital of, *to Agni marutvat Śākhā!* This is the penance for it.

They ask, Should an Agnihotri, who has lost his wife, bring the fire oblation, or should he not? He should do so. If he does not do so, then he is called [455] an Anaddhā<sup>13</sup> man. Who is an Anaddhā? He who offers oblations to neither the gods, nor to the ancestors, nor to men. Therefore, the Agnihotri who has lost his wife, should nevertheless bring the burnt offering (*agnihotram*). There is a stanza concerning sacrificial customs, where is said, "He who has lost his wife may bring the Sāutrāmaṇi<sup>13</sup> sacrifice; for he is not allowed to drink Soma! But he must discharge the duties towards his parents."<sup>14</sup> But, whereas the sacred tradition (*śruti*) enjoins sacrifice,<sup>15</sup> let him bring the Soma sacrifice.

#### 10.

[456] *How the Agnihotram of Him Who has no Wife becomes Performed*.<sup>16</sup>

They ask, In what way does an Agnihotri who has no wife, bring his oblations with Speech (*i. e.*, by repeating the mantras required with his voice)? In what way does he offer his (daily) burnt offering, when his wife dies, after he has already entered on the state of an Agnihotri, his wife

<sup>13</sup> By this term, a man is to be understood who, from reasons which are not culpable, does not discharge his duties towards the gods, ancestors and men. All the MSS. read *manuṣyā*, instead of *manuṣyān*.

<sup>14</sup> The *Sāutrāmaṇi* (*iṣṭi*) is a substitute for the Soma sacrifice. Some spirituous liquor is taken instead of Soma, and milk. Both liquids are filled in the Soma vessels. It is performed in various ways. It is mentioned, and its performance briefly described in the *Āśval. Śr. S. 3, 9*, and in the *Kāṭiya Sūtras* (in the 19th *Adhyāya*). From three to four animals are immolated, one to the *Āśvins*, one to *Sarasvatī*, one to *Indra*, and one to *Bṛihaspati*. The *Paśupuroḍāśa* are for *Indra*, *Savitar* and *Varuṇa*. The *Puronuvākya* for the offering of the spirituous liquor is, *yuvāṇi surāman aśeṇā* (10, 11, 4). The *Praīṣa* for repeating the *Yājñyā* mantra is as follows :—

होता यक्षदध्निना सरस्वतीमिन्द्रं सुत्रामाणं सोमानां सुरामणां

जुपन्तां व्यन्तु पिबन्तु मदन्तु सोमानसुरामणो होतर्यज्ञ

(The offering to be presented to the *Āśvins*, *Sarasvatī*, and *Indra* *Sutrāman*, are here called *somāḥ surāmanah*, *i. e.*, Soma drops which are spirituous liquor). The *Yājñyā* is *putram ita pitarāu* (10, 131, 5). The sacrifice is brought up to the present day in the *Dekkhan*

<sup>15</sup> In another *Śākhā*, there is said, that a *Brāhman* has incurred three debts, the *Brahmachāryam* or celibacy as a debt to the *Riṣis*, the sacrifice as a debt to the gods, and the necessity of begetting children as a debt to the *Pitaras*.—*Sāy*.

<sup>16</sup> "Worship the gods by sacrificing, read the *Vedas*, and beget children!" This is the sacred tradition (*Śruti*) here alluded to.—*Sāy*.

<sup>17</sup> This paragraph offers considerable difficulties to the translator. Its style is not plain and perspicuous, and it appears that it is an interpolation as well as the following (11th) paragraph. But, whether it is an interpolation of later times is very doubtful. The piece may (to judge from its uncouth language) even be older than the bulk of the *Āitarēya*

having (by her death) destroyed the qualification for the performance of (the daily) burnt offering? <sup>11</sup>

They say, That one has children, grand-children, and relations in this world, and in that world. In this world, there is heaven (*i. e.*, heaven is to be gained in this world by sacrificing). (The Agnihotri who [457] has no wife, says to his children, &c.): "I have ascended to heaven by means of what was no heaven (*i. e.*, by the sacrifice performed in this world)." He who does not wish for a (second) wife (for having his sacrificial ceremonies continuously performed), keeps thus (by speaking to his children, &c., in the way indicated) his connection with the other world up. Thence they (his children) establish (new fires, for him who has lost his wife.

How does he who has no wife, bring his oblations (with his mind)? (The answer is) Faith is his wife, and Truth the sacrificer. The marriage of Faith and Truth is a most happy one. For by Faith and Truth joined, they conquer the celestial world.

# 11.

(On the Different Names of the Full and New Moon.)

They say, If an Agnihotri, who has not pledged himself by the usual vow, makes preparations for the performance of the Full and New Moon sacrifices, then the gods do not eat his food. If he, therefore, when making his preparations, thinks, might the gods eat my food,<sup>12</sup> (then they

Brāhmaṇam. Sāy., who inverts their order, says, that they are found in some countries, whereas they are wanting in others. In his Commentary on the 10th paragraph, Sāy. does several times violence to grammar. He asserts, for instance, that आहुः after पुत्रान् is to be taken in the sense of the third person singular of the potential, standing for भूयात्. The same sense of a potential he gives to the perfect tense, अरुरोह. Both these explanations are inadmissible. The purport of this paragraph is to show, in what way an Agnihotri may continue his sacrificial career, though it be interrupted by the death of his wife. For the rule is, that the sacrificer must always have his wife with him (their hands are tied together on such an occasion) when he is sacrificing.

<sup>11</sup> This is the translation of the term, नाश्रिविघ्नोत्तम, which I take as a kind of compound. Sāy. explains it, नाश्रम एव भवति पितृवासिद्धिर्नाश्रिविघ्नोत्तमपक्षे पुनराग्निहोत्रादित्तिनाम अग्निनाम अलुङ्घ्यत. नाश्रि is to be taken in the sense of an active past participle, "having destroyed," *vi* appears to have the sense of *ava*, as Sāy. explains. That *vi* can form part of a compound as the word, अभिखिन्यायत्सा proves (7, 2).

<sup>12</sup> All this refers to an Agnihotri, who has lost his wife and is continuing his sacrifice.

eat it). He ought to make all the preparations on the first part of the New Moon day ; this is the opinion of the *Pañgyas* : he shall make them on the latter part ; this is the opinion of the *Kāuṣītakis*. The first part of the Full Moon day is called *Anumati*,<sup>19</sup> the latter *Rākā* ; the first [458] part of the New Moon day is called *Sinivālī*, and its latter part *Kuhū*. The space which the moon requires for setting and rising again is called *Tithi* (lunar day). Without paying any attention (to the opinion of the *Pañgyas*) to make the preparations on the first part of the Full Moon day, he brings his sacrifice when he meets (sees) the Moon (rising) on the New Moon day ; <sup>20</sup> on this (day) they buy the Soma. Therefore he must always make his preparations on the second part of either the Full or New Moon days (i. e., on the days on which the moon enters into either phase). All days which follow, belong to Soma (the Soma sacrifice may be completed.) He brings the Soma sacrifice as far as the Soma is a deity ; for the divine Soma is the moon. Therefore, he must make the preparations on the second part of that lunar day.

## 12.

(On Some Other Penances for Mishaps occurring to an Agnihotri. Where the Agnihotri must Walk between his Fires. Whether the Dakṣiṇa Agni is to be Fed with the other Fires also. How an Agnihotri should Behave when absent from his Fires.)

They ask, If the sun rise or set before an Agnihotri takes fire out of (the Gārhapatya to bring it to the Ahavaniya), or should it, when placed (in the Ahavaniya), be extinguished before he brings the burnt offering (Homa), what is the penance for it ? He shall take it out after sunset, after having placed a piece of gold before it ; for light is a splendid [459] body (*śukram*), and gold is the splendid light, and that body

<sup>19</sup> The lunar day on which either the Full Moon or New Moon takes place, is divided into two parts, and is consequently broken. For the fourteenth *tithi* (or lunar day) is at an end, though it might not have been lasting for the usual time of thirty *Muhūrtas*, as soon as the disk of the moon appears to the eye, either completely full, or (at the New Moon) distinctly visible. The broken lunar day (the fourteenth) is then called *Anumati* at the Full Moon time, and *Sinivālī* at the New Moon time ; the remaining part of the day (till the moon sets) is then either *Rākā* or *Kuhū*. This part of the day forms, then, part either of the proper Full Moon or New Moon day (the fifteenth).

<sup>20</sup> That is, on the fifteenth.

(the sun) is just this light. Seeing it shining, he takes out the fire. At morning time (after sunrise), he may take out the fire when he has put silver below it; for this (silver) is of the same nature with the night (representing the splendour of the moon and the stars). He shall take out (of the Gârhapatya) the Ahavaniya before the shadows are cast together (before it has grown completely dark). For the shadow of darkness is death. By means of this light (the silver), he overcomes death, which is the shadow of darkness. This is the penance.

They ask, When a cart, or a carriage, or horses go over the Gârhapatya and Ahavaniya fires of an Agnihotri, what is the penance for it? He shall not mind it at all, thus they say, believing that these things (their types) are placed in his soul. But should he mind it, then he shall form a line of water drops from the Gârhapatya, to the Ahavaniya under the recital of *tantum tanvam rajaso* (10, 53 6). This is the penance.

They ask, Shall the Agnihotri, when feeding the (other) fires with wood, make the Dakṣiṇa Agni (*ancâhârya pachanad*) also to blaze up brightly, or shall he not do so? Who feeds the fires, puts into his soul the vital breaths; of these fires, the Dakṣiṇa Agni provides (the feeder) best with food. He gives him therefore an offering, saying, "to Agni, the enjoyer of food, the master of food, *Swâhâ*!" He who thus knows, becomes an enjoyer of food, and a master of food, and obtains children and food.

The Agnihotri must walk between the Gârhapatya and Ahavaniya when he is about to sacrifice; for the Agnis (fires) when perceiving him walk thus, know, "he is about to bring us a sacrifice." By this both these fires destroy all wickedness of him who is thus walking (between them). Whose wickedness [460] is thus destroyed, goes up to the heavenly world. Thus it is declared in another Brâhmaṇam which they quote.

They ask, How can an Agnihotri, who intends going abroad, be near his sacred fires (established at his home)? Can he do it when absent, or is he to return to them every day? He shall approach them silently (in his mind, without repeating the mantras). For, by keeping silence, they aspire after fortune. But some say (he should go to them) every day. For the Agnis of an Agnihotri lose all confidence in him by his absence, fearing lest they be removed or scattered. Therefore he must approach them, and, should he not be able to return, he must repeat the words, "May you be safe! may I be safe!" In this way, the Agnihotri is safe.

## THIRD CHAPTER.

*(The Story of Sunah̥śepa)*

## 13

*(King Hariścandra wishes for a Son. Stanzas praising the Possession of a Son).*

Hariścandra, the son of Vedhas, of the Ikṣvāku race, was a king who had no son. Though he had a hundred wives, they did not give birth to a son. In his house there lived the Rīṣis, Parvata and Nārada. Once the king addressed to Nārada (the following stanza):

“Since all beings, those endowed with reason (men) as well as those who are without it (beasts) wish for a son, what is the fruit to be obtained by having a son? This tell me, O Nārada?”

Nārada thus addressed in one stanza, replied in (the following) ten :

1. The father pays a debt in his son, and gains immortality, when he beholds the face of a son living who was born to him.

2. The pleasure which a father has in his son, exceeds the enjoyment of all other beings, be they on the earth, or in the fire, or in the water.

3. Fathers always overcome great difficulties through a son. (In him) the Self is born out of Self. The son is like a well-provisioned boat, which carries him over.

4. “What is the use of living unwashed,<sup>1</sup> wearing the goatskin,<sup>2</sup> and beard?<sup>3</sup> What is the use of performing austerities?<sup>4</sup> You should wish for a son, O Brahmins!” Thus people talk of them<sup>5</sup> (who forego the married life on account of religious devotion).

5. Food preserves life, clothes protect from cold, gold (golden ornaments) gives beauty, marriages produce wealth in cattle;<sup>6</sup> the wife is the friend, the daughter object of compassion, but the son shines as his light in the highest heaven.

<sup>1</sup> Here the *Grīhastha* is meant.

<sup>2</sup> The *Brahmachāri* is alluded.

<sup>3</sup> The *Vanaprastha*, or hermit is to be understood.

<sup>4</sup> The *Pariurājaka*, or religious mendicant is meant.

<sup>5</sup> *Avadavadaḥ*, i. e., pronouncing a blame. Sây. takes the word in a different sense, “not deserving blame on account of being free from guilt.” This explanation is artificial.

<sup>6</sup> At certain kinds of marriages, the so-called *Arṣa* (the Rīṣi marriage), a pair of cows was given as a dowry. See *Aśval. Gṛhy. Sâtr.* 1, 6.

6. The husband enters the wife (in the shape of seed), and, when the seed is changed to an embryo, he makes her mother, from whom, after having become regenerated, in her, he is born in the tenth month.

7. His wife is only then a real wife (*jāyā*, from *jan*, to be born) when he is born in her again. The [462] seed which is placed in her, she developes to a being and sets it forth.

8. The Gods and the Rishis endowed her with great beauty. The gods then told to men, this being is destined to produce you again.

9. He who has no child, has no place (no firm footing). This even know the beasts. Thence the son cohabits (among beasts even) with his mother and sister.

10. This is the broad, well-trodden path on which those who have sons walk free from sorrows. Beasts and birds know it; thence they cohabit (even) with their own mothers.

Thus he told.

#### 14.

*(A Son is Born to Hariśchandra. Varuṇa repeatedly requests the King to sacrifice his Son to him; but the Sacrifice is under different pretences always Put Off by the King.)*

Nārada then told him, "Go and beg of Varuṇa, the king, that he might favour you with the birth of a son (promising him at the same time) to sacrifice to him this son when born." He went to Varuṇa, the king, praying, "Let a son be born to me; I will sacrifice him to thee." Then a son, Rohita by name, was born to him. Varuṇa said to him, "A son is born to thee, sacrifice him to me." Hariśchandra said, "An animal is fit for being sacrificed, when it is more than ten days old. Let him reach this age, then I will sacrifice him to thee." After Rohita had passed the age of ten days, Varuṇa said to him, "He is now past ten days, sacrifice him to me." Hariśchandra answered, "An animal is fit for being sacrificed when its teeth come. Let his teeth come, then I will sacrifice [463] him to thee." After his teeth had come, Varuṇa said to Hariśchandra, "His teeth have now come, sacrifice him to me." He answered, "An animal is fit for being sacrificed when its teeth fall out. Let his teeth fall out, then I will sacrifice him to thee." His teeth fell out. He then said, "His teeth are falling out, sacrifice him to me." He said, "An animal is fit for being sacrificed when its teeth have come again. Let his teeth come again, then I will sacrifice him to thee." His teeth

<sup>1</sup> The words, *ajnatavāi* and *apatsatavāi*, are a kind of infinitive.

came again. Varuṇa said, "His teeth have now come again, sacrifice him to me." He answered, "A man of the warrior caste is fit for being sacrificed only after having received his full armour. Let him receive his full armour, then I will sacrifice him to thee." He then was invested with the armour. Varuṇa then said, "He has now received the armour, sacrifice him to me." After having thus spoken, he called his son, and told him, "Well, my dear, to him who gave thee unto me, I will sacrifice thee now." But the son said, 'No, no,' took his bow and absconded to the wilderness, where he was roaming about for a year.

---

### 15.

*(Continuation of this story. Rohita, Hariścandra's Son, Purchases, after Six Years of fruitless Wanderings in the Forest, a Brahman boy, Śunahśepa by name, from his parents, to be sacrificed in his stead by Hariścandra to Varuṇa. Stanzas.)*

Varuṇa now seized Hariścandra, and his belly swelled (i. e., he was attacked by dropsy). When Rohita heard of it, he left the forest, and went to a village, where Indra in human disguise met him, and said to him, "There is no happiness for him who does not travel, Rohita! thus we have heard. Living [434] in the society of men, the best man (often) becomes a sinner (by seduction, which is best avoided by wandering in places void of human dwellings); for Indra surely is the friend of the traveller. Therefore, wander!"

Rohita thinking, a Brāhman told me to wander, wandered for a second year in the forest. When he was entering a village, after having left the forest, Indra met him in human disguise, and said to him, "The feet of the wanderer are like the flower, his soul is growing and reaping the fruit; and all his sins are destroyed by his fatigues in wandering. Therefore, wander!"

Rohita thinking, a Brāhman told me to wander, wandered then a third year in the forest. When he was entering a village, after having left the forest, Indra met him in human disguise, and said to him, "The fortune of him who is sitting, sits; it rises when he rises; it sleeps when he sleeps; it moves when he moves. Therefore, wander!"

Rohita thinking, a Brāhman told me to wander, wandered then a fourth year in the forest. When he was entering a village, after having left the forest, Indra said to him, "The Kali is lying on the ground, the Dvāpara is hovering there; the Tretā is getting up, but the Kṛita



happens to walk (hither and thither).<sup>a</sup> Therefore, wander, wander !”

Rohita thinking, a Brâhman told me to wander, wandered for a fifth year in the forest. When he was [465] entering a village, after having left the forest, Indra said to him, “The wanderer finds honey and the sweet Udumbara fruit ; behold the beauty of the sun, who is not wearied by his wanderings. Therefore, wander, wander !”

Rohita then wandered for a sixth year in the forest. He met (this time) the Rishi Ajigarta, the son of Suyavasa, who was starving, in the forest. He had three sons, Śunaḥpuchha, Śunaḥśepa, and Śunolangûla. He told him, “Rishi ! I give thee a hundred cows ; for I will ransom myself (from being sacrificed) with one of these (thy sons).” Ajigarta then excepted the oldest, saying, “Do not take him,” and the mother excepted the youngest, saying, “Do not take him.” Thus they agreed upon the middle one, Śunaḥśepa. He then gave for him a hundred cows, left the forest, entered the village, and brought him before his father, saying, “O my dear (father) ! by this boy I will ransom myself (from being sacrificed).” He then approached Varuṇa, the king (and said), “I will sacrifice him to thee !” He said, “Well, let it be done : for a Brâhman is worth more than a Kṣatriya !” Varuṇa then explained to the king the rites of the Râjasûya sacrifice, at which, on the day appointed for the inauguration (*abhiṣechanîya*), he replaced the (sacrificial animal) by a man.

### 16.

*(The Sacrifice with the intended Human Victim comes off. Four Great Rishis were officiating as Priests. Śunaḥśepa prays to the Gods to be Released from the Fearful Death. The Rik verses which he used mentioned, and the different Deities to whom he applied).*

At this sacrifice, Viśvâmitra was his Hotar, Jamadagni his Adhvaryu, Vasishṭha his Brahmâ, and Ayaśya his Udgâtar. After the preliminary ceremonies had been performed, they could not find a person willing to bind him to the sacrificial post. Ajigarta, the son of Suyavasa, then

---

<sup>a</sup> Sây. does not give any explanation of this important passage, where the names of the Yugas are mentioned for the first time. These four names are, as is well known from other sources (see the Sanscrit Dictionary by Boehtlingk and Roth, s. v. *kali*, *dvâpara*, &c.,) names of dice, used at gambling. The meaning of this Gâtha is, There is every success to be hoped ; for the unluckiest die, the Kali, is lying, two others are slowly moving and half fallen, but the luckiest, the Kṛita, is in full motion. The position of dice given here is indicative of a fair chance of winning the game.

said, "Give me another hundred (cows), and I will bind him." They gave him another hundred, whereupon he bound him. After he had been bound, the *Apri* verses recited, and the fire carried round him,<sup>9</sup> they could not find a slaughterer. *Ajigarta* then said, "Give me another hundred, and I will kill him." They gave him another hundred. He then whetted his knife and went to kill his son. *Śunaḥśepa* then got aware that they were going to butcher him just as if he were no man (but a beast.) "Well" said he, "I will seek shelter with the gods." He applied to *Prajâpati*, who is the first of the gods, with the verse, *kasya nûnam hatamasya* (1, 24, 1). *Prajâpati* answered him, "Agni is the nearest of the gods, go to him." He then applied to Agni, with the verse, *agner vayam prathamasya amritânâm* (1, 24, 2). Agni answered him, "Savitar rules over the creatures, go to him." He then applied to Savitar with the three verses (1, 24, 3-5) beginning with, *abhi tvâ deva Savitar*. Savitar answered him, "Thou art bound for Varuṇa, the King, go to him." He applied to Varuṇa with the following thirty-one verses (124, 6-25, 21). Varuṇa then answered him, "Agni is the mouth of the gods, and the most compassionate of them. Praise him now! then we shall release you." He then praised Agni with twenty-two verses (1, 26, 1 = 27, 12). Agni then answered, "Praise the *Viśve Devas*, then we shall release you." He then praised the *Viśve Devas* with the verse (1, 27, 13), *namo mahadbhyo namo arbhakebhyo*. The *Viśve Devas* answered, "Indra is the strongest, the most powerful, the most enduring, the most true of the [467] gods, who knows best how to bring to an end anything. Praise him, then we shall release you." He then praised Indra with the hymn (1, 29), *yach chid dhi satya somapâ*, and with fifteen verses of the following one (1, 30, 1-15). Indra, who had become pleased with his praise, presented him with a golden carriage. This present he accepted with the verse, *śasvad indra* (1, 30, 16). Indra then told him, "Praise the *Aśvins*, then we shall release you." He then praised the *Aśvins*, with the three verses which follow the abovementioned (1, 30, 17-19). The *Aśvins* then answered, "Praise *Uṣâs* (Dawn), then we shall release you." He then praised *Uṣâs* with the three verses which follow the *Aśvin* verses (1, 30, 20-22). As he repeated one verse after the other, the fetters (of Varuṇa) were falling off, and the belly of *Haris̥chandra* became smaller. And, after he had done repeating the last verse, (all) the fetters were taken off, and *Haris̥chandra* restored to health again.

<sup>9</sup> See Ait. Br. 2, 3-5.

(*Śunaḥśepa is Released. He Invents the Añjaḥ Sava Preparation of the Soma. Viśvāmitra Adopts him as his Son. Stanzas.*)

The priests now said to Śunaḥśepa, "Thou art now only ours (thou art now a priest like us) ; take part in the performance of the particular ceremonies of this day (the *abiṣechanīya* )." He then saw (invented) the method of direct preparation of the Soma juice (*añjaḥ sava* without intermediate fermentation) after it is squeezed, and carried it out under the recital of the four verses, *yach chid dhi tvam grihe grihe* (1,285-8). Then, by the verse, *uchchhiṣṭam chamvor* (1, 28, 9), he brought it into the Dronakaśasa.<sup>10</sup> Then [468], after having been touched by Hariśchandra, he sacrificed the Soma, under the recital of the four first verses (of the hymn, *yatra grāvā prithubudhna* (1, 28, 1-4), which were accompanied by the formula *Swāhá*. Then he brought the implements required for making the concluding ceremonies (*avabhṛitha*) of this sacrifice to the spot, and performed them under the recital of the two verses, *tvam no agne Varuṇasya* (4, 1, 4-5). Then, after this ceremony was over, Śunaḥśepa summoned Hariśchandra to the Ahavaniya fire,<sup>11</sup> and recited the verse, *Śunaḥ chichchhepam niditam* (5, 2, 7).

Śunaḥśepa then approached the side of Viśvāmitra (and sat by him). Ajigarta, the son of Suyavasa, then said, "O Ṛṣi ! return me my son." He answered, "No, for the gods have presented (*devā arāsata*) him to me." Since that time, he was *Devarāta*, Viśvāmitra's son. From him come the *Kapileyas* and *Babhravas*. Ajigarta further said, "Come, then, we (thy mother and I myself) will call thee," and added, "Thou art known as the seer from Ajigarta's family, as a descendant of the Angirasah. Therefore, O Ṛṣi, do not leave your ancestral home ; return to me." Śunaḥśepa answered, "What is not found even in the hands of a Śūdra, one has seen in thy hand, the knife (to kill thy son); three hundred cows thou hast preferred to me, O Angiras !" Ajigarta then answered, "O my dear son ! I repent of the bad deed I have committed ; I blot out this stain ! one hundred of the cows shall be thine !"

Śunaḥśepa answered, "Who once might commit such a sin, may commit the same another time ; thou art still not free from the brutality of a Śūdra, for thou hast committed a crime for

<sup>10</sup> The large vessel for keeping the Soma in readiness for sacrificial purposes, after it has been squeezed.

<sup>11</sup> They returned from the place of the Uttarā Vēdi to the Vēdi, where the *ṛṣis* are performed.

which no reconcilia- [469] tion exists." "Yes, irreconcilable (is this act)," interrupted Viśvāmitra.

Viśvāmitra then said, "Fearful was Suyavasa's son (to look at) when he was standing ready to murder, holding the knife in his hand; do not become his son again; but enter my family as my son." Śunahṣepa then said, "O prince, let us know, tell (us) how I, as an Aṅgirasah, can enter thy family as thy (adopted) son?" Viśvāmitra answered, "Thou shalt be the first born of my sons, and thy children the best. Thou shalt now enter on the possession of my divine heritage. I solemnly instal thee to it." Śunahṣepa then said, "When thy sons should agree to thy wish that I should enter thy family, O thou best of the Bharatas! then tell them for the sake of my own happiness to receive me friendly." Viśvāmitra then addressed his sons as follows: "Hear ye now, *Madhuchhandah*, *Riṣabha*, *Renu*, *Aṣṭaka*, and all ye brothers, do not think <sup>12</sup> yourselves (entitled) to the right of primogeniture, which is (Śunahṣepa's)."

## 18

(On Viśvāmitra's Descendants. How the Reciters of the Śunahṣepa story are to be Rewarded by the King. Stanzas. On the Pratigara for the Richas and Stanzas at this Occasion.)

This Rishi Viśvāmitra had a hundred sons, fifty of them were older than Madhuchhandās, and fifty were younger than he. The older ones were not pleased with (the installation of Śunahṣepa to the primogeniture). Viśvāmitra then pronounced against [470] them the curse, "You shall have the lowest castes for your descendants." Therefore are many of the most degraded classes of men, the rabble for the most part, such as the *Andhras*, *Pundras*, *Śabaras*, *Palindas*, and *Mātibas*, descendants of Viśvāmitra. But Madhuchhandās, with the fifty younger sons, said, "What our father approves of, by that we abide; we all accord to thee (Śunahṣepa) the first rank, and we will come after thee!" Viśvāmitra, deligated (at this answer) then praised these sons with the following verses:

"Ye my sons will have abundance of cattle and children, for you have made me rich in children by consenting to my wish."

<sup>12</sup> I have parsed the word *sthana* as *stha na*. If *sthana* is taken as a 2nd person plural, as Max Müller (following Śāyana) does in his translation of the story of Śunahṣepa (History of Ancient Sanscrit Literature, page 418), the passage is to be translated as follows: "and all you brothers that you are, think him to be entitled to the primogeniture."

"Ye sons of Gâthi, blessed with children, you all will be successful when headed by Devarâta; he will (always) lead you on the path of truth."

"This Devarâta, is your master (man); follow him, ye Kuśikas! He will exercise the paternal rights over you as his heritage from me, and take possession of the sacred knowledge that we have."

"All the true sons of Viśvâmitra, the grandsons of Gâthi, who forthwith stood with Devarâta, were blessed with wealth for their own welfare and renown."

"Devarâta is called the Rîṣi who entered on two heritages, the royal dignity of Jahnû's house, and the divine knowledge of Gâthi's stem."<sup>13</sup>

This is the story of Śunaḥśepa contained in the stanzas which are beyond the number of the hundred Rik verses <sup>14</sup> (recited along with them). The Hotar [471] when sitting on a gold embroidered carpet, recites them to the king, after he has been sprinkled with the sacred water. The Adhvaryu who repeats the responses sits likewise on a gold embroidered carpet. For gold is glory. This procures glory for the king (for whom these Gâthâs are repeated). *Om* is the Adhvaryu's response to a Rich (repeated by the Hotar), and *evam tathâ* (thus in this way it is) that to a Gâthâ (recited by the Hotar). For *Om* is divine (therefore applied to *richas*, which are a divine revelation), and *tathâ* human. By means of the divine (*om*) and human (*tathâ*) responses, the Adhvaryu makes the king free from sin and fault. Therefore any king who might be a conqueror (and consequently by shedding blood a sinner), although he might not bring a sacrifice, should have told the story of Śunaḥśepa. (If he do so) then not the slightest trace of sin (and its consequences) will remain in him. He must give a thousand cows to the teller of this story, and a hundred to him who makes the responses (required); and to each of them the (gold embroidered) carpet on which he was sitting; to the Hotar, besides, a silver decked carriage drawn by mules. Those who wish for children, should also have told this story; then they certainly will be blessed with children.

---

<sup>13</sup> Jahnû is the ancestor of Ajigarta, and Gâthi the father of Viśvâmitra.

<sup>14</sup> Sâyaṇa says that ninety-seven out of them had been seen by Śunaḥśepa and three by another Rîṣi. The term *pararik-sata gâtham âkhyânam* means, the "story which contains besides one hundred Rik verses Gâthâs (stanzas) also." The number of the latter is thirty-one.

## FOURTH CHAPTER.

(*The Preliminary Rites of the R̥jāsūya Sacrifice.*)

## 19.

(*The Relationship between the Brahma and Kṣattrā.*)

After Prajāpati had created the sacrifice, the *Brahma* (divine knowledge) and the *Kṣattrā* (sovereignty) were produced. After both two kinds of [472] creatures sprang up, such ones as eat the sacrificial food, and such ones as do not eat it. All eaters of the sacrificial food followed the *Brahma*, the non-eaters followed the *Kṣattrā*. Therefore, the Brahmins only are eaters of the sacrificial food ; whilst the *Kṣattriyas*, *Vaiśyas*, and *Śūdras* do not eat it.

The sacrifice went away from both of them. The *Brahma* and *Kṣattrā* followed it. The *Brahma* followed with all its implements, and the *Kṣattrā* followed (also) with its implements. The implements of the *Brahma* are those required for performing a sacrifice. The implements of the *Kṣattrā* are a horse, carriage, an armour, and a bow with arrow. The *Kṣattrā* not reaching the sacrifice, returned ; for, frightened by the weapons of the *Kṣattrā*, the sacrifice ran aside. The *Brahma* then followed the sacrifice, and reached it. Hemming thus the sacrifice in its further course, the *Brahma* stood still ; the sacrifice reached and hemmed in its course, stood still also, and recognising in the hand of the *Brahma* its own implements, returned to the *Brahma*. The sacrifice having thus remained only in the *Brahma*, it is therefore only placed among the Brahmins (*i.e.*, they alone are allowed to perform it.)

The *Kṣattrā* then ran after this *Brahma*, and said to it, "Allow me to take possession of this sacrifice (which is placed in thee)." The *Brahma* said, "Well, let it be so ; lay down thy own weapons, assume by means of the implements of the *Brahma* (the sacrificial implement) which constitute the *Brahma*, the form of the *Brahma*, and return to it !" The *Kṣattrā* obeyed, laid down its own weapons, assumed, by means of the implements of the *Brahma* which constitute the *Brahma*, its form, and returned to it. Therefore even a *Kṣat* [473] *triya*, when he lays down his weapons and assumes the form of the *Brahma* by means of the sacrificial implements, returns to the sacrifice (he is allowed a share in it.)

(On the Place of Worshipping the Gods asked for by the King at the Râjasûya.)

Then the king is to be requested to worship the gods. They ask, If a Brahman, Kṣattriya, or Vaiśya, who is to be initiated into the sacrificial rites, requests the king to grant a place for the worship of the gods, whom must the king himself request to do so? He must request the divine Kṣattra. Thus they say. This divine Kṣattra is Âditya [the sun]; for he is the ruler of all these beings. On the day on which the king is to be consecrated, in the forenoon, he must post himself towards the rising sun, and say, "This is among the lights the best light! [Rigveda 10, 1, 70, 3.] O god Savitar, grant me a place for the worship of gods."<sup>1</sup> By these words he asks for a place of worship. When Âditya, requested in this way, goes northwards, saying, "Yes, it may be so, I grant it," then nobody will do any harm to such a king, who is permitted [by Savitar to do so].

The fortune of a king who is consecrated in such a way by having secured the place of divine worship previously by the recital of the verse (mentioned above) and by addressing that request (to Savitar), will increase from day to day; and sovereign power over his subjects will remain with him.

## 21.

[474] (*The Iṣṭapūrta Aparijyâni Offerings.*)

Then the burnt offering, called the *Iṣṭapūrta aparijyâni*<sup>2</sup> is to be performed by the king who brings the sacrifice. The king should perform this ceremony before he receives the sacrificial inauguration (*dikṣâ*). (When performing it) he throws four spoonfulls of melted butter in the Ahavaniya fire, saying, "to the preservation of the *Iṣṭapūrta*! May Indra the mighty

<sup>1</sup> The verse is evidently a Yajus, (and so it is termed by Sâyaṇa) but I do not find it in the Yajurveda.

<sup>2</sup> Lit., the recompensation (*aparijyâni*) of what has been sacrificed (*iṣṭa*) and filled (*iṣṭapūrta*). *Iṣṭa* means only "what is sacrificed," and *âpūrta* "filled up to." For, all sacrifices go up to heaven, and are stored up there to be taken possession of by the sacrificer on his arrival in heaven (See Rigveda. 10, 14, 1 *saṃgachhasva—iṣṭapūrtena*, join thy sacrifices which were stored up). The opinions of the ancient Acharyas or Brahmanical Doctors, about the proper meaning of this word, were already divided, as Sâyaṇa says. Some understood by it the duties of the castes and religious Brahmanical orders, as far as the digging of wells and making of ponds are concerned (which was a kind of religious obligation). Others meant by *iṣṭa* what refers to Smârta (domestic) offering, and *pūrta* they interpreted as referring to the solemn sacrifices (*śrâuta*.)

give us again (recompensate us for what we have sacrificed). May the Brahma give us again full compensation for what has been sacrificed."

Then, after having recited the Samiṣṭa Yajus mantras<sup>3</sup> which are required when binding the sacrificial animal to the pillar, he repeats the words, "May Agni Jâtavedâs, recompensate us ! May the Kṣattra give us full compensation for what we have sacrificed, Svâhâ." These two Âhutis are the Iṣṭâpûrta aparijyâni for a princely person when bringing a sacrifice. Therefore both are to be offered.

## 22.

(The Ajîtapunarvanya<sup>4</sup> Offerings.)

[475] Sujâta, the son of Arâlha, said that it is optional for the king to perform (besides the ceremony mentioned in 21) the two invocation offerings, called Ajîtapunarvanya. He may bring them if he like to do so. He who, following the advice of Sujâta, brings these two invocation offerings, shall say, "I turn towards the Brahma, may it protect me from the Kṣattra, Svâhâ to the Brahma !" "This, this is certainly the case ;" thus say the sacrificial priests (when this mantra is spoken by the king). The meaning of this formula is, He who turns towards the sacrifice, turns towards the Brahma ; for the sacrifice is the Brahma ; he, who undergoes the inauguration ceremony, is born again from the sacrifice. He who has turned towards the Brahma, the Kṣattra does not forsake. He says, "May the Brahma protect me from the Kṣattra," that is, the Brahma should protect him from the Kṣattra (which is persecuting him). By the words, Svâhâ to the Brahma ! he pleases the Brahma ; and, if pleased, it protects him from the Kṣattra. Then, after the recital of the Samiṣṭa Yajus mantras, required for binding the sacrificial animal to the pillar, he repeats, "I turn towards the Kṣattra, may it protect me from the Brahma, Svâhâ to the Kṣattra." "This, this is certainly the case ;" thus they say. He who turns towards the royal power (to assume it again) turns towards the Kṣattra. For the Kṣattra is the royal power. When he has reached the Kṣattra, the Brahma does not leave him. If he

<sup>3</sup> The Adhvaryu takes Darbha grass and melted butter (in a spoon) in his hands, and sacrifices for them. This is called Samiṣṭa. The Yajus or sacrificial formula required at the time is *devâ gâtuvîdo*. Svâhâ must be repeated twice. (Oral information.)

<sup>4</sup> In some MSS. and in Sâyana's commentary, this name is written : *ajîtapunarvanya*. It means "the recovering of what is not to be lost." This refers to the Kṣattra which the Kṣattriya first lost by his turning towards the Brahma, but regained by his subsequently embracing the Kṣattra again, which he cannot throw off if he otherwise wish to retain his sovereignty.



[476] repeats the words, "May the Kṣattrā protect me from the Brahma," that is, the Kṣattrā should protect him from the Brahma, "*Svâhâ to the Kṣattrā!*" he pleases this Kṣattrā. Pleased in this way, the Kṣattrā protects him from the Brahma. Both these offerings (*ajîta-punarvanyam*) are also calculated to preserve the sacrificing king from the loss of the Iṣṭâpûrta. Thence these two are (also) to be sacrificed.

### 23.

*(The King is, Before Sacrificing, Made a Brahman, but he must Lose his Royal Qualifications.)*

As regards the deity, the royal prince (Kṣattriya) belongs to Indra; regarding the metre he belongs to the Trīṣṭubh; regarding the Stoma, he belongs to that one which is fifteen-fold. As to his sovereignty, he is Soma (king of the gods); as to his relationship, he belongs to the royal order. And, if inaugurated into the sacrificial rites, he enters even the Brahmanship at the time when he covers himself with the black goatskin, and enters on the observances enjoined to an inaugurated one, and Brahman surround him.

When he is initiated in such a manner, then Indra takes away from him sharpness of senses, Trīṣṭubh strength, the fifteen-fold Stoma the life, Soma takes away the royal power, the Pitaras (manes) glory and fame. (For they say) "he has estranged himself from us; for he is the Brahma; he has turned to the Brahma." The royal prince then, after having brought an invocation offering before the inauguration, shall stand near the Ahavaniya fire, and say, "I do not leave Indra as my deity, nor the Trīṣṭubh as (my) metre, nor the fifteen-fold Stoma, nor the king Soma, nor the kinship of the Pitaras. May therefore Indra not take from me the skill, nor the Trīṣṭubh the strength, nor the fifteen-fold Stoma the life, nor Soma the royal power, nor the Pitaras glory and [477] renown. I approach here Agni as (my) deity with sharpness of senses, strength, life (vigour), renown and kinship. I go to the Gâyatri metre, to the three-fold Stoma, to Soma the king, to the Brahma, I become a Brâhmaṇa." When he, standing before the Ahavaniya fire, brings this invocation offering, then, although he be Kṣattriya (by birth, no Brahman), Indra does not take from him sharpness of senses, nor Trīṣṭubh strength, &c.

## 24.

*(How the King becomes a Kṣattriya again after the Sacrifice is over.)*

The royal prince belongs, as regards the deity, to Agni; his metre is the Gâyatrî, his Stoma the Trivṛit (nine-fold), his kinsman the Brâhmaṇa. But when performing the concluding ceremony of the sacrifice, the royal prince (who was during the sacrifice a Brâhmaṇa) assumes (by means of another offering) his royal dignity (which was lost) again. Then Agni takes away from him the (Brahmanical) lustre, Gâyatrî the strength, the Trivṛit Stoma the life, the Brâhmaṇas the Brahma, and glory and renown; for they say, this man has forsaken us by assuming the Kṣatra again, to which he has returned.

Then, after having performed the Samiṣṭa offerings<sup>5</sup> which are required for the ceremony of binding the sacrificial animal to the pillar he presents himself to the Ahavaniya fire (again), saying, "I do not leave, Agni as (my) deity, nor the Gâyatrî as my metre, nor the Trivṛit Stoma, nor the kindred of the Brahma. May Agni not take from me the lustre, nor the Gâyatrî the strength, nor the Trivṛit Stoma the life, nor the Brâhmaṇas glory and renown. With lustre, strength, life, the Brahma, glory, and renown, I turn to Indra as my deity, to the Triṣṭubh [478] metre, to the fifteen-fold Stoma, to Soma the king, I enter the Kṣattra, I become a Kṣattriya! O ye Pitaras of divine lustre! O ye Pitaras of divine lustre! I sacrifice in my own natural character (as a Kṣattriya, not as a Brâhmaṇa); what has been sacrificed by me, is my own, what has been completed as to wells, tanks, &c., is my own, what austerities have been undergone are my own, what burnt offerings have been brought are my own. That this is mine, this Agni will see, this Vāyu will hear, that Âditya will reveal it. I am only what I am (i. e., a Kṣattriya, no Brâhmaṇa)." When he speaks thus and gives an invocation offering to the Ahavaniya fire, Agni does not take away from him the lustre, nor the Gâyatrî strength, nor the Trivṛit Stoma the life, nor the Brâhmaṇas the Brahma, glory and renown, though he concludes the sacred rites as a Kṣattriya.

## 25.

*(The Pravaras of a Kṣattriya's House-priest are Invoked at the Time of his Sacrifice.)*

Thence (if the sacrificer be a Kṣattriya) they (the Brahma speakers) ask as to how the inauguration (*dīkṣā*), which is, in the case of a Brah-

\* See page 471.

man being initiated, announced by the formula, "the Brâhmaṇa is initiated,"<sup>6</sup> should be promulgated in the case of the sacrificer being a Kṣatriya? The answer is, The formula, "the Brâhmaṇa is initiated," is to be kept when a Kṣatriya is being initiated; the ancestral fire of the Kṣatriya's house-priest is to be mentioned.<sup>7</sup> This, this is certainly so.

[479] Having laid aside his own implements (weapons), and taking up those of the Brahma, and having thus become Brahma, by means of the Brahma form, he returned to the sacrifice. Therefore they should proclaim him as a Dikṣita, with the name of his house-priest's ancestral fires, and invoke them also in the Pravara<sup>8</sup> prayer.

' This is, according to Sâya, thrice low and thrice aloud to be repeated. By repeating the formula low, the inauguration is made known to the gods alone, but by repeating it aloud, it is announced to gods and men alike.

' For the Kṣatriya cannot claim descent from the Rîṣis, as the Brahmans alone can do.

<sup>8</sup> By *pravara*, which literally means "choice, particular address," (see 6, 14), we have to understand the invocation of the sacrificial fires lighted by the principal Rîṣi ancestors of the sacrificer. This invocation may comprise only one, or two, or three, or five ancestral fires, the name of which is *ârṣeya*; the *pravara* becomes accordingly *ekârṣeya*, *dyvârṣeya*, *tryârṣeya*, and *pañchârṣeya*, i.e., having one or two, &c. Rîṣis. This invocation takes place at the very commencement of the sacrifice, after the fire has been kindled under the recital of the Sâmidhenî verses, and at the time of the Subrahmanyâ proclamation (see 6, 3), after the sacrificer has become, in consequence of the initiatory rites, such as Dikṣâ, Pravargya, &c., a Dikṣita. Aśval. gives in his Śrâuṭa Sūtras (1, 3), the following rules regarding this rite: यजमानस्यार्षेयान्प्रवृक्षीते

यान्तः स्युः परं परं प्रथमं । पौरोहित्यान् राजविशं राजर्षीन्वा राज्ञां सर्वेषां मानवेति संशये, i.e., the Hotar particularly mentions the fires of the Rîṣi ancestors of the sacrificer, as many as he may have (one, or two, or three, or five). He mentions one after the other, but the first (in the general enumeration) is to be made the last (at the time of sacrificing). If the sacrificers happen to be Kṣatriyas or Vaiśyas, he mentions the fires of the Rîṣi ancestors of their Purohitas (house-priests), or the princely Rîṣis (*râjarṣis*, who might have been their ancestors). If there should be any doubt, the word *mânava*, i.e., descended from or made by Manu, may be used in the case of all kings.

This explanation of the terms *pravara* and *ârṣeya* have been already given by Max Müller (History of Ancient Sanscrit Literature, page 386) according to the authority of Aśvalâyana and Baudhâyana. It has been doubted, of late, by Dr. Hall (in his paper on three Sanscrit Inscriptions in the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal of 1862, page 115), but without any sufficient reason. He says "*pravaras*" appear to be names of the families of certain persons from whom the founders of Gotras were descended. and of the families of the founders themselves." But if this were the case, it would be surprising, that the founders of certain Gotras should claim to descend not only from one but from several Rîṣi ancestors. All the Gotras have eight great ancestors only. viz., Viśvâmitra, Jamadagni, Bharadvâja, Gautama, Atri, Vasiṣṭha, Kaśyapa, and Agastya. These occupy with the Brahmans about the same position as the twelve sons of Jacob with

[480]—(*The Kṣattriya is Not Allowed to Eat Sacrificial Food.  
The Brahma Priest Eats his Portion for Him.*)

As regards the portion of sacrificial food which is to be eaten by the sacrificer, they ask, whether the Kṣattriya should eat, or whether he should not eat it? They say, if he eat, then he commits a great sin, as having eaten sacrificial food, although he is an *ahutād* (one not permitted to eat). If he do not eat, then he cuts himself off from the sacrifice (with which he was connected). For the portions to be eaten by the sacrificer, is the sacrifice. This is to be made over to the Brahma priest. For the Brahma priest of the Kṣattriya is in the place of (his) Purohita. The Purohita is the one-half of the Kṣattriya; only [481] through the intervention of another (the Brahma priest) the portion appears to be eaten by him, though he does not eat it with his own mouth. For the sacrifice is there where the Brahma (priest) is. The entire sacrifice is placed in the Brahma, and the sacrificer is in the sacrifice. They throw the sacrifice (in the shape of the portion which is to be eaten by the sacrificer) into the sacrifice (which has the form of the Brahma), just as they throw water into water, fire into fire, without making it overflow, nor causing any injury to the sacrificer. Therefore, is this portion to be eaten by the sacrificer (if he be a Kṣattriya) to be given up to the Brahmā.

the Jews. Only he whose descent from one of these great Rīṣis was beyond doubt, could become the founder of a Gotra. In this genealogy there is no proper place for the *pravaras* according to Dr. Hall's opinion; for a family calls itself generally only by the name of its founder. From a genealogical point of view, therefore, only the names of the patriarch (one of the great Rīṣis) and those of the founders of the Gotras were important. The institution of the *Pravaras* is purely religious, and sacrificial. The *pravaras* or *ārṣeyas*, which are used as synonymous terms, are those sacrificial fires which several Gotras had in common; it was left to their own choice, to which they wished to repair. This had a practical meaning, as long as fire-worship was the prevailing religion of the Aryas, which was the case before the commencement of the properly so-called Vedic period. In the course of time it became a mere form, the original meaning of which was very early lost. That the *ārṣeyas* refer to the sacrificial fire, may be clearly seen from the context, in which they occur. Their names are mentioned in the vocative, as soon as the fire is kindled. After they have been invoked, the Hotar begins at once the invocation of Agni, the fire, by various names, such as *deveddho*, *manviddho*, &c., kindled by gods, kindled by Manu, &c. (*Aśv. Śr. S.* 1, 3). That this rite of invoking the *ārṣeyas* must be very ancient, proves the occurrence of a similar, or even the same, rite with the Parsis. They invoke up to this day, in their confession of faith, those ancestors and beings who were of the same *varena*, i.e., choice, religion, as they are. The term for "I will profess (a religion)" is *fravarānē*, which is exactly of the same origin as *pravara* (See Yaśna 12 in my Essays, page 164).

Some sacrificial priests, however, sacrifice this portion to the fire, saying, "I place thee in Prajâpati's world, which is called *vibhân* (shining everywhere), to be joined to the sacrificer, Svâhâ!" But thus the sacrificial priest ought not to proceed. For the portion to be eaten by the sacrificer is the sacrificer himself. What priest, therefore, asserts this, burns the sacrificer in the fire. (If anyone should observe a priest doing so) he ought to tell him, "Thou hast singed the sacrificer in the fire. Agni will burn his breaths, and he will consequently die." Thus it always happens. Therefore he should not think of doing so.

## FIFTH CHAPTER.

*On the Sacrificial Drink which the King has to Taste instead of Soma, According to the Instruction given by Râma Mârgaveya to the King Viśvantara.)*

### 27.

*(Story of the Śyâparṇas. Râma Defends their Rights.)*

Viśvantara, the son of Suśâdman, deprived the Śyâparṇas of their right of serving as his sacrificial [482] priests, and interdicted any one of this family to take part in his sacrifice. Having learnt (that) they went to the place of his sacrifice and seated themselves within the precincts of the Veda.<sup>1</sup> On observing them, Viśvantara said (to his attendants), "There sit those Śyâparṇas, the scoundrels, who endeavour to sully another's fame. Turn them out; let them not sit in the Veda." The attendants obeyed and turned the Śyâparṇas out. They then cried aloud, "When Janamejaya, the son of Parīkṣit, was performing a sacrifice without the Kaśyapas (who were his hereditary priests), then the Asitamṛigas from among the Kaśyapas turned the Bhūtarīras (who were officiating instead of the Kaśyapas) out, not allowing them to administer the Soma rites. They succeeded because they had brave men with them. "Well, what hero is now among us, who might by force take away this Soma beverage (that we might administer it ourselves)?" "This your man am I," said Râma Mârgaveya.<sup>2</sup> This Râma belonged to the Śyâparṇas, and had completed the sacred study. When the Śyâparṇas rose

<sup>1</sup> This place is to be occupied by the priests and the sacrificer only.

<sup>2</sup> In the text is *asmîk*, instead of *asmîkam*.

<sup>3</sup> Son of a woman Mṛigavou or Mṛiganiyu (both forms are used). Sâya. He is quite different from Râma, the hero of the Râmâyana.

to leave, then he said to the king, "Will (thy servants), O king, turn out of the Vēdi even a man (like me) who knows the sacred science?" (The king answered), "O thou member of the vile Brahman brood,\* whoever thou art, how hast thou any knowledge (of such matters)?"

## 28.

[483] (*Why Indra was Excluded from his Share in the Soma. The Kṣattriya Race Became also Excluded.*)

(Rāma said) "I know it from the fact, that Indra had been excluded by the gods (from having any share in the sacrifices). For he had scorned<sup>5</sup> Viśvarūpa, the son of Tvaṣṭar, cast down Vṛitra (and killed him), thrown pious men (*yatis*) before the jackals (or wolves) and killed the *Arurmaghas*,<sup>6</sup> and rebuked [484] (his teacher) Bṛhaspati.

\* Sāy. explains *brahmabandhu* by *brāhmaṇa adhama*, i.e., lowest Brahman. No doubt, there is something contemptible in this expression.

<sup>5</sup> In the original, *abhyamaṁsta*. This cannot mean (according to etymology), "he killed" as Sāy. supposes, misguided by the story told in the Taittir. Saṁh. 2, 4, where Indra is said to have cut the three heads of Viśvarūpa, which were *somapānam* (drinking of Soma), *surāpānam* (drinking of spirituous liquor), and *annādanam* (eating of food). The reason alleged for Indra's killing him is that he, as a relation of the Asuras, informed them about the secret portions of the sacrificial food, Soma, &c., whilst he told the Devas, whose associate he was, only the real and visible ones. Indra holding that he who knows the secret portions of Soma, &c., will come to know the real ones also, became afraid lest the Asuras might, strengthened by Soma, overthrow his rule, and killed the perpetrator of such a treason by cutting off his three heads, each of which was transformed into a particular kind of bird. Viśvarūpa being a Brahman, Indra thus became guilty of the horrible crime of Brahman-murder (*brahmahatyā*). All beings called him "murderer of a Brahman," so that he could not find rest anywhere. He requested the Earth to take off the third part of his guilt, who under certain conditions complied with his request. To be relieved from the two remaining thirds of his burden, he applied to the trees, and the women, who readily took under certain conditions a part of his guilt upon themselves. Tvaṣṭar, the father of Vairūpa, excluded Indra from any share in the Soma sacrifice; but he took his share with force. The remaining portion of Indra's share was thrown into the sacrificial fire by Tvaṣṭar, with the words, "Grow (*vardhasva*) into an enemy of Indra." This became the terrible foe of Indra, known in the legends by the name of Vṛitra. Indra succeeded afterwards in killing him. See the same legend in the Kāuṣītaki Upaniṣad. 3, 1.

<sup>6</sup> In the Kāuṣ. Up. 3, 1, we find the form *Arunmukha*. Sāy. thinks them to be Asuras in the disguise of Brahmans. With this explanation agrees Śāṅkarāchārya on the whole in his Commentary on the Kāuṣ. Up. (page 75, ed. Cowell). He divides the word into *rurmukha*, and the negative *a*. The first is to mean "the study of the Vedas," and the second "month." Therefore the whole means, according to him, in "whose mouth is not the study of the Vedas." This explanation is quite artificial and unsatisfactory. The *Arurmaghas* (this is probably the right form) were, no doubt, a kind of degraded Aryas, very likely a tribe of the ancient Iranians, in whose language (the Zend) the words *aurvo* and *magha* are frequently to be met with.

On account of these faults, Indra was forthwith excluded from participation in the Soma beverage. And after Indra had been excluded in this way from the Soma, all the Kṣatriyas (at whose head he is) were likewise excluded from it. But he was allowed a share in it afterwards, having stolen the Soma from Tvaṣṭar. But the Kṣatriya race remains excluded from the Soma beverage to this day. There is one here who knows the way in which the Kṣatriya, who is properly excluded from the Soma beverage, may relish in this juice. Why do thy men expel such a man from the Veda? "The king asked then, "Dost thou, O Brāhmaṇa, know this way?" Rāma answered, "Yes, I know it." The king then replied, "Let me know it, O Brāhmaṇa." Rāma answered, "I will let thee know here, O king."

## 29.

*(Which Portions of Sacrificial Drink the King has to Avoid.)*

The priests may take any one of the three portions (which are to be left), either Soma, or curds, or water. When they take the Soma, which is the portion allotted to Brāhmaṇas, then thou wilt favour the Brāhmaṇas by it.<sup>1</sup> Thy progeny will be distinguished by the characteristics of the Brāhmaṇa; for they will be ready to take gifts, thirsty after drinking (Soma), and hungry of eating food, and ready to roam about everywhere according to their pleasure. [485] When there is any fault on the Kṣatriya (who, when sacrificing, eats the Brāhmaṇa portion), then his progeny has the characteristics of a Brāhmaṇa; but in the second or third generation he is then capable of entering completely the Brāhmaṇaship, and he will have the desire of living with the Brahmanic fraternity.

When they take the curds, which is the share of the Vaiśyas, then thou wilt favour the Vaiśyas by it (and consequently be brought near them). Thy offspring will be born with the characteristics of the Vaiśyas, paying taxes to another king, to be enjoyed by another; they will be oppressed according to the pleasure of the king. When there is any fault on the Kṣatriya (who, when sacrificing, eats the Vaiśya portion), then his progeny is born with the characteristics of a Vaiśya; and in the second or third degree, they are capable of entering the caste of the Vaiśyas, and are desirous of living in the condition of a Vaiśya (i.e., they will have the nature of a Vaiśya).

---

<sup>1</sup> That is to say, thou wilt, when regenerated in thy son and grandson, be accepted by the Brāhmaṇas as a member of their caste.

When thou takest the water, which is the share of the Śûdras, then thou wilt please the Śûdras by it. Thy progeny will have the characteristics of the Śûdras, they are to serve another the three higher castes, to be expelled and beaten according to the pleasure (of their masters.) When there is any fault on the Kṣattriya (who, when sacrificing, eats the Śûdra portion), then his offspring will be born with the characteristics of the Śûdras; and in the second or third degree, he is capable of entering the condition of the Śûdras, and will be desirous of passing his life in that condition.

## 30.

*(Which Portion the King should Choose at the Sacrifice. The Origin and Meaning of Nyagrodha.)*

These are the three portions (*bhakṣas*), O King, of which the Kṣattriya, when performing a sacrifice, [486] must choose none. But the following is his own portion, which he is to enjoy. He must squeeze the airy descending roots of the *Nyagrodha* tree, together with the fruits of the *Udumbara*, *Aśvattha*, and *Plakṣa* tree<sup>s</sup>, and drink the juice of them. This is his own portion.

(For the origin of the Nyagrodha tree is as follows): When the gods, after the (successful) performance of their sacrifice, went up to heaven, they tilted over (*ny-ubjan*) the Soma cups, whence the Nyagrodha trees grew up. And by the name of *Nyubja*, i.e., tilted over, they are now called in Kurukṣetra, where they grew first; from them all the others originated. They grew descending the roots (*nyañcho rohanti*). Therefore what grows downwards, is a downward growth (*nyagroha*); and for this name, signifying "downward growth," they called the tree "*Nyagrodha*." \* It is called by the name *Nyagrodha*, whose meaning is hidden (to men), and not by the more intelligible name *Nyagroha*, for the gods like to conceal the very names of objects from men, and call them by names unintelligible to them.

## 31.

*(On the Meaning of the King's Drinking the Juice of the Nyagrodha Tree instead of Soma.)*

That portion of the juice in these Soma cups which went downwards became the descending roots, and of the other which went up, the fruits were produced. That Kṣattriya, therefore, who enjoys the juice of

\* The word is traced to the root *ruh*, to grow, the older form of which is *rudh*; compare *avoradha*, "the descending roots."



the descending roots of the Nyagrodha tree, and that of its fruits, is not debarred from his own share (*bhakṣa*). Further, he thus obtains the Soma beverage by means of a substitute, though he does not enjoy [487] the real Soma, but only in the form of a substitute; for the Nyagrodha is just this substitute of the Soma. The Kṣatriya (when drinking the juice of the Nyagrodha) enters the form of the Brahma by the medium of another (not direct), *viz.*, through the relationship of his purohita (with the Brahmans), his own Dikṣā (at which the king himself was made a Brāhmaṇa for a little while), and the Pravara of his Purohita. The Kṣattrā (ruling power) occupies (among men the same place as) the Nyagrodha among the trees; for the Kṣattrā are the royal princes, whose power alone is spread here (on this earth), as being alone invested with sovereign power. The Nyagrodha is,<sup>9</sup> as it were, firmly established in the earth (and thus a sign of the duration of the royal power); and by means of its descending roots expanded (in all directions, and therefore a sign of the great extent of the power of the Kṣatriyas over the whole earth). When the Kṣatriya who performs a sacrifice enjoys (the juice squeezed out of the) descending roots of the Nyagrodha tree, and its fruits, then he places in himself royal power (exercised by the Nyagrodha) over the trees, and into the Kṣattrā his own Self. He then is in the Kṣattrā, and the royal power represented by the Nyagrodha over the trees, is then placed in him. Just as the Nyagrodha tree has, by means of its descending roots, a firm footing on the earth (for it is multiplied in this way), the royal power of a Kṣatriya who enjoys, when sacrificing, this portion (as food) has a firm footing, and his rule cannot be overthrown.

### 32.

[488] (*The Symbolical Meaning of the Fruits of the Udumbara, Aśvattha, and Plakṣa Trees. What Implements are Required for this quasi-Soma Feast of the King.*)

As to the fruits of the Udumbara tree, which originated from the vigour which is in food, and in which there is all the vigour of the trees, furnishing nourishments, the Kṣatriya (when drinking the juice prepared from its fruits) places in the Kṣattrā food, and what yields nourishment from the trees.

---

<sup>9</sup> The tree (a kind of the *Ficus indica*) is very strong.

As to the fruits of the *Aśvattha* tree, which sprang out of lustre, and which has the sovereignty over the trees, the *Kṣattriya* (when drinking the juice prepared from its fruits) places in the *Kṣattrā* lustre and the sovereignty over the trees.

As to the fruits of the *Plakṣa* tree, which sprang out of glory, and in which there is the independence and brilliancy of the trees represented, the *Kṣattriya* places in this way the independence and brilliancy which is in the trees in the *Kṣattrā*.

When all these things (the roots of the *Nyagrodha* tree, &c.) are in readiness for him, then the priests buy the *Soma*, and perform for the king the several ceremonies preceding the eve of the festival, just in the same way as the real *Soma* is treated. Then the day before the celebration (of the feast) the *Adhvaryu* should have all these things ready which are required for the preparation of the *Soma* juice, such as the (goat) skin (placed below), the two boards required for squeezing, the *Dronakalāśa*, the cloth (for purifying), the stones, the *Pātabhṛt*, the *Adhavanīya*, the *Sthālī*, the *Udaneknam* and the *Chamasa*.<sup>10</sup> Then [489] they should make

---

<sup>10</sup> Here are the principal implements required for squeezing, preparing, keeping, sacrificing and drinking the *Soma* juice mentioned. A detailed knowledge of them constitutes one of the principal qualifications of an *Adhvaryu*. Their description is therefore to be found principally in the *Sūtras* of the *Yajurveda* (see the 9th and 10th *Adhyāya* of the *Kāṭiya sūtras*, the 8th and 9th *Praśna* of the *Hiraṇyakeśi Sūtras*, *Sāyaṇa's* Commentary on the 4th *Prapāṭhaka* of the 1st *Kāṇḍa* of the *Taittirīya Saṃhitā*, founded on the *Apastamba Śrauta Sūtras*).

In order to make the use of these vessels intelligible to the reader, I subjoin here a short description of the preparation of the *Soma* juice, partially from what I myself have witnessed, partially from the ritual books and oral information.

The plant which is at present used by the sacrificial priests of the *Dekkhan* at the *Soma* feast, is not the *Soma* of the *Vedas*, but appears to belong to the same order. It grows on hills in the neighbourhood of *Poona*, to the height of about 4 to 5 feet, and forms a kind of bush, consisting of a certain number of shoots, all coming from the same root; their stem is solid like wood; the bark greyish; they are without leaves, the sap appears whitish, has a very stringent taste, is bitter, but not sour; it is a very nasty drink, and has some intoxicating effect. I tasted it several times, but it was impossible for me to drink more than some tea-spoonfulls.

The juice is obtained in the following way: The *Adhvaryu* first spreads a skin (*charma*), and puts on it the *Soma* shoots which are called *aṃśu* or *vallī*. He now takes two boards, *adhivāṇa*; the first is placed above the *Soma*. He beats the board with one of the so-called *grāvaṇas*, i.e., *Soma* squeezing stones, takes the shoots (as many as he requires for the particular *Savana*) from below the boards, ties them together, and places the other board above them. He then pours water from the *Vasativarī* pot (see page 114-115) on this board; this water is called *nigrābhya*. He now takes certain number of shoots (there are, for instance, for the libation from the *Upāṃśu Graha*, which is the first of all, six required) out of the whole bunch which lies between the two boards,

two parts of what is squeezed for the king (the roots of the Nyagrodha, &c.); one is to [490] be made ready for the morning libation, the other to be left for the midday libation.

## 33.

*(The Drinking from the Traita Cups.)*

When the priests lift the *Traita* cups for <sup>11</sup> sacrificing, then they shall lift up the cup of the sacrificer [491] also, having thrown upon it

---

holds over them the Soma squeezing stone, and shakes them thrice in the *Chamasa* (cup) of the *Hotar*, towards the right side. This is the *Nigrābha*. He wets them with the waters of the *Vasatīvarī* pot. Now he puts them on a large stone, places upon them some grass, and beats the shoots in order to extract the juice. The technical term for this beating is, *abhiṣṇoti*. Each *abhiṣava*, or complete extracting of the Soma juice consists of three turns (*paryāyas*); in the first, the *Adhvaryu* beats the shoots eight times, and makes the *Nigrābha* in the manner described above; in the second turn, he beats them eleven times, and in the third twelve times, making at the end of each the *Nigrābha*. The juice which the *Adhvaryu* catches at the end of each turn with his hand, is thrown into a vessel (at the first *abhiṣava* in the *Upāṃśu* *Graha*).

After this first or preliminary *abhiṣava*, follows the *mahābhiṣava* or the great squeezing ceremony, performed exactly in the same way as the first, with the only difference, that the *Adhvaryu* takes from between the two boards as many Soma shoots as are required for the rest of the *Savanam* (libation). If the juice is extracted, it is poured in the *Adhavanīya*, a kind of trough. Thence it is poured in a cloth, in order to strain it. This cloth is called *Pavitra* or *Daśāpavitra*. Below the cloth is another trough, called *Pūtābhṛt* (i.e., the bearer of what is strained, purified). The *Udgātar* must hold the cloth when the juice is strained.

Single shoots of the Soma, and drops of its juice, are put in several *sthālis* or small vessels generally used for keeping butter. The libations are poured from two kinds of vessels, from the *Grahas* (see page 118), and the *Chamasas* (cups). Each offering from a *Graha* consists of a certain number of *Dhārās* or portions (of a liquid substance). So, for instance, the offering from the *Agrayana* *Graha*, at the evening libation, consists of the following four *Dhārās*: that one which is in the *Agrayana* *sthāli* (not the *Graha*) taken by the *Adhvaryu*; the two portions which remained in the *Aditya* *Graha* (the libation from which precedes that from the *Agrayana*), and in the *Ajya* *sthāli* (the pot with melted butter); these two are taken by the *Pratipasthātār*; the fourth *Dhārā* is taken from the *Adhavanīya* trough by the *Unnetar*. Each of the four *Dhārās* is first strained by a cloth held over the *Pūtābhṛt* vessel. The *Unnetar* takes his *Dhārā* with a vessel, called *Udañchana*, or with a *Chamasa*. These four *Dhārās* are then filled from the *Pūtābhṛt* in the *Agrayana* *Graha*, and sacrificed in the usual way. Certain offerings are filled in the *Grahas* from another very large trough, the so-called *Dronakalaśa* (one such vessel is in my possession). At certain occasions, there is not only the mouth of the *Graha* to be filled up to the brim, but the small cup, put in it (which alone was originally the *Graha*; but, after the latter term had become identical with *Pātra*, the vessel itself, the small cup, was called *atigraha*), is also filled; this is called *atigrāhya*.

<sup>11</sup> They are called here *trāita* *chūmasa*. There are, on the whole, ten such cups; therefore *trāita* cannot be referred to *tri*, i.e., three. In all likelihood, the word is

two young sprouts of Dharba grass; both are then (one after the other) to be thrown on the wooden sticks surrounding the fire, by the formula *Vauṣat!* After having thrown the first, the priest repeats the verse, *dadhikrāvṇo akāriṣam* (4, 39, 6), concluding with *Svāhā* and *Vauṣat*. After having thrown the second Dharba stalk, he repeats the verse, *ā dadhikrāḥ śavasā* (4, 38, 10.) When the priests then take the Soma cups to drink themselves, the sacrificer should take his cup also. When they lift them up (to drink), the sacrificer should do the same. When the Hotar then calls the *Iḥā* (just before drinking) to the place, and drinks from his cup, then the sacrificer should drink his cup whilst repeating the following verse, "What has remained of the juicy Soma beverage whilst Indra drank with his hosts, this his remainder I enjoy with my happy mind, I drink the king Soma." This beverage prepared from the trees (above mentioned) promising fortune to him, becomes drunk with a happy mind. The royal power of a Kṣatriya who, when sacrificing, drinks only this portion described, becomes strong, and is not to be shaken.

[492] By the words, "Be a blessing to our heart thou who art drunk! prolong our life, O Soma, that we may live long!" he then cleans his mouth; for, if the juice (remaining on his lips) is not wiped off, then Soma, thinking, "an unworthy drinks me," is able to destroy the life of a man. But if the juice is wiped off in this way, then he prolongs the life. With the following two verses, which are appropriate for the sacrifice, *āpyāyasva sametu* (1, 91, 16) and *saṁ te payāṁsi samayantu* (1, 91, 18), he blesses the Chamasa (*i. e.*, what he has drunk from it) to bear fruit. What is appropriate in the sacrifice, that is successful.

connected with Trita, who was the first physician, and the Soma being the best of all medicines, supposed to have invented such cups. Śāyana does not explain the term in his Commentary on the Aitareya Brāhmaṇam: but his attempt at an explanation in that on the Taittiriya Saṁhitā (ii. page 253, ed. Cowell) shows that he had evidently no clear idea of what the original meaning was; for after having tried more than one explanation from the numeral *tri*, he exclaims, "but it is now enough; one should see that *trāita* means 'good, excellent,' (*prasasta*)." But we need not despair of making out its meaning. If we compare the term, *trāita chamasa* with that of *narāsaṁsa chamasa* (in 7, 34), we can pretty clearly see what it must mean. As I have stated above (in note 24, on page 124-125), the Chamasa are *Narāsaṁsa*, that is to say, they belong to the deity *Narāsaṁsa*, after one has drunk out of them, sprinkled water over them, &c. Now, from a Chamasa, they generally drink twice. What is filled in for the first time is *Trāita*, *i. e.*, belongs to *Trita*; afterwards, it is cleaned and filled again. This then is the *Narāsaṁsa* draught. [In Corrigenda the translator says "my opinion on the 'Traita cups rests on a doubtful reading.'" Again, in the Corrections to Vol. I., he writes:—"The rare word *trāita* appears to have been very early misunderstood."—Editor.]

## 34.

(*The Drinking from the Narāsaṃsa cups. The List of Teachers of the Substitute for the Soma Juice, and the Rites Connected with it.*)

When the priests put the Traita cups down, then the king should put down the sacrificer's cup also; when they incline their cups (after having put them down), then the king should do the same with his cup. Then he should take up the [Narāsaṃsa] cup, and by the recital of the verse, "O thou divine Soma, who knowest my mind, who art drunk by Narāsaṃsa, and enjoyed by the *Uma-Pitaras* <sup>12</sup> I enjoy thee!" In this way the king enjoys the Narāsaṃsa portion at the morning libation. At the midday libation, he repeats the same mantra, but says, "enjoyed by the *Urra-*(Pitaras)," and at the evening libation, he says, "enjoyed by the *Kāvya* [498] (Pitaras)." For the Pitaras (present) at the morning libation, are the Umas, those (present) at the midday libation, are the Urras, and those at the evening libation, are the Kāvyas. In this way, he makes the immortal Pitaras enjoy the libations.

*Priyavrata*, the Soma drinker, said, "Whoever enjoys the Soma beverage, he certainly will be immortal." The ancestors of a king who enjoys, when sacrificing, this Narāsaṃsa portion, therefore, become immortal (*i e.*, they never will perish), when they enjoy (in such a way) the Soma libation, and his royal power will be strong and is not to be shaken. The ceremony of wiping off from the mouth what of the juice remained, and the sprinkling of the cup with water (*âpyâyanam*) is the same as above (when the Traita Chamasas are emptied). All the three libations of the juice prepared for the king, should be performed in the same way as the real Soma libation.

This way of enjoying the Soma juice (by means of a substitute), was told by Rāma Mārgaveya to Viśvantara, the son of Suśadman. The king then, after having been told it, said, "We give thee a thousand cows, O Brāhmaṇa. My sacrifice is to be attended by the Śyāparnas."

This portion (*bhakṣa*) was told by *Tura*, the son of *Kavaṣa*, to *Jana-mejaya*, the son of *Parikṣit*; then by *Parvata* and *Nārada* to *Somaka*, the son of *Sahadeva*; thence (this traditional knowledge) passed to *Sahadeva*

---

<sup>12</sup> A division of the Pitaras, or manes. It is the proper name of a certain class of the Pitaras. The original meaning of the word is uncertain. The root is, no doubt, *av*, but it has so many meanings that it is difficult to state satisfactorily the meaning. Another division of the Pitaras, see on page 226.

*Sârjaya* ; thence to *Babhrû Dairârriidha* ; thence to *Bhîma Vaidarbha*, and *Nagnajit Gândhâra*.

This portion, further, was told by Agni to *Samaśruta Arindama* ; thence it passed to *Kraturid Jânaki*. This portion was further told by *Vasistha* to *Sudâs*, the son of *Pijavana*.

[494] All these became great, in consequence of their having drunk the Soma in this way (by means of a substitute), and were great kings. Just as the sun (placed on the sky) sends forth warmth, thus the king who, when sacrificing drinks the Soma in this way, is placed amidst fortune and shines everywhere, from all directions he exacts tribute, his kingdom becomes strong, and is not to be shaken.

## [495] EIGHTH BOOK.

### FIRST CHAPTER.

(*The Śāstras and Stotras required at the Soma Day of the Rājasūya.*)

#### 1

(*The Use of Both the Rathantaram and Bṛihat at the Midday Libation.*)

Now, as regards the Stotras and Śāstras (required at the king's libation), both the morning and the evening libations do not differ in this point from the rule of the Aikāhikas (Soma sacrifice of one day's duration ; for both these libations at the Aikāhika sacrifices are indisturbable, well arranged, and firmly standing, and they produce quiet, good order, firm footing, and security.

(But there is a difference in the ceremonies of the midday libation.) The midday Pavamāna performance (of a sacrifice, which requires both Sāmans with the Bṛihat for the Pṛiṣṭha Stotra, has been told ;<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The expression *ukta*, "told," appears to refer to 4, 19, *ubhe bṛihad rathantare pavamānayoḥ bhavatas*. But the reference is not quite exact. The author wishes, doubtless, to advert to the peculiar circumstance, that both the principal Sāmans are used at one and the same day, viz., on the Soma day of the Rājasūya. It is even against the general principles of the sacrificial theory to use both on the same day (see 4, 13), as the whole arrangement of the Dvādasāha sacrifice with its Rathantara and Bṛihat days clearly shows. There are only three exceptions to this rule, as far as my knowledge goes, viz., on the Abhihit and Viśuvan days, and on the Abhiśhechanīya day of the Rājasūya, which is performed according to the rites of an aikāhika Soma sacrifice (see 8, 4). The particulars of the ceremonies of the Abhihit day are not given in our Brāhmaṇam ; but we learn them from the Aśval. Sūtras (8, 5) There it is said : *Abhihit Bṛihat-pṛiṣṭha ubhayasāmi yadyopi Rathantaram yajñayoḥ nyasithāne*, i.e., the Abhihit sacrifice requires the Bṛihat as its Pṛiṣṭha Stotra (at the midday libation), and (thus) both (the principal) Sāmans, if the Rathantaram (is used at the evening libation) instead of the Yajñayajñīya Sāman (used at the evening libation of the Agniṣṭoma). The exceptional use of Bṛihat and Rathantaram on the Viśuvan day has been stated by our author (4, 19, compare Aśval. 8, 6). On the use of both these Sāmans at the Rājasūya sacrifice, Aśval. (9, 3) makes the following remark : *ukthyo bṛihat pṛiṣṭha ubhayasāmā abhiśhechanīyah*, i.e., on the inauguration day, the Ukthya sacrifice takes place, with the modification that the Bṛihat is the Sāma of the Pṛiṣṭha Stotra, and that both (the principal) Sāmans (Bṛihat and Rathantaram) are required. Both are, as we learn distinctly from our Brāhmaṇam, required at the midday libation ; the Rathantaram being chanted

[496] for the chanting of both Sāmans (the Rathantara and Bṛihat) is performed. The verse, *ā trā ratham yathotaya* (S, 57, 1-3) is the beginning (required for the Śastra) belonging to the Rathantara Sāman; the verse *idam vaso sutam andha* (S, 53, 5-7), the sequel required for the same Śastra. This Pavamāna Uktham (the just-mentioned Shastra) is just the Marutvatiya Śastra, to which the Rathantara Sāman (at the Agniṣṭoma, for instance) belongs. They perform the Rathantara chant at the Pavamāna Stotra (of the midday libation) praised at this (sacrifice); the Bṛihat is the Pṛiṣṭha (Stotra), in order to give a prop (to the whole). For the Rathantara is Brahma; the Bṛihat is the Kṣattra.<sup>2</sup> The Brahma certainly precedes the Kṣattra. For the [497] king should think "when the Brahma is at the head, then my royal power would become strong and not be shaken." Further, the Rathantara is food; if placed first, it procures food to the king. The Rathantara further is the earth, which is a firm footing; if placed first, it therefore procures a firm footing to the king.

The Pragātha for calling Indra<sup>3</sup> near remains the same without any modification (as in the Brahmanical sacrifices), this Pragātha belonging to (all) Soma days. The Pragātha addressed to Brahmanaspati,<sup>4</sup> which has the characteristic of *ut* (*uttiṣṭha*, rise!) is appropriate to both the Sāmans which are chanted. The Dhyāyās<sup>5</sup> are the same without any modification; they are those appropriate for the Ahina sacrifices, whilst that Marutvatiya Pragātha,<sup>6</sup> which is peculiar to the Aikāhikas, is chosen.

## 2.

(The Remainder of the Marutvatiya Shastra, and the Nishkevalya Śastra.)

The (Nivid) hymn (of the Pavamāna uktham) is *janiṣṭhā ugraḥ* (10, 73).<sup>7</sup> It contains the terms, *ugra* strong, and *sahas* power, which

first, and the Bṛihat after it. The former forms here part of the Pavamāna Stotra (the first at the midday libation), the latter is the (principal) Pṛiṣṭha Stotra which follows the first. The Śastra belonging to the Pavamāna Stotra is the Marutvatiya (see 3, 12-20), that for the Pṛiṣṭha Stotra is the Nishkevalya (see 3, 21-24). At the Rājasūya sacrifice, the first goes by the name of *Pavamāna-uktham*, the latter by that of *Graha-uktham*.

<sup>2</sup> The royal sacrifice differs from the Brahmanical here by the employment of both the principal Sāmans at the same time; whilst at the latter sacrifice, either is employed separately.

<sup>3</sup> See about it 3, 16. It is repeated on all Soma days, and forms always part of the first Śastra of the midday libation. Thence it is also necessary at the Rājasūya).

<sup>4</sup> See 3, 17 (page 184).

<sup>5</sup> See 3, 18.

<sup>6</sup> See 4, 19.

<sup>7</sup> See pages 188-89. It is the same as at the Marutvatiya Śastra.



are characteristic of the Kṣattra. The word, *ojīṣṭha*, 'the strongest,' is also a characteristic of the Kṣattra. The words, *bṛhulābhimānaḥ* (in the first verse) contain the term *abhi*, which means, "to overpower, defeat," (which is a characteristic of the Kṣattram [498] also). The hymn consists of eleven verses, for the *Trīṣṭubh* comprises eleven syllables, and the Kṣattriyas share in the nature of the *Trīṣṭubh*. *Ojas* (in *ojīṣṭha*) is Indra's power, *vīryam* (strength) is *Trīṣṭubh*; the Kṣattra is power (*ojas*), and the Kṣattriya race is the strength (as to progeny). Thus he (the priest) makes him (the Kṣattriya) successful in strength, royal power, and progeny. By this *Gauriviti* hymn<sup>9</sup> the *Marutvatiya Śāstra* becomes successful, on which a *Brāhmaṇam*<sup>10</sup> has been told.

(Now Follows the *Niṣkevalya Śāstram*.)

The verse, *tvām iddhi harāmahe* (6, 46, 1-2), forms the *Bṛihat Prīṣṭha*. For the *Bṛihat Sāma* is the Kṣattram; by means of the Kṣattra, the king makes complete his royal power. If the *Bṛihat* is the Kṣattra, then the soul of the sacrificer is the *Niṣkevalya Śāstra* (to which the *Bṛihat Sāma* belongs). That is what the *Bṛihat Prīṣṭha* becomes (for the sacrificer). The *Bṛihat* is the Kṣattra; by means of the Kṣattra, the *Bṛihat* makes him successful. The *Bṛihat* is further precedence, and in this respect it makes him successful also. The *Bṛihat* is further excellence, and in this respect it makes him successful also.

They make the *Rathantara Sāma*, *abhi tvā sūra nonumāḥ*, the *Anurūpa*<sup>11</sup> to the *Bṛihat*. For the *Rathantara* is this world, and the *Bṛihat* is that world. That world corresponds to this one, and this [499] world to that one. Therefore, they make the *Rathantara* the *Anurūpa* to the *Bṛihat*, for thus they make the sacrificer enjoy both worlds.

Further, the *Rathantara* is the *Brahma*, and the Kṣattra the *Bṛihat*; thus the Kṣattra is then placed in the *Brahma*, and the *Brahma* in the Kṣattra. There is then prepared for both the *Sāmans* the same place. The *Dhāpyā* is *yūḥ vāṛāna* (10, 74, 6), of which a *Brāhmaṇam*<sup>12</sup> has been already told. The *Sāma Pragātha* is, *ubhayam śrinavacheha* (8, 50, 1-2); for it is a characteristic of both *Sāmans* which are sung (on account of its containing the word *ubhayam*, both.)

<sup>9</sup> *Janīṣṭāngraḥ* (See above). The *Rīṣi* is supposed to be *Gauriviti*.

<sup>10</sup> It begins, *tad vā etad yajamāna jananam*. See 4, 19 (page 65 of the text).

<sup>11</sup> That is to say, the *Hotar* repeats as counterpart to the *Stotriya* of the *Niṣkevalya Śāstra*, which is at this occasion the text of the *Bṛihat Sāma*, the text of the *Rathantaram*, which is quite unusual.

<sup>12</sup> This *Brāhmaṇam* is, *te devā abruvan sarraṁ vā*, See 3, 22 (page 67 of the text).

## 3.

(The Nivid Sūkta of the Niṣkevalya Śastra).

The hymn, *taṃ ṣu tuhi yo abhibhātijoḥ* (6, 18), contains the characteristic *abhi* in the word *abhibhāti*. Its words, *aśāḥam* (unconquerable), *ugram* (strong), *sahamānam* (being strong), contain characteristics of the Kṣattrā also. It consists of fifteen verses; for the number fifteen is strength, sharpness of senses, and power, the Kṣattrā is strength, the royal prince, is might (*vīryam*). The hymn thus makes the king successful in strength, royal power and might. It is a hymn of Bharadvāja. The Bṛihat Sāman was seen by Bharadvāja also (and) is in direct relationship with the ancestral fire.<sup>12</sup> The sacrifice of the Kṣattriya which has the Bṛihat for [500] (Stotra) becomes successful. Thence, wherever a Kṣattriya brings a sacrifice, there the Bṛihat Pṛiṣṭha is to be employed, for this makes it (the sacrifice) complete.

## 4.

(The Śastras of the Minor Hotṛi-priests.)

The performances of the minor Hotṛi-priests (Maitrāv aruṇa, Brāhmaṇa-chaṁsi, and Achhāvāka) required (at the sacrifice of a Kṣattriya) are those allotted to the Aikāhika sacrifices. For these Aikāhika performances are propitiatory, ready made, and placed on a footing, in order to make the sacrifice successful to accomplish it, and place it on a firm footing whence it cannot fall down. These (performances) contain all the forms (required), and are quite complete. (They are repeated) in order to accomplish the integrity and completeness (of the sacrifice). The Kṣattriyas who perform a sacrifice should think, "Let us obtain all desires by means of the all-perfect and complete performances of the minor Hotṛi-priests." Therefore, wherever the Ekāhas are not complete as to the number of Stomas and Pṛiṣṭhas, there are the Aikāhika perform-

<sup>12</sup> Śāy. explains the expression, *arṣeyena saloma*, in the following manner: *ārṣeyo bharadvājamunisambandhah, lomaś abdena kesayukto mirdhopalakṣyate, salomā saśiriskah saṁpūrṇa ity arthah*. The word *loma* means, according to him, "the head with the hair;" and to *saloma* he attributes the meaning "having a helmet, or turban," that is, "complete." But this explanation is too artificial and far-fetched to meet with the approval of modern philologists. To arrive at the proper meaning of the obsolete term, *saloma*, we have to consult the cognate words, *anuloma* and *pratiloma*, both applied to deterioration of lineage by mixing with lower castes. In reference to these terms, I translated the passage

ances of the minor Hotri-priests required,<sup>13</sup> then it (the sacrifice) becomes completed.

This sacrifice (performed by a Kṣatriya) should be the Ukthya, which has fifteen Stotras and Śastras. [501] Such is the opinion of some. For the sharpness of senses is a power (*ojas*), and the number fifteen is strength; (further) the Kṣattra is power, and the Kṣatriya is strength. Thus the priest makes him (the Kṣatriya) successful by means of power, Kṣattra, (and) strength. This sacrifice requires thirty Stotras and Śastras (*viz.*, fifteen each). For the Virāj consists of thirty syllables. The Virāj is food. When he places him (the sacrificer) in the Virāj, then he places him in food. Therefore the Ukthya, which is fifteen-fold, should be (employed for the king at this occasion). But the Agniṣṭoma, which forms part of the Jyotiṣṭoma, would more properly answer this purpose.<sup>14</sup> For, among the Stomas, the Trivṛit (nine-fold) is the Brahma, and the fifteen-fold Stoma is the Kṣattra. But the Brahma precedes the Kṣattra: (for the king should think) "If the Brahma is placed first, my kingdom will be strong and not to be shaken. The number seventeen represents the Vaiśyas, and twenty-one the Śūdras. If these two Stomas (the seventeen and twenty-one fold) are employed, then they make the Vaiśyas and Śūdras follow him (the king). Among the Stomas, the Trivṛit is splendour, the fifteen-fold is strength, the seventeen-fold is offspring, the twenty-one-fold is the footing. Thus the priest makes the king, who (thus) sacrifices, successful in gaining splendour, strength, offspring, and a firm footing. Therefore the Jyotiṣṭoma (Agniṣṭoma) is required. This requires twenty-four Stotras and Śastras (twelve each). For the year consists of twenty-four half months; in the year there are all (kinds of) nourishment. Thus he places him (the sacrificer) in all (kinds of) nourishment. Thence the Jyotiṣṭoma-Agniṣṭoma alone is required (and not the Ukthya).

<sup>13</sup> For the Ekāhas, which are *sarvastoma* and *sarvaprīṣṭha*, the following six Stomas are required: *trivṛit*, *pañchadasa*, *septadaśa* (*akavīṣa*), *trivṛa*, *trayastrīṣa*; and the following Prīṣṭhas: *Bṛihat*, *Rathantara*, *Vairupa*, *Vāirāja*, *Śikara*, *Rakata*. In the Kṣatriya sacrifice, there are only the Bṛihat and Rathantara required. It is therefore incomplete; the defects are to be supplied by the minor Hotri-priests.

<sup>14</sup> In this sacrifice, there are the four Stomas subsequently mentioned, required.

## [502] SECOND CHAPTER.

(*Punarabhiṣeka, or Repetition of the Inauguration Ceremony.*)

## 5.

(*The Implements and Preparation for Punarabhiṣeka.*)

Now follows (the rule) of Punarabhiṣeka of the Kṣattriya who is inaugurated as a sacrificer, and whose Kṣattram is in (such a way) new born.<sup>1</sup> After having undergone the ceremonies of ablution<sup>2</sup> and performed the animal sacrifice (*anubandhya*), he performs the concluding Iṣṭi.

After this Iṣṭi is finished (and thus the Soma day of the Râjasûya concluded), they sprinkle him again with the holy water (they make *punarabhiṣeka*). Before it commences, all implements must be in readiness, viz., a throne, made from Udumbara wood, with feet only as large as the span between the thumb and forefinger, and successive helmets of the length of half an arm, (besides there must be provided for) cords for binding made of Muñja grass, a tiger skin for covering the throne, a (large) ladle of Udumbara wood and a (small) branch of the Udumbara tree. In this ladle the following eight substances are thrown: curds, honey, clarified butter, rain-water fallen, during sunshine, young sprouts of grass and of green barley, liquor and Dûḥ grass (Dûrvâ). The throne is to be placed in the southern line,<sup>3</sup> drawn by a wooden sword (*sphya*) in the Vedi, the front part [503] turned eastwards. Two of its feet are to be within the Vedi and two outside. For this earth is (the goddess of) fortune; the little space within the Vedi is thus allotted to her, as well as the large (infinite) region outside. If thus two feet of the throne are inside and two outside the Vedi, both kinds of desires, those obtainable from the place within as well as from outside the Vedi, are to be gained.

## 6.

(*How the King has to Ascend his Throne at the Inauguration Ceremony; what Mantras he has to Repeat at this Occasion.*)

He spreads the tiger skin on the throne in such a manner that the hairs come outside, and that part which covered the neck is turned eastward. For the tiger is the Kṣattra (royal power) of the beasts in the forest. The Kṣattra is the royal prince; by means of this Kṣattra, the

<sup>1</sup> The term is *sūyate*, containing an allusion to the name of the sacrifice, *râjasûya*.

<sup>2</sup> This is the so-called *avabhṛitha* ceremony which takes place at the end of the sacrifice before the concluding Iṣṭi.

<sup>3</sup> By means of a wooden sword, three lines are drawn in the Vedi, viz., one towards the south, one towards the west, and one towards the east.

king makes his Kṣattrā (royal power) prosper. The king, when taking his seat on the throne, approaches it from behind, turning his face eastwards, kneels down with crossed legs, so that his right knee touches the earth,\* and (holding the throne with his hands) prays over it the following mantra :—

“ May Agni ascend thee, O throne, with the Gāyatrī metre ! May Savitar ascend (thee) with the Uṣṇih, Soma with the Anuṣṭubh, Bṛhaspati with the Bṛihat, Mitra and Varuṇa with the Pañkti, Indra with the Triṣṭubh, and the Viśve Devāḥ with the Jagatī metres. After them I ascend this throne, to be ruler, to be a great ruler, to be an universal ruler, to obtain all desires fulfilled, to be an independent and most distinguished ruler (on this earth), and to reach the world of Prajāpati, to be there a ruler, a great ruler, a supreme ruler, to be independent, and to live there for a long time ! ”

After having repeated this mantra, the king should ascend the throne, with his right knee first, and then with his left. This, this is done ; so they say.

The gods joined with the metres, which were placed in such an order that the following exceeded the preceding one always by four syllables,<sup>1</sup> ascended this (throne,) which is fortune, and posted themselves on it, Agni with the Gāyatrī, Savitar with the Uṣṇih, Soma with the Anuṣṭubh, Bṛhaspati with the Bṛihati, Mitra and Varuṇa with the Pañkti, Indra with the Triṣṭubh, the Viśvedevāḥ with the Jagatī. The two verses (where the joining of the gods to their metres is mentioned) commencing, *Aḡner Gāyatrī abhavat* (10, 130, 4-5) are then recited.

The Kṣattriya, who, after these deities (after having previously invoked them in this manner) ascends his throne, obtains for himself the power not only of acquiring anything, but of keeping what he has acquired ;<sup>2</sup> his prosperity increases from day to day, and he will rule supreme over all his subjects.

\* This particular posture is called *śūnūchya*. The Hotar, principally, must on many occasions take it ; it is very awkward and troublesome ; I could not imitate it well, though I tried.

<sup>1</sup> Gāyatrī with 24 syllables comes first ;  $24 + 4 = 28$  is Uṣṇih ;  $28 + 4 = 32$  is Anuṣṭubh ;  $32 + 4 = 36$  is Bṛihati ;  $36 + 4 = 40$  is Pañkti ;  $40 + 4 = 44$  is Triṣṭubh ;  $44 + 4 = 48$  is Jagatī.

<sup>2</sup> This is the translation of the word, *Yoga-kṣema*.

When the priest is about to sprinkle him (with water) then he makes the king invoke the waters for their blessing (by these words): "Look upon me, ye waters, with a favourable eye! touch my skin with your happy body! I invoke all the fires which reside in the waters to bestow on me splendour, strength, and vigour." For the waters, if not invoked for a blessing (by a mantra), take away the strength from [505] a Kṣatriya who is already consecrated; but not (if they have been duly invoked).

## 7.

*(The Inauguration Mantra when the King is Sprinkled with the Holy Water. Whether the Sacred Words, "bhâr," &c., are to be Pronounced along with this Mantra or not. Different Opinions on this Point.)*

They now put the branch of the Udumbara tree on the head of the Kṣatriya, and pour the liquids (which are in the large ladle) on it. (When doing so), the priest repeats the following mantras: "With these waters, which are most happy, which cure everything, increase the royal power, and hold up the royal power, the immortal Prajâpati sprinkled Indra, Soma the king, Varuna, Yama, Manu; with the same, sprinkle I thee! Be the ruler over kings in this world. Thy illustrious mother bore thee as the great universal ruler over great men; the blessed mother has borne thee! By command of the divine Savitar I sprinkle<sup>7</sup> (thee) with the arms of the Aśvins, with the hands of Pûṣan, with the lustre of Agni, the splendour of Sûrya, the power of Indra, that thou mayest obtain strength, happiness, fame, and food."

If the priest, who sprinkles the king, wishes him alone to enjoy good health,<sup>8</sup> then he shall pronounce (when sprinkling) the sacred word, *bhâr*. If he wishes that two men (son and grandson) should enjoy this benefit together with him, then he shall pronounce the two sacred words, *bhâr*, *bhuvah*. If he wishes to benefit in this way three men (son, grandson, and great grandson), or to make (the king) un-[506] rivalled, then he ought to pronounce the three sacred words, *bhâr*, *bhuvah*, *svar*.

---

<sup>7</sup> The arms of the Aśvins, &c., are here regarded as the instruments by which the ceremony is performed in a mystical way on the king.

<sup>8</sup> Lit., that he may eat food.

Some say, These sacred words having the power of bringing every thing within grasp, the Kṣattriya who has the mantra recited with the addition of these sacred words,<sup>9</sup> provides for another (not for himself); therefore, one should sprinkle him only under the recital of the mantra, "By command of the divine Savitar," &c. They, again, are of opinion that the Kṣattriya, when sprinkled, not under the recital of the whole mantra (*i.e.*, with omission of the sacred words), has power only over his former life.

*Satyakâma*, the son of *Jabalâ*, said, "If they do not sprinkle him under the recital of these sacred words (in addition to the mantra), then he is able to go through his whole life (as much as is apportioned to him)." But *Uddâlaka Aruṇiḥ* said, "He who is sprinkled under the recital of these sacred words obtains everything by conquest."

He (the priest) should sprinkle him under the recital of the whole mantra, "By the command of the divine Savitar," &c., and conclude by *bhûr, bhuvah, svar!*

The Kṣattriya who has thus performed a sacrifice loses (in consequence of his sacrifice) all these things (which were in him), *viz.*, the *Brahma* which was placed in the Kṣattra, the sap, nourishment, the essence of water and herbs, the character of holiness (*brahmavarchasam*), the thriving consequent on food, the begetting of children, and the peculiar form of the Kṣattra (all that it comprises). And as further regards the sap for (producing) nourishing substances, the Kṣattra is the protection of the herbs (the fields of grain, &c., being protected by the Kṣattriyas, these things must be kept). If he therefore brings those two invocation offerings before the inaugural-[507] ation ceremony,<sup>10</sup> then he places the *Brahma* in this Kṣattra (and all those things will be consequently kept).

## 8.

*(The Symbolical Meaning of the Different Implements and Liquids required for the Inauguration Ceremony. The Drinking of Spirituous Liquor (surâ) by the King.)*

The reason that the throne-seat, the ladle, and the branch is of the *Udumbara* tree is because the *Udumbara* is vigour and a nourishing

<sup>9</sup> *Atisarveṇa*, *i.e.*, by what is beyond the whole mantra, that is, the sacred words, *bhûr, &c.*, which are added to it.

<sup>10</sup> See above 7, 22, one to the *Brahma*, the other to the Kṣattra: "I enter the *Brahma*," &c.

substance. The priest thus places vigour in him (the Kings) as his nourishing substance.

As to curds, honey, and melted butter, they represent the liquid (essence) in the waters and herbs. The priest, therefore, places the essence of the waters and the herbs in him.

The rain water fallen during sunshine, represents the splendour and lustre of sanctity, which are in this way placed in him.

The young grass and young barley represent provisions and the thriving by their means, which are thus placed in him for (producing) offspring, and consequently (provide him with) offspring.

The spirituous liquor represents the Kṣattrā, and, further, the juice in the food; thus both the Kṣattrā and the juice in the food, are placed in him.

The Dûrvā grass is Kṣattrā; for this is the ruler of the herbs. The Kṣattrā, *viz.*, the princely race, is represented by it, as it were, spread everywhere; the Kṣattriya becomes residing here (on this earth), in his kingdom, he becomes established, as it were, his rule extended, as it were. This is represented by the sprouts of the Dûrvā, which have, [508] as it were, a firm footing on the earth. In this way, the Kṣattrā of the herbs is placed in him (the king) and a firm footing thus given him.

All those things (the Brahma, sap, &c.), which had gone from the king after having performed a sacrifice, are in this way placed in him (again). By their (of curds, honey, &c.) means he makes him thus successful.

Now he gives into his hand a goblet of spirituous liquor, under the recital of the verse, *svâdiṣṭhayâ madiṣṭhayâ*, &c. (9, 1, 1) *i.e.*, "Purify, O Soma! with thy sweetest, most exhilarating drops (the sacrificer), thou who art squeezed for Indra, to be drunk by him."<sup>11</sup> After having put the spirituous liquor into his hand, the priest repeats a propitiatory mantra<sup>12</sup> (which runs thus): "To either of you (spirituous liquor and Soma!) a separate residence has been prepared, and allotted by the gods. Do not mix with one another in the highest heaven; liquor! thou art powerful; Soma! thou art a king. Do not harm him (the king)! May either go to his own place." (Here is said), that the drinking of the Soma and that of liquor, exclude one another (they are not to be mixed).

<sup>11</sup> This interpretation is given by Sāyaṇa, which, no doubt, is suitable to the occasion at which this mantra is used; and thus it certainly was interpreted even in ancient times. However, it does not appear to be the original meaning of the verse.

<sup>12</sup> It is with some variations to be found in the Vājasaneyi Saṃhitā (19, 7).



After having drunk it, he should think, "the giver (the priest) of the goblet (to be his friend) and give him (the remainder of) this (liquor)." This is the characteristic of a friend. Thus he finally places the liquor in his friend (gives him a share in it). And thus has he who possesses such a knowledge, a place in his friend (they are mutually connected).

## 9.

[509] (*The Descent of the King from the Throne, after having been Inaugurated. The Mantras which he has to Repeat at this Occasion.*)

He now descends (from the throne-seat), facing the branch of the Udumbara tree (which was placed in the ground). The Udumbara being sap, and consequently a nourishing substance, the king goes thus (to receive) these gifts (hidden in the Udumbara tree). Being seated above, and having put both his feet on the ground, he announces his descent (facing the Udumbara), (by uttering the following words :) "I stand in the heavens, and on the earth; I stand in the air exhaled and inhaled; I stand on day and night; I stand on food and drink; I stand on Brahma, Kṣattra, and these three worlds." Finally, he stands firmly through the universal soul (*sarva-âtmâ*, which connects all the things just mentioned), and thence has a firm footing in the universe. He obtains continuous prosperity. The king who descends, after having been inaugurated by the ceremony of Punarabhiṣeka in this way (from the throne-seat), obtains supremacy over his subjects, and royal power.

After having descended,<sup>1</sup> he then stands, inclining his body (*upastham kṛtvâ*) with his face towards the east, and utters thrice the words, "Adoration to the Brahma!" Then he says aloud, "I present a gift for the attainment of victory (in general), of victory everywhere (*abhijiti*), of victory over strong and weak enemies (*vijiti*), and of complete victory (*sanjiti*)."

[510] By thus making thrice salutation to the Brahma, the Kṣattra comes under the sway of the Brahma, and consequently the rule of the king becomes prosperous, and he will have issue. As regards (the mantra), "I present a gift for the attainment of victory," &c., he emits Speech by it. For the words, "I give," imply that Speech is conquered, (recovered, after having been silent).

"When Speech is recovered, then (consequently) all this my performance shall be completed," having (so thinking) emitted Speech, he approaches the Ahavaniya fire, and puts a stick into it, reciting, "Thou

<sup>1</sup> *Pratyavarūhya*, instead of *ruhya*; long *û*, instead of short *u*, being a Vedic form.

art a wooden stick, become joined to the sharpness of senses and strength of the body, Svâhâ!" Finally, he succeeds thus in making himself sharpness of senses and valiant. After having put the stick into the fire, he walks three steps towards the east and north, (and addresses the step he is taking thus): "Thou art the means of subduing the regions; ye (steps), make me capable of adoring (in the right manner) the gods; may I obtain my desires wished for and preserve what is granted to me, and safety." He now proceeds to the north-east, that is, to undo again a defeat. Such is the meaning (they say).

## 10.

(Magical Performance of a King for Defeating an Enemy.)

The Devas and Asuras were fighting in these worlds. They fought in the eastern direction, then the Asuras defeated them. They then fought in the southern direction, and the Asuras defeated them again; and, likewise, they were defeated by the Asuras when fighting in the western and northern directions. They were then fighting between the eastern and northern directions, and remained victors. The [511] Kṣatriya, therefore, standing amidst both armies arrayed in battle lines, shall proceed to the northeast, saying to him (to the house-priest), "do so <sup>14</sup> that I may conquer this army." After he (the house-priest) has consented, he should touch the upper part of the king's chariot and repeat the mantra, *vanaspate vîdvângo hi* (6, 47, 26). Then he shall say to (the king), "Turn towards this (north-east) direction; thy chariot with all its implements should be turned thither (north-east); then to the north-west, south and east, and (lastly) towards the enemy." With the hymn, *abhivartena haviṣâ* (10, 174) shall he turn his chariot, and when reciting the *Apratiratha* (10, 103 *âśuh sîśâno*) *Śâsâ* (1, 152 *śâsa itthâ*), and *Sauparna* (*pra dhârâ yantu madhuna*) hymns, he shall look upon it (the chariot).

The Kṣatriya conquers (the hostile) army, when he, at the time of just being about fighting (with the enemy), takes thus his refuge (with the house-priest), saying, "Make me win this battle." He then shall let

---

<sup>14</sup> Sâya. refers this address to the king who is sitting in his chariot. A Kṣatriya is speaking these words. He asks first the king's permission to perform the ceremony mentioned. The person to whom the Kṣatriya addresses his words, is only hinted at by the demonstrative pronoun, but never explicitly mentioned. I think it refers to the Purohita or house-priest, who has always to accompany the king when going to fight a battle, and give him his advice. Sâyaṇa's opinion is hardly correct.

him fight in the north-eastern direction, and he (the Kṣattriya) wins the battle. If he be turned out of his dominions, and thus takes his refuge with him (the house-priest), saying, "Make me return to my dominions," then he (the house-priest) shall let him, when going away, proceed to this (north-eastern) direction, (and) thus he recovers his dominions.

(The king, whose inauguration ceremony is performed) after having been standing (in northeastern direction) recites then, when going [512] to his palace, (the verse) calculated to drive away all enemies altogether. (This verse is), *apa prâcha* (10, 131 1.) Then he will be made rid of all his enemies and live in safety, and enjoy happiness increasing from day to day. He who returns to his palace whilst reciting the above-mentioned mantra (10, 131, 1) obtains sovereignty over his subjects, and supreme power. After having come home, he sits behind the household fire. His priest then, after having touched him, fills a goblet four times with melted butter, and makes thus three (each consisting of four spoonfuls) offerings addressed to Indra, the mantras being recited in the *Prapada* <sup>11</sup> form, in order that he might be protected from disease, injury from any loss, and enjoy perfect safety.

### 11.

*(The Repetition of Three Mantras, with Insertion of a certain Formula. Its Effect. Janmejaya's Opinion on the Effect of this Magical Performance.)*

(The verses to be recited in the *Prapada* way follow) *Paryâ su pradhane* (9, 110, 1), i.e., acquire everywhere riches, in order to grant them (to thy worshipper). In the midst of the word, *vritrâni* (of the just mentioned mantra), after *â*, and before *ni*, he inserts the words, "*bhûr, brahma, prânam* (breath), *amṛitam* (ambrosia) is such one (the name is required) [513] who seeks for shelter and safety, for welfare with his children and cattle." (Now follows the remaining part of the verse), *ni sakṣanir*,

---

<sup>11</sup> Sâya. adduces for explaining this term a memorial verse (*kārikā*) :

*Pādâ yasyâṁstu yâvanto yâvand akṣarasahmitaḥ,*

*Richy adajayanam eteqâm prapadam tad vidur budhâḥ,*

i. e., the wise call that recital of the (several) *pâdas* of a *Rik* verse *prapada*, when they all are measured by the syllables of which they consist. This means that each syllable of the *pâda* is to be pronounced quite distinctly, and that there should be a stop at the end of each *pâda*. This explanation appears, however, not to be quite correct. From the following paragraph, we learn that *prapada* is the insertion of a formula in a *pâda* of a verse.

&c. i.e., being a conqueror of enemies, thou makest efforts of crossing the lines of our adversaries.

(Now follows the second verse), *Anu hi tvā sutam*, &c. (9, 110, 2). In the midst of the word, *samarya*, in the second pāda, after the syllable “*ma*,” the words, *bhuro*, *brahma*, &c. (the remainder just as above) are inserted.

(Now follows the third verse), *ajjano hi pavamāno*, &c. (9, 110, 3). In the midst of the word, *śakmanā*, after *sa* and before *mā*, he inserts the words, *sva*, *brahma*, &c. (just as above). After the last word of the interpolation, viz., “*paśubhir*,” he then proceeds to finish the verse re-commencing by *kmanā*.

The Kṣattriya, for whose benefit the house-priest sacrifices three offerings of melted butter, each consisting of four spoonfuls, whilst reciting these Indra verses in the above-mentioned Prapada way, thus becomes free of disease, free of enemies, does not suffer any loss, and, screened by the form of the three-fold science (the three Vedas), walks in all directions, and becomes established (after his death) in Indra’s world.

Finally, he prays for increase in cows, horses, and progeny, with the words, “Cows, may ye be born here! horses, may ye be born here! men, may ye be born here! may here sit a hero (my son), as protector (of the country), who presents the priests gifts, consisting of a thousand (cows).” He who thus prays, will be blessed with plenty of children and cattle.

The Kṣattriya, whom those (priests) who have this knowledge make sacrifice in such a way, will be raised to an exalted position. But those who make the king sacrifice in this way, without possessing this knowledge, they kill him, drag him away, and deprive [514] him of his property, as the most degraded of men (*niṣādas*), robbers, murderers, seize a wealthy man (when travelling) in a forest, and, after having thrown him into a ditch, run away with his property.

*Janamejaya*, the son of *Parikṣit*, who possessed this knowledge, said, “My priests, who possess this knowledge, made me sacrifice, I who have the same knowledge (in such a manner). Therefore I am victorious; I conquer a hostile army eager for fighting;<sup>16</sup> neither the divine nor the human arrows coming from such an army can reach me. I shall attain the full age allotted to man (100 years), I shall become master of the whole earth. The same falls to the lot of him, who knowing this, is made to sacrifice (by priests) in this way.

<sup>16</sup> In the original, *abhitvāri*. Sāy. *abhitō yuddhārtha-mudayuktā para kiṃ sēnā*

## THIRD CHAPTER.

(The *Mahâbhiṣeka* or Grand Inauguration Ceremony of Indra.)

## 12.

(The Elevation of Indra to the Royalty over the Gods. His Throne-seat. By what Mantras he Ascended it. The Gods Proclaim him as King by mentioning all his Titles.)

Now follows the great inauguration (*mahâbhiṣeka*) of Indra. The gods, headed by Prajâpati, said to one another (pointing with their hands to Indra) : "This one is among the gods the most vigorous, most strong, most valiant, most perfect, who carries best out any work (to be done). Let us instal him (to the kingship over us)." They all consented to [515] perform just this ceremony (*mahâbhiṣeka*) on Indra. They brought for him that throne-seat, which is called the Rik-formed.<sup>1</sup> They made the Bṛihat and Rathantara verses its two forelegs, the Vairûpa and Vairâja verses its hind-legs, the Śâkvara and Raivata (verses) its top-boards, the Nâudhasa and Kâleya its side-boards. The Rik verses were made the threads of the texture which went lengthwise, the Sâmans were the threads which went crossways, the Yajus verses the intervals in the texture. They made (the goddess of) Glory its covering, and (the goddess of) Fortune its pillow, Savitar and Bṛhaspati were holding its two fore-legs, Vâyu and Pûṣan the two hind-legs, Mitra and Varuṇa the two top-boards, the Aśvins the two side-boards.

Indra then ascended the throne-seat, addressing it thus : "May the Vasus ascend thee with the Gâyatri metre, with the Trivṛt Stoma, with the Rathantara Sâma. After them I then ascend for obtaining universal sovereignty. May the Rudras ascend thee with the Triṣṭubh metre, the fifteen-fold Stoma, and the Bṛihat Sâma. After them then I ascend for obtaining increase of enjoyment. May the Adityas ascend thee with the Jagati metre, the seventeen-fold Stoma, and the Vairûpa Sâma. After them I ascend for obtaining independent rule. May the Viśve Devâḥ ascend thee with the Anuṣṭubh metre, the twenty-one-fold Stoma, and the Vairâja Sâma. After them I ascend for obtaining distinguished rule. May the divine Sâdhyâs and Apyas ascend thee with the Pañkti metre, the Tṛinava (twenty-seven-fold) Stoma, and the Śâkvara Sâma. After them I ascend for obtaining royal power. May the divine Marutas and

<sup>1</sup> It was composed of all the sacred mantras of the Rigveda. On the different Sâmans mentioned here, see the notes on page 282.

Aṅgiras ascend thee with the Atichandas metre, the thirty-three-fold Stoma, and the Raivata Sāma. After [516] them, then, I ascend for obtaining the fulfilment of the highest desires for becoming a great king, for supreme mastership, independence, and a long residence. By these words, one should ascend the throne-seat.

After Indra had seated himself on this throne-seat, the Viśve Devāḥ said to him, "Indra cannot achieve any feat if he is not everywhere publicly proclaimed<sup>2</sup> (as hero); but if he be thus proclaimed, he can do so." They then consented to do so, and consequently, turning towards Indra, cried aloud (calling him by all his titles.)

The gods bestowed on him (Indra), by proclaiming him as "universal ruler," universal rule; by proclaiming him as "enjoyer (of pleasures)," they made him father (of pleasures); by proclaiming him as "independent ruler," they granted him independence of rule; by proclaiming him as "distinguished king," they conferred on him royal distinction; by proclaiming him "king," they made him father of kings; by calling him "one who has attained the highest desires," they granted him fulfilment of the highest desires.

(The gods then continued proclaiming his heroic virtues in the following manner): "The Kṣattra is born; the Kṣatriya is born; the supreme master of the whole creation is born; the devourer of the (hostile) tribes is born; the destroyer of the hostile castles is born; the slayer of the Asuras is born; the protector of the Brahma is born; the protector of the religion is born."

After (his royal dignity) was thus proclaimed, Prajâpati, when being just about performing the inauguration ceremony, recited over him (consecrated him with) the following mantra :

### 13.

[517] (*The Mantras by which Indra was Consecrated. He was Installed by Prajâpati.*)

"Varuṇa, the faithful, sat down in his premises—for obtaining universal rule, enjoyment (of pleasures), independence, distinction as sovereign, fulfilment of the highest desires—he, the wise, &c.," (1, 25, 10). Prajâpati, standing in front of Indra who was sitting on the throne-seat, turned his face to the west, and, after having put on his head a gold leaf, sprinkled him with the moist branch of an Udumbara, together with that of a Palāśa tree, reciting the three Rik verses, *imā āpaḥ śivatamā*,

<sup>2</sup> The term is *anabhyukṛṣṭa*.

*i.e.*, these most happy waters, &c. (Ait. Br. 8, 7); and the Yajus verse, *devasya trâ* (Vâjasan. Samh. 1, 10. Ait Br. 8, 1); and the great words, *bhûr, bhuvah, svar*.

#### 14.

*Indra Inaugurated by Various Deities in the Various Directions to the Kingship, becomes Universal Ruler.*

The Vasavas then inaugurated him (Indra) in the eastern direction, during thirty-one days, by these three Rik verses, the Yajus verse, and the great words (all just mentioned), for the sake of obtaining universal sovereignty. Hence all kings of eastern nations, in the eastern regions, are inaugurated to universal sovereignty, and called *samrâj*, *i.e.*, universal sovereign, after this precedent made once by the gods.

Then the Rudras inaugurated Indra in the southern region, during thirty-one days, with the three Rik verses, the Yajus and the great words (just mentioned), for obtaining enjoyment (of pleasures). Hence all kings of living creatures (chiefly beasts) in the southern region are inaugurated for the enjoyment (of pleasures) and called *bhoja*, *i.e.*, enjoyer.

[518] Then the divine Adityas inaugurated him in the western region, during thirty-one days, with those three Rik verses, that Yajus verse, and those great words, for obtaining independent rule. Hence all kings of the *Nichyas* and *Apâchyas* in the western countries, are inaugurated to independent rule, and called "independent rulers."

Then the Viśve Devâh inaugurated him during thirty-one days, in the northern region, by those three Rik verses, &c. for distinguished rule. Hence all people living in northern countries beyond the Himalaya, such as the *Uttarakurûs*, *Uttaramadras*, are inaugurated for living without a king (*vairâjyam*), and called Virâj,<sup>3</sup> *i.e.* without king.

Then the divine Sâdhyas and Aptyas inaugurated Indra, during thirty-one days, in the middle region, which is a firmly established footing (the immovable centre) to the kingship (*râjya*). Hence the kings of the *Kurûpañchâlas*, with the *Vasas* and *Uśînaras*, are inaugurated to kingship, and called Kings (*râjâ*).

---

\* To this word two meanings can be given : 1 (without king;) 2 a very distinguished king. In this passage, we must take it in the first meaning ; for here are *janapadâh*, *i.e.*, people in opposition to the king mentioned, as *abhişikta*, *i.e.*, inaugurated, whilst in all other passages of this chapter, we find instead of them, the *râjînah* or kings.

Then the divine Marutas and Aṅgiras inaugurated him, during thirty-one days, in the upper (*ūrdhva*) region, for attaining fulfilment of the highest wishes, the position of a great king, of a supreme ruler, of an independant king, and long duration of his rule.

Indra thus became, by means of this great inauguration ceremony, possessed of the power of obtaining anything wished for, as had been only the prerogative of Prajāpati.\* He conquered in all the various ways [519] of possible conquest,<sup>5</sup> and won all people. He obtained the leadership, precedence, and supremacy over all gods. After having conquered the position of a *samrāj* (universal ruler), &c., he became in this world self-existing (*svayambhūh*), an independent ruler, immortal,<sup>6</sup> and, in the heaven-world, after having attained all desires wished for, he became immortal (also).

#### FOURTH CHAPTER.

*(The Mahābhīṣeka Ceremony Performed on a King. What Rites Performed it, and for what Kings they Performed it.)*

##### 15.

*(The Consequences of the Mahābhīṣeka. The Oath which the King must take Before the Priest Performs the Ceremony.)*

The priest who, with this knowledge (about the Mahābhīṣeka ceremony), wishes that a Kṣātriya should conquer in all the various ways of conquest, to subjugate all people, and that he should attain to leadership, precedence, and supremacy over all kings, and attain everywhere and at all times to universal sovereignty, enjoyment (of pleasures), independence, distinguished distinction as king, the fulfilment of the highest desires, the position of a king, of a great king, and supreme mastership, that he might cross (with his arms) the universe, and become the ruler of the whole earth during all his life, which may last for an infinitely long time, that he might be the sole king of the earth up to its [520] shores bordering on the ocean; such a priest should inaugurate the Kṣātriya with Indra's great inauguration ceremony. But, before doing so, the priest must make the king take the following oath: "What-

\* This whole sentence is only a translation of the full import implied in the words, *paramēṣṭi prajāpatya*.

<sup>5</sup> Lit., he conquered all the conquests (*jitis*, i.e., *abhijiti*, *vijiti*, *samjiti*, &c. See above)

<sup>6</sup> Here Śāyana explains it as "long-lived."



ever pious works thou mightest have done during the time which may elapse from the day<sup>1</sup> of thy birth to the day of thy death, all these, together with the position, thy good deeds, thy life, thy children, I would wrest from thee, shouldest thou do me any harm."

The Kṣattriya, then, who wishes to attain to all this, should well consider and say in good faith all that is above-mentioned (thou mayest wrest from me, &c., &c.)

## 16.

*(The Woods and Grains Required for the Performance of Mahâbhīṣeka.)*

The priest then shall say (to his attendants), "Bring four kinds of wood: Nyagrodha, Udumbara, Aśvattha, and Plakṣa." Among the trees, the Nyagrodha is the Kṣattrā. Thus, by bringing Nyagrodha wood, he places in the king the Kṣattram, the Udumbara representing the enjoyment, the Aśvattha universal sovereignty, the Plakṣa independence and freedom of the rule of another king. The priest, by having these woods brought to the spot, thus makes the king participate in all these qualities (universal sovereignty, &c., &c.). Next he shall order to bring four kinds of grain from vegetables (*auśadha tokmakṛita*), viz., rice with small grains, rice with large grains, Priyaṅgu, and barley. For, amongst herbs, rice with small grains represents the Kṣattrā. Thus, by bringing sprouts of such grains, he [521] places the Kṣattrā in him. Rice with large grains represents universal sovereignty. Therefore, by bringing sprouts of such grains (to the spot), he places universal sovereignty in him. The Priyaṅgu, among herbs, represent enjoyment of pleasures, By bringing their sprouts, he places the enjoyment of pleasures in him. Barley represents the skill as military commander. By bringing their sprouts, he places such a skill in him (the king).

## 17.

*(The Implements for Making Mahâbhīṣeka.)*

Now they bring for him a throne-seat made of Udumbara wood, of which the Brâhmaṇam has been already told (see 8, 8). The ladle of Udumbara wood is here optional; instead of it, a vessel of the same wood (*pâtṛī*) may be taken. Besides, they bring an Udumbara branch. Then they mix those four kinds of fruit and grain in a vessel, and, after having poured over them curds, honey, clarified butter, and rain-water fallen

<sup>1</sup> In the original, *vātri*, night. The day commenced at evening, as it appears.

during sunshine, put it down. He (the priest) should then consecrate the throne-seat in the following way: "thy two forelegs are the Brihat and Rathantaram Sâmans, &c. (just as above, see 8, 12).

**18=13, and 19=14.**

**20.**

*(The Meaning and Effect of the Various Liquids Poured over the Head of the King. His Drinking of Spirituous Liquor. He drinks the Soma Mystically.)*

By sprinkling the king with curds, the priest makes his senses sharp; for curds represent sharpness of senses in this world. By sprinkling him with honey, the priest makes him vigorous; for honey is the vigour in herbs and trees. By sprinkling him with clarified butter, he bestows upon him splendour; for [522] clarified butter is the brightness of cattle. By sprinkling him with water, he makes him free from death (immortal); for waters represent in this world the drinking of immortality (*amṛita*).

The king who is thus inaugurated, should present to the Brahman who has inaugurated him gold, a thousand cows, and a field in form of a quadrangle. They say, however, that the amount of the reward is not limited and restricted to this (it may be much higher), for the Kṣatriya (i.e., his power) has no limits, and to obtain unlimited (power, the reward should, as to its greatness, be unlimited also).

Then the priest gives into his hands a goblet filled with spirituous liquor, repeating the mantra, *svâdiṣṭhayâ*, &c. (see 8, 8). He then should drink the remainder (after previous libation to the gods), when repeating the following two mantras: "Of what juicy, well-prepared beverage" Indra drank with his associates, just the same, *viz.*, the king Soma, I drink here, with my mind being devoted to him (Soma)." The second mantra (Rigveda, 8, 45, 22), "To thee who growest like a bullock (Indra), by drinking Soma, I send off (the Soma juice), which was squeezed, to drink it; may it satiate thee and make thee well drunk."

The Soma beverage which is (in a mystical way) contained in the spirituous liquor, is thus drunk by the king, who is inaugurated by means of Indra's great inauguration ceremony (the ceremony just described), and not the spirituous liquor.\* (After having drunk this mystical Soma) he should

---

\* The spirituous liquor is here a substitute for the Soma, which the Kṣatriyas were not allowed to drink.

\* By means of mantras, the liquor was transformed into real Soma. We have here a sample of a supposed miraculous transformation of one matter into another.

repeat the [523] following mantras, *apāma Somam* (8, 48, 3), i.e., we have drunk, Soma, and *śan no bhava* (10, 37, 10), i.e., Be it propitious to us !

The drinking of spirituous liquor, or Soma, or the enjoyment of some other exquisite food, affects the body of the Kṣatriya who is inaugurated by means of Indra's great inauguration ceremony, just as pleasantly and agreeably till it falls down (on account of drunkenness), as the son feels such an excess of joy when embracing his father, or the wife when embracing her husband, as to lose all self-command.

## 21.

(*What Kings had the Mahābhiṣeka Ceremony Performed ; their Conquest of the Whole Earth, and the Horse Sacrifices. Stanzas on Janamejaya, Viśvakarmā and Marutta.*)

Tura, the son of Karaṣa, inaugurated with this great inauguration ceremony of Indra, Janamejaya, the son of Parikṣit. Thence Janamejaya went everywhere conquering the earth, up to its ends, and sacrificed the sacrificial horse. To this fact refers the following Gāthā (stanza), which is sung : " In the land where the throne-seat was erected, Janamejaya bound a horse, which was eating grain, adorned with a mark on its forehead (*rukmin*), and with yellow flower garlands, which was walking over the best (fields full of fodder), for the gods."

With this ceremony, Śārayāta, the son of Manu, was inaugurated by Chyavana, the son of Bhrigu. Thence Śārayāta went conquering all over the earth, and sacrificed the sacrificial horse, and was even, at the sacrificial session held by the gods, the house-father.

With this ceremony, Samaśuṣmā, the son of Vājaratna, inaugurated Śatānīka, the son Satrajit. [524] Thence Śatānīka went conquering everywhere over the whole earth, up to its ends, and sacrificed the sacrificial horse.

With this ceremony, Parvata and Nārada inaugurated Ambaṣṭya. Thence Ambaṣṭya went conquering everywhere over the whole earth, up to its ends, and sacrificed the sacrificial horse.

With this ceremony Parvata and Nārada inaugurated Yudhāmsrauṣṭi, the son of Ugrasena. Thence Yudhāmsrauṣṭi went conquering everywhere over the whole earth, up to its ends, and sacrificed the sacrificial horse.

With this inauguration ceremony, Kaśyapa inaugurated Viśvakarmā, the son of Bhuvana. Thence Viśvakarmā went conquering everywhere over the whole earth, up to its ends, and sacrificed the sacrificial horse.

They say that the earth sang to Viśvakarmā the following stanza :  
 “ No mortal is allowed to give me away (as donation),\* O Viśvakarmā, thou hast given me, (therefore) I shall plunge into the midst of the sea. In vain was thy promise made to Kaśyapa.”

With this ceremony *Vasiṣṭha* inaugurated *Sudās*, the son of *Pijavana*. Thence *Sudās* went conquering everywhere over the whole earth, up to its ends, and sacrificed the sacrificial horse.

With this inauguration ceremony *Samvarta*, the son of *Aṅgiras*, inaugurated *Marutta*, the son of *Avikṣhit*. Thence *Marutta* went conquering everywhere over the whole earth, up to its ends, and sacrificed the sacrificial horse.

Regarding this event, there is the following Stotra chanted : “ The Maruts resided as distributors of [525] food in the house of *Marutta*, the son of *Avikṣhit*, who had fulfilled all his desires; all the gods were present at the gathering.”

## 22.

(Continuation of the Preceding. Stanzas on the Liberality of *Aṅga*, *Udamaya*, and *Virochana*.)

With this ceremony, *Udamaya*, the son of *Atri*, inaugurated *Aṅga*. Thence *Aṅga* went conquering everywhere over the whole earth, up to its ends, and sacrificed the sacrificial horse. This *Aṅga*, who was not defective in any respect (thence called *alopāṅga*), had once said, “ I give thee, O Brahman, ten thousand elephants, and ten thousand slave girls, if you call me to this (thy) sacrifice.”<sup>a</sup> Regarding them, the following (five) stanzas (*ślokas*) were sung :—

(1) “ Whatever cows the sons of *Priyamedhas* had ordered (*Udamaya* to give (in the midst of the sacrifice at the midday libation), the *Atri* son (*Udamaya*) at each time presented two thousand *Badvas*.

(2) “ The son of *Virochana* loosened eighty-eight thousand white horses from their strings, and presented those, which were fit for drawing a carriage, to the sacrificing *Purohita*.”<sup>b</sup>

(3) “ The son of *Atri* presented ten thousand girls, well endowed with ornaments on their necks, who had been gathered from all quarters.”

\* The king had promised the whole earth as gift to his officiating priest.

<sup>a</sup> *Udamaya*, the son of *Atri*, was at this time himself the sacrificer. The *Priyamedhas* were his officiating priests.

<sup>b</sup> A *Badva* is, according to *Sāyaṇa*, 100 kotis, i.e., a billion. But I doubt very much whether this is the original meaning of *badva*. It is perhaps related to the Zend *baēvare*, which means “ ten thousand.”

<sup>c</sup> This *Śloka* does not refer to king *Aṅga*.

(4) The son of Atri, having given ten thousand elephants in the country *Avachatnuka*, the Brahman [526] (Atri's son) being tired, desired his servants (to take charge) of Aṅga's gift."

(5) "(From saying) I give thee a hundred (only), I give thee a hundred, he got tired; (thence) he said, I give thee a thousand, and stopped often in order to breathe, for there were too many thousands to be given."

### 23.

(Continuation. Stanzas on the Liberality of Bharata. Story of Satyavarya, who was Created out of his Reward by the King Atyarāti.)

With this ceremony, *Dīrghatamas*, the son of an unmarried woman, inaugurated *Bharata*, the son of *Duṣyanta*. Thence Bharata went conquering everywhere over the whole earth, up to its ends, and sacrificed those horses which were fit for being sacrificed. Regarding this event, the following stanzas are sung:

(1) Bharata presented one hundred and seven Badvas (large flocks) of elephants,<sup>8</sup> of a dark complexion, with white teeth, all decked with gold, in the country *Maṣṇāra*.

(2) At the time when Bharata, the son of *Duṣyanta* constructed a sacred hearth in (the country of) *Sāchiguna*, the Brahmans got distributed flocks of cows by thousands.

(3) Bharata, the son of *Duṣyanta*, bound seventy-eight horses (for being sacrificed) on the banks of the *Yamunā*, and fifty-five on the *Gangā* for *Indra*.<sup>9</sup>

(4) The son *Duṣyanta*, after having bound (for sacrificing) one hundred and thirty-three horses [527], overcame the stratagems of his royal enemy, by means of the superiority of his own stratagems.

(5) The great work achieved by Bharata, neither the forefathers achieved it, nor will future generations achieve it, (for it is as impossible to do it) as any mortal, belonging to the five divisions of mankind,<sup>10</sup> can touch with his hands the sky.

<sup>8</sup> *Mṛiga* in Sanscrit. Sây. says, that elephants are to be understood here. *Mṛiga* appears to be a general term for a wild beast.

<sup>9</sup> *Vritraghne*, Sây. takes it, however, as name of a country, for which I see, however, no reason.

<sup>10</sup> *Pañcha mānavāḥ*. Sây. explains the four castes, with the *Niṣādas* as the fifth. But I am rather inclined to take the word in the sense of *pañchakṛiṣṭi*, or *pañchakṣiti*, i. e., five tribes frequently mentioned in the *Samāhitā*. It then denotes the whole human race, including the superior beings. See page 214.

The Rīṣi *Bṛihad Uktha* communicated this great inauguration ceremony to *Durmukha*, the *Pañchāla*. Thence *Durmukha*, who was no king, being possessed of this knowledge, went conquering everywhere over the whole earth, up to its ends, and sacrificed the sacrificial horse.

The son of *Satyahavya*, of the *Vasiṣṭha* Gotra, communicated this ceremony to *Atyarāti*, the son of *Janantapaya*. Thence *Atyarāti*, who was no king, being possessed of such a knowledge, went conquering everywhere over the whole earth, up to its end, and sacrificed the sacrificial horse.

The son of *Satyahavya*, of the *Vasiṣṭha* Gotra, then told (the king), "Thou hast (now) conquered the whole earth up to the shore of the sea; let me obtain now greatness (as reward for my services)." *Atyarāti* answered, "When, O Brahmana, I shall have conquered the *Uttara Kurus*,<sup>11</sup> then thou shalt be king of the earth, and I will be thy general." The son of *Satyahavya* said, "This is the land of the gods, no mortal can conquer it. Thou hast cheated me; therefore I take all this (from thee)." *Atyarāti*, after having been thus deprived of his powers and majesty, was slain by the victorious king *Śuśmīna*, [528] the son of *Śibya*. Thence a *Kṣattriya* should not cheat a Brahman who has this knowledge and performed this (inauguration) ceremony, unless he wishes to be turned out of his dominions, and to lose his life.

## FIFTH CHAPTER.

(On the Office of the *Purohita*, or *House-priest*. The *Brahmanaḥ Parimara*, i. e., *Dying Around the Brahma*.)

### 24.

(The Necessity for a King to Appoint a *House-priest*.)

In what Way the King Keeps the Sacred Fires. How to Appease the Five Destructive Powers of *Agni*).

Now, about the office of a *Purohita* (house-priest). The gods do not eat the food offered by a king who has no house-priest (*Purohita*). Thence the king even when (not) intending to bring a sacrifice, should appoint a Brahman to the office of house-priest.

The king who (wishes) that the gods might eat his food, has, after having appointed a *Purohita*, however, the use of the (sacred) fires (without having actually established them) which lead to heaven; for the *Purohita* is his *Ahavanīya* fire, his wife the *Gārhapatya*, and his son the

<sup>11</sup> In the north of the *Himalaya*.—*Sāy*.

Dakṣiṇa fire. When he does (anything) for the Purohita, then he sacrifices in the Ahavaniya fire (for the Purohita represents this fire). When he does (anything) for his wife, then he verily sacrifices in the Gârhapatya fire. When he does (anything) for his son, then he verily sacrifices in the Dakṣiṇa fire. These fires (which are led by the Purohita) which are thus freed from their destructive power<sup>1</sup> (for the Kṣattriya, i.e., [529] they do not burn him), carry, pleased by the wish for sacrificing,<sup>2</sup> the Kṣattriya to the heaven-world, and (make him obtain) the royal dignity, bravery, a kingdom, and subjects to rule over. But, if the Kṣattriya has no wish for sacrificing (by not appointing a Purohita), then the fires get displeased with him, and being not freed from their destructive power, throw him out of the heaven-world (and deprive him) of the royal dignity, bravery, his kingdom, and subjects over whom he rules.

This Agni Vaiśvanara, which is the Purohita, is possessed of five destructive powers;<sup>3</sup> one of them is in his speech, one in his feet, one in his skin, one in his heart, and one in the organ of generation. With these (five) powers, which are burning and blazing, he (Agni) attacks the king.

By saying, "Where, <sup>4</sup> O master, hast thou been residing (for so long a time)? Servants, bring (kuśa) grass for him," the king propitiates the destructive power which is in Agni's speech. When they bring water for washing the feet, then the king propitiates the destructive power which is in Agni's feet. When they adorn him, then he propitiates by it the destructive power which is in Agni's skin. When they satiate him (with food), then the king propitiates the destructive power which is in Agni's heart. When Agni lives unrestrained (at ease) in the king's premises, then he propitiates the destructive power which is in Agni's organ of generation. Agni, then, if all the destructive powers which are in his body have been propitiated, and he is pleased by the king's wish [530] for sacrificing, conveys him to the heaven-worlds and (grants him) royal dignity, bravery, a kingdom, and subjects over whom he might rule. But should the king not do so, he will be deprived of all these gifts.

## 25.

*(Agni Protects the King who Appoints a House-priest.)*

This Agni Vaiśvanara, who is the Purohita, is possessed of five destructive powers. With them he surrounds the king (for his defence), just

<sup>1</sup> Literally, the bodies of which are appeased.

<sup>2</sup> The king manifests his wish by appointing a Purohita.

<sup>3</sup> They are called *meni*. Sây. explains *paropadravakirini krodharûpâ śaktir*.

Agni, or his representative, the Purohita, is here treated as a guest.

as the sea surrounds the earth. The empire of such a ruler (*ârya*) will be safe. Neither will he die before the expiration of the full life term (100 years); but live up to his old age, and enjoy the full term apportioned for his life. Nor will he die again (for he is free from being born again as a mortal), if he has a Brâhmaṇa who possesses such a knowledge as his Purohita, and guardian of his empire; for he obtains by means (of his own) royal dignity that (for another, his son), and by means of his bravery that (of another). The subjects of such a king obey him unanimously and undivided.

## 26.

(The Importance of the Office of a Purohita Proved from Three Verses of a Vedic Hymn).

To this power of the Purohita, a Rîṣi alludes in the the following verses: *sa id rājâ pratiḡjanyâni*, &c. (4, 50, 7), *i.e.*, the king defeated by his prowess and bravery all his adversaries. By *janyâni* are enemies and adversaries to be understood; he conquers them by means of his prowess and bravery. (The other half of this verse is as follows) *Bṛhaspatim yaḥ subhṛitam bibharti*, *i. e.*, “who (the king) supports Bṛhaspati who is well to be supported.” For Bṛhaspati is the [531] Purohita of the gods and him follow the Purohitas of the human kings. The words, “who supports Bṛhaspati who is well to be supported,” therefore mean, who (what king) supports the Purohita who is well to be supported. By the words (the last quarter of the verse above mentioned) *valgâtyati vandate pūrvabhajam*, *i.e.*, he honours and salutes him who has the precedence of enjoyment (*i.e.*, the Purohita), he recommends his (the Purohita's) distinction.

(In the first half of the following verse), *sa it kṣetti sudhita okasi sve* (4, 50, 8), the idea is expressed, that he (the Purohita) lives in his own premises; the word *okas* means *gṛiha*, *i. e.*, house, and the word *sudhita* is the same as *sukhita*, *i. e.*, well-disposed, pleased. (The second half of the verse) *tasmâ ilâ pinvate viśvadânîm*, *i. e.*, food grows for him (the king who keeps a Purohita) at all times. *Ilâ* here means *anna*, *i. e.*, food; such one (such a king) is always possessed of essential juice (for keeping the life again); his subjects bow before him. The subjects (the tribes) form kingdoms; kingdoms by themselves bow before such a king who is preceded (*pūrvâ eti*) by a Brahma. Thus one calls him (such a Brâhmaṇa) a Purohita.

(The first quarter of the third verse 4, 50, 9 is as follows) *apratīto jāyati sam dhanâni*, *i. e.*, he (such a king) conquers realms without being



opposed by enemies. By *dhanâni* kingdoms are to be understood ; he conquers them without meeting any opposition. The second quarter of the verse is as follows) *prati janyâni uta yâ sajanyaâ*. By *janyâni* are enemies and adversaries to be understood ; he conquers them without meeting any opposition. (In the third quarter) *arasyare yo varivaḥ karoti*, there is said, “ who (what king) not being possessed of any wealth renders service (*varivaḥ*) to a very indigent (Purohita).” (In the last quarter of the verse) *brahmaṇe rājâ tam avanti devâḥ*, i.e., “ if the king is [532] for the Brahman (if he support him), then the gods protect him (the king) ” he speaks about the Purohita.

## 27.

*The Three Divine Purohitas. Who is Fit for the Office of a Purohita. By Repeating of What Mantra and Performance, of What Ceremony the King has to Engage him.)*

The Brahman who knows the (following) three (divine) Purohitas, as well as the three appointers to this office, should be nominated to such a post. Agni is one of these (three) Purohitas ; his appointer is the earth ; the (other) Purohita is Vâyu, his appointer is the air ; the (third) Purohita is Âditya, his appointer is the sky. Who knows this is (fit for the office of a) Purohita ; but he who does not know it, is unworthy of holding such an office.

That king who appoints a Brâhmaṇa who has this knowledge to be his Purohita and protector of his kingdom, succeeds in making (another) king his friend, and conquers his enemy. The king who does so, obtains by means of (his own) royal dignity that (for another), and by means of (his) bravery that for another (i. e., he defeats him). The subjects of such a king obey him unanimously and undivided.

*(Now Follows the Mantra for Appointing the Purohita).*

“ *Bhûr, Bhuvah, Svar, Om!* I am that one, thou art this one ; thou art this one, I am that one ; I am heaven, thou art the earth ; I am the Sâman, thou art the Rik. Let us both find here our livelihood (support). Save us from great danger (just as was done) in former times ; thou art (my) body, protect mine. All ye many herbs, of a hundred kinds, over which the king Soma rules, grant me (sitting) on this seat, uninterrupted happiness. All ye herbs ruled by [533] Soma the king, which are spread over the earth, grant me (sitting) on this seat, uninterrupted happiness. I cause to sit in the kingdom this goddess of fortune. Thence I look upon

the divine waters (with which the king is washing the feet of the Purohita)."

"By washing his (the Purohita's) right foot, I introduce wealth obtained by sharpness of senses into the kingdom; by washing his left foot, I make that sharpness of senses increase. I wash, O gods! the first (right) and second (left) foot for protecting my empire and obtaining safety for it. May the waters which served for washing the feet (of the Purohita) destroy my enemy!"

## 28.

*(Spell to be Spoken and Applied by a King to Kill his Enemies. Who First Communicated it.)*

Now follows the ceremony called, "dying round the Brahma" (*Brahmanah parimara*). All enemies and foes of him who knows this ceremony, die round about him. This Brahma is he who sweeps (in the air, i.e., *Vāyu*). Round him five deities are dying, viz., lightning, rain, moon, sun, fire.

Lightning is absorbed by lightning when it does not rain, and is consequently hidden (to our eyes). They do not perceive such a flash of lightning when it dies, and consequently disappears. When they do not see him (the enemy), he (the king) shall say, "With the death of lightning my enemy shall die, and disappear! May they never get aware of him!" Instantly, then, they do not perceive him (the enemy), for he will be killed.

The rain when fallen is absorbed by the moon which disappears; they do not perceive it, when it dies and disappears. Then, when they do not [534] perceive him (the enemy), then he (the king) should say, "With the death of the rain, my enemy die and disappear. May they never get aware of him!" Instantly, then, they do not perceive him (the enemy), for he will be killed.

The moon at the time of the new moon, is absorbed by the sun, &c. When they do not perceive him (the enemy) then (the king) shall say, "With the death of the moon, my enemy shall die, and disappear. May they never get aware of him!" Instantly, then, they do not perceive him (the enemy), for he will be killed.

The sun, when setting, is absorbed by Agni (fire), &c. The king then shall say, "With the death of the sun, my enemy shall die, and disappear!"

may they never get aware of him ! ” Instantly, then, they do not perceive him (the enemy), for he will be killed.

The fire when extinguishing, is absorbed by Vāyu, &c. The king then shall say, “ With the death of the fire, my enemy shall die and disappear. May they never get aware of him ! ” Instantly, then, they do not perceive him (the enemy), for he will be killed.

These (five) deities are then born again. The fire is born out of Vāyu (wind). For it is produced by friction practised with (great) force, and restraining the breath.)<sup>5</sup> After having seen the fire new born, the king shall say, “ May Agni be born, but may my enemy not be born (again) ; may he go far off ! ” Then he goes far off.

Out of fire the sun is born. Having seen him, the king shall say, “ May the sun be born, but may my enemy not be born ; may he go far off ! ” Then he goes far off.

[535] From the sun the moon is born. Having seen it, the king shall say, “ May the moon be born, but not my enemy, may he be far off ! ” Then he goes far off.

From the moon the rain is born. Having seen it, the king shall say, “ May the rain be born, but not my enemy ; may he be far off. ” Then he goes far off.

From rain lightning is born. Having seen it, the king shall say, “ May lightning be born, but not my enemy ; may he be far off. Then he goes far off.

This is the *Brahmanah parimarah* (dying around the Brahma). *Maitreya*, the son of *Kuśāru*, told it to *Satvan*, the son of *Kīrīśi*, a king of the Bharga Gotra. Five kings (who were his enemies) died round him ; thence he attained to greatness.

He who uses this spell, has to observe the following rules: He never shall sit before his enemy has taken his seat. When he believes him to be standing, then he shall stand. He shall not lie down, before also his enemy has done so. When he thinks him sitting, then he shall sit himself. He never shall sleep before his enemy has fallen asleep. When he believes him to be awake, then he shall also be awake. In this way, he puts his enemy down, even if he wears a stone-helmet (is well armed).

<sup>5</sup> The production of fire by means of friction is very fatiguing, as I can assure the reader, from having tried it once with the proper apparatus, used at the sacrifices for this purpose.







2-25  
2/6/17

Central Archaeological Library,  
NEW DELHI.

24136.  
Call No. Sa 2 V5/Ait/Hau.

Author— Haug, Martin

Title— The Sacred books  
of the Hindus

*"A book that is shut is but a block"*

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY  
GOVT. OF INDIA  
Department of Archaeology  
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book  
clean and moving.